THE COMPLETE IDIOT'S GUIDE TO

Understanding Islam

◊ A complete introduction to the theological principles of the Islamic faith
◊ Thoughtful exploration of facts and fallacies about this misunderstood religion
◊ Enlightening insights on how Islam relates to both Judaism and Christianity

Yahiya Emerick
THE COMPLETE IDIOT'S GUIDE TO

Understanding Islam

by Yahiya Emerick

A Pearson Education Company
Contents at a Glance

Part 1: Introducing Islam

1 Why Has Islam Become So Important? 3
   Get to know who Muslims are and why there has been such a misperception about them.

2 Food for the Soul 17
   Learn who Allah is, what Islam teaches about Him, and what Islam says about genies and magic.

3 Looking at Life the Islamic Way 27
   Discover how Islam views human nature and what happens to people who were good or evil in this life according to Islam.

4 All About Allah 37
   Compare Islam’s understanding of God with Judaism and Christianity.

Part 2: The Spiritual World in Islam 47

5 The Four Stages of Life in Islam 49
   Learn about the four stages of life in Islam and what Islam says about the sanctity of life in the womb.

6 Islam on Heaven and Hell 63
   Learn what will happen on Judgment Day, why everyone must pass over a bridge to get to Heaven, and why Hell is not forever for everybody.

7 In the Beginning … An Islamic Perspective 75
   Read about the Qur’an’s version of “In the beginning ….”

8 The Measurement of Life 89
   Learn why Muslims are not taught to be fatalistic, despite popular stereotypes.

9 From Adam to Armageddon 99
   Discover how Islam explains the spread of humanity all over the Earth and what Muslims believe about Armageddon and the return of Jesus.

Part 3: The Five Pillars of Islam 111

10 Declaring Faith in Islam 113
    Become acquainted with the five pillars of Islam and what they mean in the daily life of a Muslim.

11 Understanding Muslim Prayers 123
    Discover what’s actually going on in the ritualistic Muslim prayers and what Muslims are praying for.
Part 4: Islam and Other Religions

15 It’s All in the Prophets
Discover the way in which Islam promotes religious tolerance all over the world.

16 Jews in Islam
Learn about the history of Jewish-Muslim relations and how Islam protected the Jews for over a thousand years.

17 Christianity and Islam
Rediscover Jesus—from the viewpoint of Islam.

Part 5: Regulating Life Within the Laws of Islam

18 Exploring the Sources of Islam
Read more about the Qur’an and the other sources of Islamic teachings that Muslims consult.

19 Living Islam
Find out how Islam strives to build an ordered society that is beneficial to all people in the community.

20 Looking at Women in Islam
Discover the role of women in an Islamic society and how Islam has been one of the most progressive systems for promoting women’s equality.

Part 6: The History of Islam

21 Muhammad in Mecca
Discover the man who would alter human history forever with the cry that there is no god but God.

22 The Victory of Islam
Learn how (and why) Islam transformed traditional Arab culture.

23 The Rightly Guided Successors
Find out why Islam was able to expand so rapidly from Arabia into the Middle East. Learn about the first Muslim civil war and why it occurred.
Explore the wonders of Islamic history and the great achievements that were produced in the arts, literature, and philosophy.

Find out how Europe came to dominate the entire Muslim world in only 300 years and how the legacy of Colonialism has shaped current world events for Muslims.

Part 7: The Legacy of Islam

Discover how Islam has touched your life in ways you never would have expected.

Meet the different sects currently flourishing in the Muslim world.

Learn about the misuse of Islam by political factions and how to read what’s really going on.

Appendixes

A The Islamic Calendar
B Common Prophets in the Qur’an
C Further Reading
D Glossary

Index
## Contents

### Part 1: Introducing Islam

1. **Why Has Islam Become So Important?**  
   - The Muslims Are Coming! .................................................. 4  
   - Why Didn’t I Learn More About Islam in School? ............ 5  
   - Muslims, Muslims Everywhere! .......................................... 7  
   - Does Islam Encourage War? .................................................. 9  
   - Muslim Missionary Efforts .................................................. 10  
   - How Did Muslims Get There? Thank the British! .............. 11  
   - Is There Really a Clash of Civilizations? .......................... 12  
   - Bridging the Next Gap ...................................................... 13

2. **Food for the Soul**  
   - The Core Beliefs of Islam .................................................. 18  
   - We All Have the Same God .............................................. 18  
   - The Universe Is Muslim! .................................................... 20  
   - Aladdin Rubbed the Wrong Lamp .................................... 21  
   - Touched by an Angel ........................................................ 22  
   - Accepting the Burden ........................................................ 22  
   - Was God Right to Make Us? .............................................. 23  
   - Soul Soup .......................................................................... 24  
   - Our Compass Points Inward .............................................. 24  
   - Can You Stand on One Leg? .............................................. 26

3. **Looking at Life the Islamic Way**  
   - The Three-Fold Journey .................................................... 28  
   - The Animal in All of Us .................................................... 28  
   - Stepping Up to the Plate .................................................... 29  
   - The Supreme Achievement .................................................. 30  
   - Sin and Redemption .......................................................... 30  
   - How Does God Forgive? ................................................... 31  
   - Law and Order ................................................................. 32  
   - Everything Counts When It Counts .................................... 32  
   - The Last Payday ............................................................... 33  
   - Our Report Card .............................................................. 34  
   - There’ll Be Hell to Pay .................................................... 34
### Part 2: The Spiritual World in Islam

#### 5 The Four Stages of Life in Islam

- Four Lives for Each Life ..................................................50
- Life in the Womb .............................................................50
- Abortion and Islam ..........................................................51
- Islam and Contraception ..................................................52
- When Is a Fetus a Person? ...............................................52
- Life in the World .............................................................54
- Does God Try to Fool Us? ...............................................55
- Careful! You’re Being Watched .......................................55
- Life in the Grave .............................................................58
- Spirit on a Wing ..............................................................58
- Soul Storage .....................................................................59

#### 6 Islam on Heaven and Hell

- Why Have a Judgment Day? ...........................................64
- The Long Arm of the Law .................................................64
- When Will It Come? ........................................................65
- The Judgment Cometh ...................................................67
- Allah Is Merciful ............................................................68
- The Bridge over Hell .......................................................68
- Use Your Time Wisely .......................................................70
- The Gardens of Paradise .................................................70
- No Dancing with the Devil Here! .....................................72
- Why Does God Punish? ..................................................74
# Contents

## 7 In the Beginning ... An Islamic Perspective 75

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The Creation of the Universe</td>
<td>76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Allah’s Notebook</em></td>
<td>76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Creation in the Qur’an</em></td>
<td>77</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Six Days and Still No Rest</em></td>
<td>78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Islam and Evolution</td>
<td>79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adam and Eve: A New Perspective</td>
<td>81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>An Implausible Theory</em></td>
<td>83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>The Angels Had Us Pegged</em></td>
<td>83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>The Education of Adam</em></td>
<td>84</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>The First Racist</em></td>
<td>84</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>The Great Test</em></td>
<td>86</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Pass It On</em></td>
<td>87</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## 8 The Measurement of Life 89

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Destiny, Fate, or Free Will—Which Is It?</td>
<td>90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>It’s Not Written in the Stars</em></td>
<td>90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Watching Time Go By</em></td>
<td>91</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>All Things Great and Small</em></td>
<td>92</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What You Can and Can’t Do</td>
<td>93</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Living Free of All Worry</em></td>
<td>94</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Peace from the Pulpit</em></td>
<td>95</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## 9 From Adam to Armageddon 99

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>No Tower of Babel Here</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Rise of the Prophets</td>
<td>101</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>How Religion Becomes Lost</em></td>
<td>102</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>The Cycle of History</em></td>
<td>103</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The End Is Near!</td>
<td>104</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Prophecies About the Muslim World</em></td>
<td>105</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>The Signs of the Hour</em></td>
<td>106</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>The False Prophets</em></td>
<td>107</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>The Rule of Jesus</em></td>
<td>108</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Gog and Magog</em></td>
<td>109</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Last Day</td>
<td>109</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
# Table of Contents

## Part 3: The Five Pillars of Islam

### 10 Declaring Faith in Islam
- Introducing the Five Pillars of Islam ........................................ 114
- The Shahadah .................................................................. 115
  - Uncompromising Monotheism ........................................... 115
  - Are Muslims Idol-Breakers? ............................................... 116
  - And Muhammad Is His Prophet ......................................... 119
  - Expressions of Respect ..................................................... 120
  - The Welcoming Tie .......................................................... 121

### 11 Understanding Muslim Prayers
- Supplication Versus Prayer ................................................ 124
  - Why Do We Pray? .......................................................... 126
  - The Benefits of Prayer ..................................................... 126
  - The Seven Preconditions .................................................. 127
  - Cleanliness Is Next To … ................................................. 128
- The Muslim Call to Prayer.................................................. 128
- Humble Pie ...................................................................... 131
- The Prayer Described ...................................................... 133
- Remembrance of God ..................................................... 136

### 12 Elevating the Soul
- The Burden of Wealth ...................................................... 140
  - Bah! Humbug! ............................................................... 141
  - Who Must Pay Zakat? ..................................................... 143
  - Who Gets Zakat Assistance? ........................................... 144
  - The Sin of Denying Your Brother ........................................ 144
- The Fast of Ramadan ...................................................... 145
- Welcoming Ramadan ...................................................... 146
  - Wake Up! It’s Time for Sahoor ........................................ 146
- The Month of Training .................................................... 148

### 13 Gathering in Mecca
- Introducing the Hajj Ritual ................................................ 152
  - The Origin of a Holy Place ............................................... 153
  - Why Do Muslims Go to Mecca? ......................................... 155
## Contents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>Uncovering the Real Story About Jihad</td>
<td>165</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>What Is Jihad?</td>
<td>166</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Social Activism in Islam</td>
<td>167</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The Myth of the Holy War</td>
<td>169</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>A Historical Misunderstanding</td>
<td>169</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>A False Alarm</td>
<td>171</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Islam on War</td>
<td>171</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>What Makes a Terrorist?</td>
<td>172</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Islam and Terrorism</td>
<td>174</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The Rules of War</td>
<td>174</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>It’s All in the Prophets</td>
<td>179</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>All Prophets Are Brothers</td>
<td>180</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Will the Real Prophet Please Stand Up</td>
<td>181</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Introducing the Prophets in Islam</td>
<td>183</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Looking at the Characteristics of the Prophets</td>
<td>185</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Abraham and Muhammad</td>
<td>186</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Moses Learns a Lesson</td>
<td>187</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Prophethood Is a Men’s Club, but Revelation Is Equal</td>
<td>187</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Prophets on Judgment Day</td>
<td>188</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The Books of God</td>
<td>188</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>Jews in Islam</td>
<td>191</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The People of the Book</td>
<td>192</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Judaism and Islam</td>
<td>192</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The Qur’an on Judaism</td>
<td>196</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The Only Muslim-Jewish War</td>
<td>197</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Jews in the Muslim Empire</td>
<td>199</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
17 Christianity and Islam 201
   Setting the Stage .............................................................. 202
   Muhammad and the Monk .............................................. 202
   An Interesting Proposal .................................................. 203
   Christianity and Jesus in the Qur’an .............................. 205
   Original Sin and All That ................................................ 207
   Interfaith Dialogue .......................................................... 209
   The Activist Popes ............................................................ 210
   Build More Churches! ........................................................ 212

Part 5: Regulating Life Within the Laws of Islam 215

18 Exploring the Sources of Islam 217
   A Closer Look at the Qur’an ............................................ 218
   Style and Content ............................................................ 219
   Meccan and Medinan Revelations .................................... 222
   The Compilation .............................................................. 223
   Major Themes of the Qur’an ............................................ 225
   The Teachings of the Prophet ........................................ 225
   How Are Hadiths Different from the Qur’an? .................... 226
   Who Recorded the Hadiths? .............................................. 226
   Hadith Literature: A Snapshot .......................................... 227
   The Companions of the Prophet ...................................... 228
   Early Meccan Converts ...................................................... 228
   Prominent Women ............................................................ 229
   The ‘Ulema: Scholars of the Faith .................................. 229
   Early Theologians ............................................................ 230
   The Five Imams ................................................................. 231
   Activist Scholars .............................................................. 231

19 Living Islam 233
   Islam and the Family .......................................................... 234
   The Ties That Bind ............................................................ 234
   The Ideal Muslim Home ................................................... 235
   Spare the Rod ................................................................. 236
   Welcome to My Mosque .................................................... 236
   What Happens in a Mosque? ............................................ 237
   No Shoes Allowed! ............................................................ 237
   Friday, the Day of Gathering ............................................ 238
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Contents</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The Features of a Masjid</td>
<td>238</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What Is an Imam?</td>
<td>239</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ceremonies for Life</td>
<td>240</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nikah: Marriage in Islam</td>
<td>240</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aqiqah: Welcoming Baby</td>
<td>241</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Janazah: Muslim Funerary Rites</td>
<td>242</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Completing the Qur’an</td>
<td>243</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Islamic Holidays</td>
<td>243</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ramadan and ’Eid ul Fitr</td>
<td>243</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>After the Hajj: ’Eid ul Adha</td>
<td>243</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other Holidays of Note</td>
<td>244</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Halal and Haram: What Can a Muslim Do?</td>
<td>244</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Muslim Kosher Standard</td>
<td>244</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Islam Forbids Intoxicants</td>
<td>245</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gambling</td>
<td>245</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Music and Islam</td>
<td>246</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Animal Rights and Islam</td>
<td>246</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monetary Restrictions</td>
<td>247</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20 Looking at Women in Islam</td>
<td>249</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Does Islam Teach Inequality?</td>
<td>250</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Beyond Stereotypes</td>
<td>250</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Struggle for Equal Rights</td>
<td>252</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Myths About Muslim Women</td>
<td>254</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arranged Marriages</td>
<td>255</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Taliban and Women</td>
<td>256</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anomalies in the Muslim World</td>
<td>258</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Women’s Rights in Islam</td>
<td>258</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Are Women “Half” of Men?</td>
<td>258</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Why Only Half an Inheritance?</td>
<td>259</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Does Islam Allow Wife Abuse?</td>
<td>259</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Polygamy in Islam</td>
<td>260</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Divorce in Islam</td>
<td>261</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Talaq: Male-Initiated Divorce</td>
<td>262</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Khul*: Female-Initiated Divorce</td>
<td>262</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alimony and Palimony in Islam</td>
<td>262</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Islam and the Dress Code</td>
<td>263</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>On Veils and Turbans</td>
<td>263</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Purdah and Islam</td>
<td>264</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Part 6: The History of Islam

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td><strong>Muhammad in Mecca</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Arabia: The Birthplace of Islam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Meet Muhammad’s Parents</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Thank God I’m a Country Boy!</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>War and Trade in Mecca</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Muhammad: Citizen of Mecca</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>A Prophet Is Chosen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>What Was Islam Asking of the Meccans?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>How Was Islam Received in Mecca?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The African Migrations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Muhammad’s Night Journey and Ascension</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The Great Escape!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td><strong>The Victory of Islam</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The First Islamic State</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The Desperate Times</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>The Battle of Badr</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>The Battle of Uhud</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>The Battle of the Ditch</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The Conquest of Mecca</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Confronting the Superpowers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Taking Another Look at Muhammad’s Marriages</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The Passing of a Prophet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td><strong>The Rightly Guided Successors</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Islam on Government</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The Caliphate of Abu Bakr As-Sadeeq</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Umar ibn al Khattab and Persia’s Defeat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Uthman ibn Affan and the Great Conspiracy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Ali ibn Abi Talib</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>The Battle of the Camel</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>The Struggle for Power</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>A Compromise with Syria</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## 24 Islamic Civilization: The Dynastic Period 297

- The Umayyads ................................................................. 298
  *How the Caliphate Became Hereditary* ....................... 298
- The Abbasids and the Mongol Invasions ..................... 300
- The Golden Age of Islamic Civilization ....................... 300
- Islamic Art Forms .......................................................... 301
  *Architecture* ............................................................... 302
  *Literature* ................................................................. 302
- The Beginnings of Rival Muslim States ....................... 303
  *Islam and Spain: A Unique Blend* ......................... 304
  *The Mughals* ............................................................. 305
- The Crusades .............................................................. 306
  *Europe’s First Colonies* ................................................ 306
  *The End of a Dream* ..................................................... 307

## 25 Islam in America 309

- The Forgotten Religion of African Americans ................ 310
- The Rise of African American Islam .............................. 312
  *Malcolm X: Martyr of Islam* ....................................... 313
  *Islam Among African Americans Today* ..................... 314
- Muslim Immigrants and the American Dream ................ 315
- Caucasian Converts to Islam ........................................ 316
- Hispanic Muslims ....................................................... 316
- Muslim Organizations in North America ...................... 317

## Part 7: The Legacy of Islam 319

## 26 Discover the Influences of Islam 321

- Charting the Muslim Influence on Europe .................... 322
- Illuminating the Science Hall of Fame ....................... 324
- Speaking in a Familiar Tongue .................................... 326
- Uncovering the Unique Features of Islamic Civilization 327

## 27 Meet the Islamic Sectarian Movements 331

- Sectarianism and Islam ................................................ 332
- A Quick Look at Early Sects ......................................... 332
  *Beliefs of the Kharajites* ........................................... 333
  *The Greek Rationalists* ............................................... 333
Islam is one of the fastest growing religions in the world. At present, the United States is home to 3 million to 4 million Muslims. Islam has attracted and transformed the lives of activists, rappers, politicians, artists, athletes, academics, and even scores of students in the Midwest. However, even with the number of Americans converting to Islam increasing exponentially each year, Islam still remains shrouded in mystery. With all of the misunderstanding that revolves around this belief, why are so many people accepting its way of life? What answers does Islam hold for the many cultures and ethnicities that kneel for prayer five times a day saying: “God is Great; God is One”? The answer may lie in its ability to bring about balance.

When I first met Yahiya Emerick I saw a man in balance: a true son of the hearty American Midwest—canoe, corndogs, and all—who could recite prayers in flawless Arabic. Inspired by the writings of Emerson and Thoreau, he could also cite the chapter and verse of various laws and edicts of the Qur’an. Yahiya could give heart-thumping Friday sermons at the mosque and then easily pull a pack of teens together to go camping in the “sticks.” I witnessed a man juggling his American identity and his Islamic soul and gracefully striking a balance. Since converting to Islam in his freshman year at Michigan State University, Yahiya Emerick has been writing, researching, and publishing texts about Islam for the last decade. Specifically, his goal is to examine what is truly advocated within the essence of Islam, rather than what is done (incorrectly) in the name of Islam. In this book, he clarifies the incongruent actions of some Muslims and holds them up against the light of the Holy Qur’an to illustrate what Islam advocates and prohibits.

Yahiya Emerick presents a birds-eye view of the Islamic tapestry in a logical and easy-to-understand format. The thread: knowledge that spans three continents. The pattern: events of the past and the present. The finished product: a garment to be worn by you as a reminder of the journey you have taken. He places each design, each point in history, at close range so as to elucidate the true impact of Islam’s place in history. Be it medicine or mathematics, the role of Islam is presented as more than just a month of fasting and women wearing dark veils.

Yahiya Emerick has definitely paid his dues. Whether it’s working as an assistant principal and teacher in a Muslim school or leading the Friday prayer he manages to present an image of tangibility. His example is seen as a reminder for the youth he teaches: Islam is not an unapproachable belief. It is a system that balances economics, politics, morality, and social structure as a simple way of life—from God we came; to Him shall we return.

This book has its own balance. It pulls no punches on any of its topics. It examines Islam on a level plain—no smoke and mirrors—just a clear investigation of a spirituality, a way of life, that has been unfairly vilified by the American media and warped into contradictory tokenism by those who appear to be Muslim in name only. In this text, Islam is presented as a way of life that does not thrive in stasis. Islam emerges as
a living spirituality whose core beliefs and social systems, established more than 1,400 years ago, still meet the challenging and complex human needs of the new millennium.

Islam is a spirituality that continues to attract Americans regardless of their race, culture, class, and gender. I am confident that this book will open a multitude of new eyes to a spirituality that is not as exotic as it is made to seem. Enjoy the journey into Islam!

—Qasim Najar

Founding member of the Islamic Foundation of North America
Introduction

Imagine learning that there are over a billion people in the world, one sixth of humanity, who follow a religion that you never really studied in school. This little-known religion is called Islam. Perhaps you've heard the name before or developed some opinions about it based on what you've seen in the news. However, if you're like most people, you might not know a great deal about Islam. Well, you've taken the first step toward understanding more about this mysterious way of life, and you may find yourself pleasantly surprised to learn what it really teaches.

Islam shares many of the same characteristics that are familiar to followers of Judaism and Christianity. In fact, Islam considers itself a related ideology that fits into a tight chronology with these two other religions. As the population of Muslims rises in many Western countries, and as many people discover the impact of Islamic civilization on Western thought, science, and values, a new attitude is taking shape in the relations between Jews, Christians, and Muslims. In this spirit of mutual respect and toleration, many people have begun to speak of a Judeo-Christian-Islamic heritage for the West.

Many people have been amazed to find out that Islam is the fastest-growing religion in the West. If current trends continue, in a few years there will be more Muslims in America, for example, than Jews or Presbyterians! Mosques now dot the skyline views of many American cities, and the changing face of America's schools has its share of children wearing head scarves and round caps called Kufis. All of this serves to highlight the need for people to understand their Muslim neighbors and their religious and cultural traditions.

Islam is a way of life and a philosophy of living that millions of people consult in their daily affairs. It has its own answers to such questions as why are we here, who is God, what kind of life should a person lead, and what happens to us after we die? It also has its own program for improving one’s heart, mind, and spiritual strength. Through a daily regimen of prayer, supplication, good works, and a strong commitment to faith, Muslims, or followers of Islam, try their best to live in harmony with their fellow men and women and even with their environment.

Napoléon Bonaparte once wrote that if people followed the way of Islam, there would be true harmony and brotherhood in the world at long last. Bernard Shaw also echoed the same sentiment in his writings, though he went a step further stating, “One day the West will accept Islam.” On the flip side there are those who view Islam as a potential rival for Western dominance and present Muslims in a negative light. Samuel P. Huntington and Steven Emerson are two prominent writers who have published books that paint a picture of Muslims that is highly critical and even dangerous. How should you here in the West view Muslims, then?

This book will help you understand who Muslims are, what they believe, what rituals they perform, what civilization they built, as well as what challenges they face. Although the history of interaction between the Muslim and Christian world has
often been fraught with conflict, there have been many periods of peace and understanding, which have enriched both societies. One of the greatest periods of peace and intellectual development for European Jewry was during the era of Muslim rule in Spain. This has often been called a golden age for the Jewish people. Indeed, Christian-Muslim-Jewish relations were not always as strained as they seem to be today, and through mutual respect and toleration the followers of each of these three monotheistic religions can reacquaint themselves with that spirit of tolerance that reigned in so many places before.

The stamp of Islam and its civilization can be found in many aspects of our society today. Economic terms such as bank and check, as well as scientific words like horizon and alcohol come from the world of Islam. Did you ever study algebra or chemistry? Have you ever enjoyed lemonade or sugar? Do you dream of going on safari, or have you ever read an almanac? Do you enjoy the works of Plato (which Muslims transmitted to the West), or have you read the poems of Rumi? These and many other words, discoveries, and intellectual achievements are gifts from Muslim society to the West.

Islam has a very appealing belief system that has been embraced by converts for decades now, and its rituals give meaning to people from all walks of life. Many prison systems across the United States now actively encourage their inmates to learn about Islam, recognizing the discipline and civilizing effect it has on the prison population. In some urban areas, Muslims have been credited with ridding neighborhoods of drug and prostitution and working with local officials to revitalize depressed areas. Islam can and will continue to make positive contributions in every society in which its followers settle.

I hope you will enjoy learning about Islam and discovering that Muslims are not as different as you thought. In the future you will be seeing a greater Muslim presence in the West; and as Muslims take their place in the melting pot, I hope we can all see that the flavors they will add will enrich our lives for the better.

Here’s What You’ll Find Inside

This book is divided into seven parts.

Part 1, “Introducing Islam,” opens for you the world of Islam from an insider’s point of view. In this part, you will learn about some of the reasons for the unfortunate relations the Christian and Muslim worlds have had for centuries. You will also discover the reason why knowledge of Islam has often been lacking in modern school curriculums.

Part 2, “The Spiritual World in Islam,” introduces the Muslim concept of the four stages of life, the three levels of the soul’s journey to truth, and the Day of Judgment. The Islamic view of Heaven and Hell and their purpose will also be laid out before you. The story of creation all the way up to the Last Day will present a thrilling journey into an alternate conception of the universe and our place in it.
Part 3, “The Five Pillars of Islam,” explores the famous five pillars of Islam in great detail and shows how each pillar influences the life of a Muslim. This discussion includes a full account of the Islamic concept of social justice and action. Jihad, which is often mistakenly labeled as holy war, and the Islamic duty of activism will also be highlighted.

Part 4, “Islam and Other Religions,” gives a full account of the relations between Christians, Jews, and Muslims from the beginning of Muhammad’s mission until our own time. The Qur’an contains quite a lot of discussion on Muslim relations with the followers of other religions and goes into great detail about the merits and drawbacks of both Judaism and Christianity. In this part, I’ll also touch upon the rise of inter-faith dialogue.

Part 5, “Regulating Life Within the Laws of Islam,” will introduce you to the sources for Islamic teachings, how they are interpreted, and how a code of life can be derived from them. You’ll learn about issues related to Islamic Law, such as dietary restrictions, male/female relations, community life, ceremonies, and celebrations. You’ll also explore the purpose of a mosque.

Part 6, “The History of Islam,” takes you on a panoramic overview of the breadth and depth of the world of Islam from the Prophet Muhammad to the present day. I’ll also cover the influence of Islam on Europe, the Golden Age of Muslim Spain, the glorious Mughals and Ottomans, and the Christian/Muslim wars over Palestine and eastern Europe. This will help you understand better how Islam and the Western world have interacted over the centuries.

Part 7, “The Legacy of Islam,” will highlight the contributions of Muslims to the growth of civilization, globalization, and modern technology. Great Muslim thinkers and explorers will be introduced, and the era of Colonialism will be fully explored. Moving to today’s world, we will tackle the thorny issues that seem to divide the followers of Islam, Christianity, and Judaism, and how world affairs today are influenced by events in the Muslim world.

Extras …

To make your learning experience even more enjoyable and insightful, you’ll find sidebars sprinkled liberally throughout the text. These are interesting tidbits of information in self-contained boxes that include …
Ask the Imam

In this sidebar, you will find issues about religious application to daily life. Tough questions need equally strong answers, and Islam doesn’t back down when solutions are needed. By the way, an Imam is the title for a religious leader in the Muslim community.

Just the Facts

This sidebar confronts myths about Islam with authentic information. These can be quotes, points, or comparisons. This is one of the most important types of information you will find, given that stereotypes and misunderstandings about Islam are rampant today.

It Is Written

This sidebar includes actual quotes from the Qur’an, the sayings of Muhammad, and the writings of prominent Islamic scholars and others through the centuries. What better way to learn than to let the sources speak for themselves!

Translate This

This sidebar includes definitions of words common in Islam that you may have never heard before.

Acknowledgments

I really want to thank the people who made this book possible. This is my first book in the Complete Idiot’s Guide series, and the support I received has been overwhelming. To Jacky Sach, my literary agent, I extend my gratitude for encouragement and helpful feedback. A special thank you for Randy Ladenheim-Gil, my initial editor, for all
the kind assistance she extended in the completion of this manuscript. The staff at Alpha Books, a division of Pearson Education, has also been exceptional. Michael Koch deserves kudos for the hard task of making sense of my endless files. Finally, and most importantly, I would like to thank my wife for shouldering more than her fair share of family responsibilities during my time working on this book.

Special Thanks to the Technical Reviewer

The Complete Idiot’s Guide to Understanding Islam was reviewed by an expert who double-checked the accuracy of what you’ll learn here, in order to ensure that this book gives you everything you need to know about Islam. Special thanks are extended to Qasim Najar.

Trademarks

All terms mentioned in this book that are known to be or are suspected of being trademarks or service marks have been appropriately capitalized. Alpha Books and Pearson Education, Inc., cannot attest to the accuracy of this information. Use of a term in this book should not be regarded as affecting the validity of any trademark or service mark.
Part 1

Introducing Islam

What is the religion of Islam really about? You’ve heard so much about this topic without really learning what its teachings are. Is Islam being given a fair hearing? Beyond all the hype and stereotypes, Islam is, in fact, a genuine spiritual tradition that over a billion people worldwide are associated with. That’s quite a lot of public support! Why, then, is Islam so often presented in such a disparaging manner? Have there been unfortunate circumstances in relations between the Muslim world and the West that would cause long-standing myths and prejudices to take root?

In reality, Islam is a peaceful religion with teachings that cover every area of life. The philosophy of Islam begins with God and ends with the inevitable journey of all people back to their Creator. Concepts that are already familiar to people in the West, such as righteousness, Heaven, Hell, and angels, make Islam seem less mysterious and more comprehensible than most people would think. In this part, I will be exploring the Islamic conception of God and why there is so much misunderstanding about this great faith in the world today.
Why Has Islam Become So Important?

In This Chapter
➤ Learn why understanding Islam is now more important than ever
➤ Consider how stereotypes have affected the Western view of Islam
➤ Take a brief look at where Muslims live and how they got there
➤ Understand how the Muslim world affects your life here in the West

It may be surprising to learn that Islam is the fastest-growing religion in the world today, outpacing Christianity, Buddhism, and all other belief systems through a mixture of conversion and natural increase. However, even more eye-opening is the fact that Islam is also the fastest-growing religion in North America. With nearly 2,000 mosques spread throughout the continent, and populations approaching one million in some urban areas, learning about this often misunderstood and mysterious faith has become more important than ever.

There are many reasons why our knowledge of Islam seems so deficient. Centuries of conflict between the Muslim and Christian worlds have built up long-standing prejudices that have led each side to dismiss the other's relevance in world affairs. While this hostility has set the tone for relations between the world's two largest faiths, the damage done to tolerance and mutual respect is not irreparable. My purpose, then, is to reveal the world of Islam to you from the inside so you can gain a greater appreciation of who Muslims are, what Islam teaches, and how Muslims view what's happening in the world today.
The Muslims Are Coming!

Signs of the growth of Islam in the United States, Canada, and recently in Mexico are evident everywhere. Mosques are being built in neighborhoods where once only churches and synagogues stood. Women who wear scarves covering their hair are now a common sight in many towns and cities. Moreover, Muslim holidays are gaining official recognition in such places as Los Angeles, Toronto, and New York; and the U.S. Postal Service has even issued stamp designs commemorating Muslims and Islamic themes (Malcolm X and Ramadan stamps, for example). In addition, an increasing number of employers are accommodating the religious needs of their Muslim workers in the same way they respond to the needs of their Jewish workers.

On a personal level, many people are finding that some of their neighbors or fellow college students practice the Islamic way of life or that some of their children’s classmates may be Muslims. Clearly Islam is beginning to enter the mainstream of community experience, and the more you learn about your Muslim neighbors the better you will be able to understand each other and work together for the common good.
Given the dramatic rise in the number of Muslims, especially in the West, why do Westerners apparently know so little about the faith that claims over one billion followers all over the world? At a time when multicultural education and diversity are the buzzwords in education, why are school curriculums surprisingly sparse with regard to information on Islam and Muslim culture? The answer lies squarely in the tortured relationship between Islam and the West.

**Why Didn’t I Learn More About Islam in School?**

So you made it through high school and maybe college and managed to learn a little bit of everything along the way. Then one night you sit down to watch the evening news and find yourself listening to a report about *Islamic terrorists*, followed by another one highlighting the holy month of *Ramadan* as it is celebrated in a major American city. The next morning you read an article in the newspaper about an *Islamic state* that has passed a law prohibiting women from driving. On the way to work you turn on your car radio and listen to an in-depth National Public Radio story about a Muslim immigrant father “stealing” his child away from his estranged American wife and her heart-wrenching struggle to rescue her baby.

You may reflect for a moment on what a diverse world we live in. However, you may become influenced by the slant of the reporting to view Islam as some monstrous religion with demonic values incomprehensible to civilized people. If you are a thinking individual, however, who likes to form opinions for yourself after looking at all the evidence, perhaps, in times of quiet contemplation, the realization hits you: I really don’t know much about Islam. What does it teach? Is it as bad and dangerous as it is portrayed in the media? Why do so many people seem to be following it? What should I know about Islamic customs given that my new coworker may be a Muslim and I saw a girl with a scarf on her head at my child’s school? Heck, who is this Allah they always talk about? Is He the same god as ours?

---

**Translate This**

*Islam* is the proper name to use when referring to the religion practiced by Muslims. It is an Arabic word that means two things: to surrender your will to God and to acquire peace in your soul. The legitimacy of using this word comes from the Muslim Holy Book, the Qur’an; and it is the only name Muslims use to refer to their religion. A *Muslim* is a follower of Islam.

**Just the Facts**

When someone commits a crime, the religion of the individual is rarely mentioned. But when a person who happens to have a Muslim name does some act of violence whether for religious or secular reasons, their religious affiliation is nearly always mentioned. This seems unfair to most Muslims.
Raising these questions enables you to confront the power of stereotypes and how they can damage relationships between people of diverse backgrounds. You also may realize, when you reconsider what you know about Islam, that your educational career has a gaping hole in it. In the same way that 30 years ago you were learning about the merits and drawbacks of Communism, today’s schools and universities are scrambling to fill the knowledge void regarding the relevance of Islam and the Muslim world. In previous decades, the religion of Islam and the Muslim culture were hardly given more than a cursory treatment in history classes, even though the Muslim impact on world civilization was at least as great as that of European or Chinese culture.

European and American educators have literally cut out a large chunk of human history and thrown it into a vague limbo. To follow the flow of history as presented in typical high school textbooks, both modern and yesteryear’s, is to go from the ancient world to the Greeks, Romans, and finally into the Enlightenment, the Reformation, and the world since Colonialism, with few detours at all. This omission of the world of Islam can best be explained by a cultural bias driven by fear and tinged with a little arrogance. Why should Islam matter? After all, the West conquered the Muslim world and broke it up into many tiny states, each powerless and dependent. With the Muslim world no longer a threat to the West, the West could focus on other more important things. And it is a well-known fact that the victor often writes the history books according to his own version of events.

The attitude that the study of Islam has evoked in the Western world seems to have been little more than: “Oh, Mohammed made it all up, and a bunch of his fanatics chased people around with swords for a while until the enlightened West took control of the Muslim world and civilized it.” Western writers, often called Orientalists, have expressed this simplistic and narrow view in their studies throughout most of the last 400 years. Only recently have modern scholars taken a fresh look at Islam and Muslim civilization and gained a new appreciation for its values, legitimacy, and contributions to the rise of the modern world.
It is due to this disparaging frame of mind that knowledge of Islam has been largely absent from the curriculum of schools across Europe and the Americas, save for chapters that mention how the “heroic” West captured Palestine during the Crusades. Although the situation is now improving dramatically, some of the old attitudes still remain, and the information about Islam that is being brought to the general public is often incomprehensible to Muslims, who see their faith being maligned or routinely misrepresented. Clearly the time for a more thorough and accurate exploration of Islam has come. Who better to ask what their religion is about than Muslims?

Muslims, Muslims Everywhere!

In the rivalry between the old Soviet Union and the West, the rest of the world played the role of either allies or enemies (or even “dominoes”). South America, Asia, and Africa were the battlefields on which the war for superpower dominance was fought by proxy. Indeed, a large segment of the world was treated literally as a fill-in-the-flag spot on the map. These would be the dozens of Muslim countries ranging
from Morocco to Indonesia and all the Muslim territories that had been incorporated into non-Muslim nations over the past two centuries. In the world of James Bond, the Muslim world provided only interesting locations for so-called first-world struggles and intrigues.

With the passing of the Cold War, the deck has been reshuffled. Now nations vying for dominance must treat each region and country individually in their quest for allies and business partners or in their desire to rein-in potential “rogue states.” Enter the Muslim world. Where once you had a patchwork of weak dictatorships, monarchies, and sham democracies that were manipulated by the Soviets and the West quite shamelessly, now you have legitimate countries, each with its own vision and aspirations. There are even many new nations, created out of the ruins of the Soviet Union, with Muslim majorities, whose future direction and orientation are watched closely by the West. Within Europe itself, many restless ethnic groups are struggling for states they can call their own, Muslim minorities included, and the U.S. Army now patrols many former battle zones in the Muslim-populated Balkans.

It can seem confusing at times: news about Muslims coming in from Africa, Europe, Asia, the Middle East, and North America. Just where is the Muslim heartland, anyway? The answer to this question lies not in geography but in history. Islam began in Arabia with the Prophet Muhammad in 610 C.E. and spread rapidly to the east, west, and north, mainly because of the zeal of Arab armies and the disloyalty of the peasantry who, under Persian and Byzantine rule, looked upon the Muslims as liberators.

Within a hundred years, converts from North Africa, Syria, Iraq, and Iran continued this movement until the classic Islamic Empire consisted of a broad swath of territory, encompassing all the land between Spain and western China. The Turkish Ottomans later spread their rule over much of southeastern Europe, resulting in the mass conversion of the Albanians and Bosnians, whose brand of Christianity had been under persecution from the Orthodox and Catholic churches.
Does Islam Encourage War?

Does Islam command its followers to wage war against unbelievers or kill them without provocation? This is a popular misconception among Westerners, and the statements of a few radicals in the Muslim world don’t help in ending this false idea in peoples’ minds. In fact, Islam forbids the taking of any human life except for a just cause under the law, that is capital punishment for convicted murderers, fighting in wartime, or self-defense. The Qur’an has this to say about taking a life:

“Don’t take a life which Allah has made sacred except by way of justice and law: thus does He command you that you may learn wisdom.” (Qur’an 6:151)

The Qur’an never says to fight and kill people who are not believers, although one of its verses, which is often quoted out of context, does say “to fight the unbelievers wherever you find them.” However, this command was revealed when a state of war
Part 1 ➤ Introducing Islam

existed between the first Muslim community and their stronger opponents, the idol-worshippers of Mecca. The command was directing the Muslims not to run away from a fight with oppressors but instead to go headlong into battle with the people who had been attacking them without mercy for so long. Here are the Qur’anic verses that command Muslims to fight:

“Fight in the way of Allah against those who fight you, but don’t be the aggressors, because Allah doesn’t approve of aggression. Fight them wherever they are found, and drive them out from where they drove you out, because being oppressed is worse than being slaughtered .... But if they cease being hostile, remember that Allah is the Forgiving, the Source of All Mercy. But if they continue to oppress [people], then battle them until oppression is no more and justice and faith in Allah prevails. If they seek peace, then you seek it as well, but continue to pursue the evil-doers.” (Qur’an 2:191–194)

Muslim Missionary Efforts

The spread of Islam was accomplished not only through the conquest of land but also through the willing conversion of many of the inhabitants. Even as Christianity spread throughout Europe and the Americas by means of a mixture of missionary work and war, so too did Islam have its missionary side. A large tract of land stretching from central China down through Cambodia, Vietnam, Thailand, Malaysia, and the Philippines and into Indonesia saw the rapid conversion of huge populations, a result due almost exclusively to the efforts of individuals who were interested in teaching their beliefs to others. No Muslim armies ever entered that part of the world. Ironically, Indonesia and the surrounding countries now boast the largest Muslim populations found on the globe.

The Qur’an forbids forcing someone to convert to the faith. Despite popular stereotypes of fanatic Muslims with the Qur’an in one hand and a sword in the other, Islam does not teach this type of conversion method; and modern Western writers, who have taken a fresh look at history, now almost unanimously declare that forced conversion was not a method used during the rapid Muslim expansion.

“There is no forcing anyone into this way of life. The truth stands clear from falsehood. Anyone who rejects wrongdoing and believes in Allah, has grasped a firm hand-hold that never breaks, because Allah hears and knows everything.” (Qur’an 2:254)

Today in America, Canada, Mexico, and Europe the number of converts to Islam is rising each year. There are no organized crusades, no TV shows in prime time, no magnetic personalities filling stadiums each month in a different city, and certainly no central planning unit to bring Islam to the Western public. Instead you have religious and cultural trends among certain groups that have continued to evolve. For
example, the conversion rate of African Americans to Islam has remained steady since the days of Malcolm X and the Nation of Islam. As the number of converts rises, so does the general acceptance of Islam in the African-American community as a viable life choice.

America now sports over a million African American converts to Islam alone. Caucasian women who marry Muslim immigrants often convert to the faith, either before or after marriage, and it is estimated that there are over 200,000 such converts in North America today. A surprising movement of Hispanic Americans, especially Puerto Ricans, into the Islamic religion has also continued to grow and expand in recent years. Thus, you can see how the conversion factor contributes to the growth of Islam in unexpected places.

**How Did Muslims Get There? Thank the British!**

Besides land conquests and missionary efforts, there is another factor responsible for the spread of Islam: the efforts of the British who were looking for a cheap labor supply for their *colonial* plantations. In the eighteenth and early nineteenth centuries, the British imported tens of thousands of Muslims from India to South America, South Africa, the Caribbean, and elsewhere. Their descendants have continued to practice Islam. Suriname, for example, a small nation just north of Brazil, has a population that is over 30 percent Muslim, the rest being Hindu and Christian.

Recently, immigration from Lebanon has resulted in a sizable Muslim population in Argentina. In short, Muslims inhabit every corner of the globe and their growth has been due to a wide variety of factors. The Muslim heartland, then, stretches from Morocco to Indonesia and Bosnia down to Tanzania, with important fringe populations all over the world.

If it seems that news from the Muslim world is suddenly more prominent and noticeable these days, it’s not because in the past Muslims were sleeping or because they previously didn’t exist. It’s because now each and every Muslim country has suddenly become more valuable to the West. Given the Western dependence on fossil fuels, especially oil and gas, and with the need to ensure easy access to foreign markets for Western companies, the trends in every Muslim country are watched closely.

---

**Translate This**

*Colonialism* refers to the era from about 1650 to 1950 when European countries invaded and took control of most of the rest of the world. Nearly every region on Earth from South America and Africa to Asia and the Middle East came under the direct military occupation of Britain, France, Portugal, the Netherlands, Russia, or Belgium.
The Arab oil embargo and the rise of OPEC in the seventies made people take notice that a whole lot of people have a history and values that the West does not fully understand. Other events, such as the Arab/Israeli conflict, the Gulf War, and the shifting balance of power in the Middle East, have confirmed the view that Americans need to know more about what forces drive people who live in those places. Stay tuned: As the years pass, the volume of news about or originating from the Muslim world will only increase.

Is There Really a Clash of Civilizations?

When Westerners think about Islam, well-worn stereotypes of veiled women, bearded men, exotic food, and an incomprehensible language tend to come to mind. Islam is considered by many to be an alien culture that can’t possibly have any relationship or commonality with normal Western values. This belief has an unfortunately long history and dates back 1,400 years, to the era of the Byzantine Roman Empire when the Muslim world and Europe most often met on the field of battle. The Muslim world was still young then, and the vitality of youth caused it to expand its frontiers, much like the European nations did 300 years later, when they achieved near total world dominance.

From the year 622 C.E. when Muhammad, the Prophet of Islam, gained control of the Arabian city of Medina, until the close of the sixteenth century, the Muslim world was continually expanding in one direction or another. Although there were many setbacks, such as the loss of Spain in 1492 or the Mongol invasions in the thirteenth century, the Muslim world overcame these challenges and continued its outward march. During this time, the Christian world lost all of North Africa, the Middle East, and much of Eastern Europe to Islam.
As a counterstrike, the Crusades (the Christian invasion of Palestine in the eleventh and twelfth centuries) showed Europe that it could wrest land away from “the Saracens,” as Muslims were called at the time. Vilification of Islam and Muslims reached a crescendo throughout Europe during this period, and European kings and Catholic priests portrayed Muslims as children of the Devil who must be exterminated. Although the Crusades ultimately failed, the Europeans, who never shook off their image of Muslims as being nearly subhuman, came back with a vengeance in the eighteenth century and by the close of World War I came to dominate over 95 percent of the Muslim world.

Sadly, in all of this fighting back and forth, little effort was made to understand the values of the other side, and the greatest legacy both Westerners and Muslims are struggling with today is the fear with which each civilization regards the other. These stereotypes have led many Americans and Europeans to conclude that Islam is incompatible with “modern” values centered on democracy, personal rights, equality before the law, and tolerance for the views of others. You may be surprised, however, to learn that the values of Judaism, Christianity, and Islam are not as different as you might think. It is imperative, then, that the truth be told and that the actual beliefs of Islam be examined closely. Western Christian civilization and Islamic civilization have looked each other in the eye for centuries and done nothing more than give each other bruises. The necessities of the modern world have made a reexamination of that mode of exchange a priority.

**Bridging the Next Gap**

Muslims are quite puzzled these days when it comes to sorting out their relationship with the rest of the world. On the one hand, Muslim countries will ally themselves to Western interests, open their markets to international trade, and become valued trading partners. On the other hand, when someone like Saddam Hussein comes along, they suddenly find themselves made out to be monsters and killers. Indeed, the number of anti-Muslim incidents during the Gulf War rose all across America as mosques were defaced and vandalized and ordinary Muslims were jeered at and taunted in the streets. These people, mind you, were American citizens who had nothing to do with the Iraqi regime and what it did during its invasion of Kuwait. Moreover, Muslims in America were almost completely unanimous in their condemnation of the invasion. At the most they wanted the war to end quickly because innocent civilians in Iraq...
were being harmed by the intense bombing raids that seemed to hit nonmilitary targets with ever greater frequency.

The coalition of nations that then President George H. Bush assembled to oust the Iraqis included over a dozen Muslim nations who contributed men and matériel to the war effort. Only one Muslim nation, Jordan, failed to express its disapproval, and it abstained out of fear of Iraqi retaliation. (Iraq is Jordan’s neighbor.) Yet throughout this conflict, even though the Muslim world joined in to fight on the American side, the Western media failed to adequately identify Muslims as allies of the West. Instead, Muslims were sometimes presented as supporters of Saddam Hussein simply on account of a few well-televised, anti-American protests in Palestine and Jordan, and the American public may have been given the wrong impression that the Gulf War was a war between the West and the Arabs (read: Islam). This was how many Muslims read the situation and the dramatic increase in religious bigotry and violence directed against Muslims and Islamic institutions in the West seemed to prove this viewpoint.

Indeed, while many mosques were holding fund-raisers to support the Kuwaitis or support anti-Saddam Iraqi rebel groups, Muslims felt like a suspected fifth column, ready to betray America in a second—through the vandalism of some of their religious centers and harassment in the streets, schools, and places of work. So Muslims have often asked the question: What does it mean when Muslims, who are American citizens, are made to look like the enemy on account of the actions of a few in far away places? This frame of reasoning is not unlike how Japanese Americans felt during World War II when they were rounded up and detained for “security” reasons. The hypocrisy and racism was obvious then, and Muslims feel as if they are the current “foreign” group suffering from misinformation, hysteria, stereotypes, and collective judgments.

Hollywood hasn’t helped to dispel these erroneous ideas either. Movies such as Not Without My Daughter, True Lies, Under Siege, and Delta Force have served to paint Muslims as wife-beaters, bomb-throwers, and swarthy immigrants whose loyalty cannot be trusted. Caricatures of Islam and Muslims are staples of American television, and the types of insults and barbs being slung against them would raise howls of protest and marches in the streets if they were directed toward African Americans, Jews, or Hispanics today, as they were in the past. But Muslims have not yet organized an effective, nationwide antidiscrimination movement to correct such stereotyping and maligning. Several organizations such as the Council on American-Islamic Relations (CAIR) and the Arab-American

---

**Translate This**

The name Muslims use when referring to a mosque is masjid. This translates as the place of bowing down. The English term mosque is derived from the Spanish word for mosquito and came into use during the Christian invasion of Muslim Spain in the fifteenth century. The forces of King Ferdinand and Queen Isabella boasted they would swat out Muslim prayer houses like mosquitoes. Understandably, many Muslims prefer not to use this unfortunate name among themselves.
Anti-Defamation League have been established in recent years and have made some strides in influencing the way many news organizations report on Islam and the Muslim community in America. But there is a long way to go before Islam and Muslims achieve the same level of sensitivity from the popular media that other religious and racial groups have.

Grace Halsell, the former speechwriter for U.S. President Lyndon Baines Johnson wrote in 1994 that

Phrases such as *Muslim militant* and *Islamic terrorist* appear so often in the U.S. media it is as if word processors were programmed to produce only such pairs. Muslims, now numbering about one billion, are aware of the stereotype. Do these Muslims tend to see duplicity in U.S. Middle East policy? Do they perceive that the U.S. and Europe make the same stereotypical judgment for all Muslims, all over the world? If they are not seeing Muslims as authentic human beings, will they deem them expendable? Is this why, they ask, the Americans and the West can so easily turn a blind eye to a genocide of Muslims in Europe?

It would be nearly impossible for me to express in words, however, the frustration that Muslim Americans have felt in their efforts to undo the many forms of stereotypes directed against their religion and communities. But suffice it to say that many Muslims feel that they have been treated unfairly by the media, entertainment industry, and political establishments. As Muslims gain a greater sense of participation in the modern melting pot of ideas and as more people become increasingly comfortable with their Muslim neighbors, realizing they are not as different as they thought, then real progress toward breaking down barriers can be made. Until then Muslims are watching anxiously as each wave of misinformation washes over the television screens and newspaper pages of this otherwise tolerant nation.

Muslims have been migrating to the West in great numbers over the last five decades for the same reasons that other people immigrate: a chance at a more prosperous economic life for themselves and their families. This movement of Muslims into the neighborhoods of North America has given Westerners the chance to come into contact with Muslims and learn directly from them about their values and beliefs. This opportunity is one of the

---

**Just the Facts**

“I hope that in the next century we will come to terms with our abysmal ignorance of the Muslim world. Muslims aren’t a bunch of wackos and nuts. They are decent, brilliant, talented people with a great civilization and traditions of their own, including legal traditions. Americans know nothing about them. There are people in that part of the world with whom we are simply out of touch. That’s a great challenge for the next century.”

—U.S. Supreme Court Justice Anthony Kennedy, December 1999
many benefits of our current time. When your children meet Muslim children, they
discover that Muslims are not very different from themselves. As mosques start to
take their place alongside churches and synagogues in the landscape of the West, the
opportunity to bridge one of the last great remaining cultural gaps becomes a possi-

bility.

### The Least You Need to Know

- The study of Islam in Europe and North America has been colored by false
  stereotypes that have hindered good relations and been the cause of much
  misunderstanding and hostility.
- Muslims are found in every corner of the world and have a history and culture
  that is as rich as any other.
- The population of Muslims is rising in North America and Europe due to im-
  migration and also to conversion.
- Muslims in general feel they have been stereotyped and are being treated un-
  fairly by the media and entertainment industries.
- Nearly all Muslim countries in the world are either allies of the West or
  friendly to the West.
- It is unfair to point to a few villains in the Muslim world and then blame all
  Muslims for the actions of a very few.
In Chapter 1, “Why Has Islam Become So Important?” I discussed the reasons for the general lack of information about Islam among people in the West. I also explored some of the reasons for the cultural prejudice and bias that many Muslims feel as they attempt to make their homes and communities in lands that have been traditionally Judeo-Christian in their orientation. Now I will turn to the religion of Islam itself. What does this mysterious religion teach about God and our place in the universe? Does it have a well-defined cosmology as Judaism and Christianity do, with a definite purpose to the world? What are the codes of belief that Muslims live by? What happens to Muslims after they die? The answers to many of these questions may be surprising in that the ideas and concepts you are about to learn are not as alien or foreign as you might expect.

The Muslim lifestyle is based on faith in God, leading a morally upright life, following a set of daily rituals to remind one’s self of his or her allegiance to God, and doing
good works to improve the lives of all living things. The reward for such a lifestyle is eternity in Heaven. The penalty for self-indulgence is a stint in Hell.

The Core Beliefs of Islam

Islam has seven fundamental beliefs that every Muslim must accept as a part of his or her religion. Over the course of the next several chapters, I will be taking a closer look at each of these beliefs. In Arabic the title of this group of teachings is the *Emanul Mufassil*, or *Faith Listed in Detail*. Every Muslim learns this formula as a part of his or her religious training.

The seven core beliefs are

- Belief in God.
- Belief in the angels.
- Belief in the revealed Books of God.
- Belief in God’s many prophets.
- Accepting that there will be a Last Day.
- Belief in the divine measurement of human affairs.
- Belief in a life after death.

We All Have the Same God

The foundation of Islamic teachings begins with God, whom Muslims call *Allah*. The name Allah comes from the Arabic language and means literally *the one and only God*, as opposed to any old god with a small “g.” The Qur’an itself declares that Allah is the same God that spoke to the Jews and Christians. Therefore, when Muslims speak about God, they have in mind that it is the God of Abraham, Moses, Jesus, and Muhammad. Even Arab Christians, who speak the Arabic language, say “Allah” when they talk about God. (The Spanish word for God is *Dios*, yet nobody makes the claim that it is a different God!)

The Qur’an states it this way:

“Tell [the Jews and Christians], ‘We believe in the Revelation which has come down to us [the Qur’an] and in that which came down to you [the Torah and Gospel]; Our God and your God is one; and it’s to Him we surrender.’” (Qur’an 29:46)

Muslims prefer to use the name *Allah* no matter what language is being spoken. This is because this proper name for the supreme deity cannot be made plural or altered in
any way grammatically in Arabic. I will use the terms *Allah* and *God* interchangeably throughout this book.

The name *Allah* as it is written in Arabic script.

One of the most memorized passages of the Qur’an, the famous *Ayatul Kursi*, or Verse of the Throne, gives a good introduction to the way in which Muslims view God. It goes like this:

“Allah! There is no god but He, the Living, Who needs no other but Whom all others need. He is never drowsy nor does He rest. Space and the Earth belong to Him; who can intercede without His consent? He knows everything people have done and will do, and no one can grasp the least of His knowledge, without His review. His throne extends over the heavens and the Earth and He doesn’t tire in their safekeeping. He alone is the Most High, the Lord Sovereign Supreme.”  
(Qur’an 2:255)

The Islamic concept of our place in the universe hinges on the notion that Allah, or God, is the only true reality. There is nothing that is permanent other than God. Everything exists due to His will and everything depends on Him whether we recognize it or not. Allah is eternal and uncreated. Everything else in the universe is created. Created things will pass away and return to Allah for His review. Not even the stars will last forever.

According to the method of reasoning used in the Qur’an, the proof for God’s existence is found in four areas:

1. The natural world with all its complexity and beauty. This is a sign of an intelligence in the universe because only a designing mind could have constructed it.
Part 1 ➤ Introducing Islam

2. Our human abilities and capacities for thought, belief, invention, creativity, and moral choices. No animal or plant can do what we do.

3. The revelation of God’s guidance and the existence of religion. They show that there is a right way and a wrong way to live life. Prophets, Holy Books, flashes of insight—all these serve as proof that guidance is real and purposefully directed.

4. Finally, our inner feelings. These propel us to seek the meaning in things and show that we have a soul that seeks harmony with nature, the universe, and a higher power. Why should we all want to know the answer to the big question “why” if there is no “because”? The existence of a question necessitates the existence of an answer.

The Universe Is Muslim!

In the realm of creation, Islam makes a clear distinction: There is God and everything besides Him. With created things (the everything besides Him), there are two basic categories: whatever is surrendered to God’s will and whatever is resisting His will. You are either following God’s way or the wrong way. All inanimate matter, such as rocks, comets, water, and even atoms, follows well-defined natural laws regarding their motion, atomic structure, properties and qualities. Islam holds that God established all natural laws and thus every physical material in the universe is surrendered to His will—that is, everything does what it was created to do. In that vein of thought, then, the entire nonliving universe is considered to be surrendered to God. The whole universe follows Islam!

Thus, the Qur’an states that the entire physical universe is Muslim. How can this strange statement be explained? If the word Islam means to surrender to Allah and to acquire peace, then someone or something that does this is called a Muslim, or surrendered one. That is how the label Muslim can be applied to things other than people. Note the similarity between the words Islam and Muslim. Both have the letters S, L, and M. The way Arabic works is simple. You take a base of consonants that have a plain meaning (a root word) and then you add or subtract prefixes and suffixes and alter the vowel patterns to form new, related words. Think about the English word cover. You can have covered, recover, unrecoverable, covering, uncovered, undercover, and so on. Arabic works in a similar fashion. So the name of the religion is Islam and a person

It Is Written

“Do [some people] seek a way of life other than the way of Allah? Is this what they do even though everything within space and the Earth surrenders willingly or unwillingly to Him? Certainly they will return to Allah.” (Qur’an 3:85)
or thing that follows Islam is called a Muslim, or surrendered one, and because the term is generic it can be applied to nonliving things as well—whatever follows God’s will (Islam) is a Muslim.

Animals and plants are also considered to be Muslim in that they follow their innate instincts, which are sort of like their programming. God states in the Qur’an that He taught animals how to do what they do, such as birds flying, bees making honey, plants growing in response to rain, and so on. He even goes so far as to declare that all living plants or animals praise Him in their own way, this praise being an expression of their submissiveness to their Creator. Have you ever wondered why birds sing, frogs croak, or cats meow all night? Not all of it is for mating and establishing territory! Some of it is for the pure joy of being.

### Aladdin Rubbed the Wrong Lamp

Now let’s move on and look at the other category of created things. These are the living creatures that are not automatically Muslim, or surrendered to God’s will and laws. Primarily, I will be talking about human beings and another type of creature called the jinn. Jinns are similar to the genies so often portrayed in Western literature as wild and crazy spirits. Despite popular folklore, however, Islam does not teach that there are jinns, or genies, in lamps or magic rings. Sorry, Aladdin. On the contrary, Islam proposes that these unique life-forms exist for their own sake and that we have no control over them in daily life.

Jinns are the cause of supernatural phenomena and paranormal events. Jinns inhabit another dimension in which you cannot see them, and they have no substance you can detect. They can be good or evil in their disposition. The evil jinns prey upon human beings by goading us into doing wrong. They do not have as much free will as we humans do precisely because they already know without any doubt that Allah exists. The Qur’an declares that jinns are made out of the residue of scorched fire. Muslim scholars have long speculated that jinns may exist in the realm of thermal energy or in the x-ray or energy wave spectrums. They can
contact us only through our thoughts, in which they can “whisper” suggestions and other types of information in our brains, possibly altering our brain waves. Islam rejects the idea that the spirits of the dead walk the earth as ghosts. Instead, Muslims believe that it is jinns who haunt houses, possess people, spook animals, give predictions to psychics, and cause many other inexplicable phenomena. While Christianity relies on the concept of fallen angels to explain the forces of evil, Islam teaches that all angels are good and cannot be corrupted. The angels are all Muslims and have no choice in the matter.

Touched by an Angel

Islam accepts the existence of angels. They are made of light energy and can materialize into any form they need to in the physical world. They have no gender. They also have no free will and exist only to serve Allah. While they’re intelligent, they have no emotional shortcomings or foibles. Think of them as something like God’s robots. They do as they are told, though God is not dependent on them. The following list presents the top four angels and their functions:

- **Jibra’il** (Gabriel) This angel brings revelations to the prophets.
- **Azra’il** This angel is the Malikul Mawt, or Angel of Death.
- **Mika’il** (Michael) This angel controls the weather.
- **Israfiil** This angel will blow the horn signaling the end of the universe.

Islam assigns angels to many other types of tasks. One of these is to watch over people and note what they do. Another job of the angels is to look for people who are praising God and to join them. You will be learning more about the different types of angels and their functions as I cover other aspects of Islamic teachings in later chapters.

Accepting the Burden

The Qur’an says that long before God made people He offered the gift of self-awareness and free will to every living and nonliving thing in the universe. The mountains, the animals, the angels, the planets, the stars, any of these could have accepted and become beings with a power unlike anything in the virtually programmed universe. Anyone or anything that accepted those gifts, called “the trust”
in the Qur’an, would transcend nature and be able to conceive of itself and make decisions using an intellect and the power of reason.

Of course with such a gift would come a large measure of responsibility for one’s actions. There is no wrong if a squirrel steals a nut from another squirrel; it’s just what squirrels do. But when you can choose whether or not to do wrong, then you ascend to a whole new level. Now you have right and wrong, good and evil. The Qur’an declares that every object in the universe declined this “gift” out of fear of the consequences.

Was God Right to Make Us?

Why would God want to give such a gift when He already had complete control over everything in the universe, much like the control a model train enthusiast has over the tracks, cars, and placement of the small figures in the train layout? Why create beings that could choose to love (or hate) on their own? No one can really answer the question of why, for the Qur’an simply states that God created humans and jinns for the sole purpose of serving Him and surrendering to His will. That may sound cold or mechanistic, but it really isn’t when you look at what people are—physical creatures who have a built-in need for meaning, love, and purpose. People who don’t get these things suffer from depression.

Islam merely says that our most basic needs are fulfilled on the ultimate level when we achieve union with God’s goodwill. He is the source for love and all other noble qualities, so the more we love Him and focus on Him the greater peace we feel inside our hearts. Stated plainly, the closer we get to our Creator the more content we become. Recent studies by reputable scientists have found proof that religious people live longer because they are calmer and freer from stress. Hey, I’m sure such people won’t argue with that!

There is one possible explanation for why Allah wanted to create beings who could choose to love and follow Him. Although it hasn’t been confirmed as fully authentic by our scholars, there is an often

Ask the Imam

During the height of Islamic civilization some 800 years ago, Muslim psychologists diagnosed stress this way: The further away you are from God, the more stressed you will be. They then counseled their patients on how to increase their relationship with God through prayer, fasting, aromatherapy, reading, reflection, and self-denial.

It Is Written

“What Allah said to the rose and caused it to bloom in hearty laughter, He said to my heart and made it a hundred times prettier.”

—Jalaluddin Rumi, the Mathnawi
circulated saying of the Prophet Muhammad in which he says that God Himself said, “I was a treasure that no one knew. I wished to be known.” A more authentic quote from God related to us through the Prophet says that “I created the world for man and man for Me.” When you think of the deep love that abides within the meaning of these lines, you begin to realize that life, and the ability to make choices, might not be so bad after all. If love and fellowship with God is the ultimate reward for our right choice, then following God’s will is actually the best thing that any one of us could ever do.

God knew what He was doing when He made us this way. Look at it from this angle: When we have children, there is the potential every day for them to be mad at us or hate us, but when they express love for us it is the best thing in the universe. If we didn’t take the chance of having them, we wouldn’t experience that special love. One moment of genuine love is worth more than weeks of anger. If all we wanted was obedience and nothing more, then we would choose gerbils or dogs for companions in our homes. Allah wants us to love Him as much as He loves us. However, unlike us, He is not dependent on our loving Him, but isn’t love a nice thing to receive?

**Soul Soup**

Getting back to the time before there were human beings, when all things and animals declined the offer of self-awareness, we find that God finally made the offer to us. Humans weren’t around in physical bodies on Earth. Instead we existed only as a murky prototype and we were with Allah in a sort of primordial soup of spirit matter. Think of all our souls packed in one large ball, none being individual or unique. It is from this mass of spirit material that each individual human would later get its spirit or soul. (The word for spirit in Arabic is *ruh*.)

Allah offered the gift of self-awareness to that spirit-collective, and it accepted the challenge (though that was foolish, the Qur’an notes). Humans, when they appeared as physical creatures on Earth, would have free will, self-awareness, intelligence, reason, and a moral compass called a *fitrah*, or natural inclination, to help guide them through life. Incidentally, this is how Islam explains our superiority over animal intelligence and abilities. Recent studies into the workings of the brain have even uncovered evidence that we are already “wired” for spirituality. That is, our brains respond to religious stimuli and cause us to feel euphoric.

**Our Compass Points Inward**

Why were we implanted with a moral compass? Isn’t rational intelligence enough to guide our free choices? That is the claim that some scientists have put forward.
in recent years. This theory, however, has failed in many respects. The mere application of reason alone as a means of solving the world’s problems may appear a valid procedure on paper, but as Islam points out, all of us have an inherent weakness. We all desire personal pleasure and the fulfillment of our animal urges. These are the instinctual motivations that cause us to hoard food, gather wealth, and procreate. A secular rationalist, thinking himself or herself free of religious obligations, could still act from selfishness, desire, emotion, or anger. As an example, global warming could be solved tomorrow; all the science is there. But people, many scientists included, want their MTV, their big cars, their air-conditioned homes, and their lighted walkways. According to the thinking of such people: Hey, who cares if people around the world are starving; we use our science to make our own lives cushy!

Reason alone cannot guide us to right actions given that our animal urges plague us. We need a nudge from inside to counterbalance the animal in all of us. That nudge is our fitrah, or inner nature and inclination to seek God. Think of the fitrah as that little voice in your head that takes you to task when you do something wrong or that makes you look longingly upon someone performing a selfless act of religious devotion or sacrificing for the greater good. The Prophet Muhammad once said that every child is born with the natural inclination to surrender to Allah, that is, to be a Muslim, but the child’s parents make it a Jew, a Christian, or a Zoroastrian. This is a way of saying that our environment can shape and mold us into life patterns that are far from our real nature.

When a child is born, the child enters a world in which the signs of God’s creative power found in nature and the child’s own fitrah seek to influence him or her to believe in God. Other forces, as we shall see, will attempt to take the child’s focus away from God. At birth we are also equipped with a kind of free will. What does that mean in practical terms? It means that we humans have the choice of surrendering ourselves to Allah or of rejecting Him, preferring to focus only on creature comforts and temporary worldly interests. Thus we are given the power to choose whether to become Muslim, that is whether to surrender to God’s universal way.

"Our passions are so surely governed by injustice and self-interest that they are dangerous guides; particularly suspect them when they appear most logical."
—La Rochefoucauld, Maxims, 1961

The word ruh means your spirit or soul. Muslims believe the ruh comes from Allah and is bestowed upon babies in the womb by an angel.
Can You Stand on One Leg?

Interestingly enough, Islam teaches that our physical bodies are already Muslim in that our blood flows, our organs work, and our cells reproduce, just as they were made to do. It is within the heart and mind where we have control over our choices and beliefs. It’s as if we’re half Muslim and half not. The very purpose of our existence, then, is to use our eyes, ears, brains, emotions, and fitrah to come to the realization that God is real and that we must surrender our will to His will. By doing so we can join the rest of the universe and exist in harmony with the only true reality that is. There is a faint echo here of the Buddhist and Taoist ideal of being at one with the universe.

By deciding not to fight against Allah’s good way, we live a stress-free life in harmony with all things around us. When we say, “I will not fight against you anymore, God,” we float peacefully in the great river that is life until we ultimately reach our final destination and return to God as sincere as we can make ourselves.

The Least You Need to Know

- Islamic beliefs are not difficult to comprehend. Ideas about God, angels, prophets, and such make Islamic concepts seem close to Judeo-Christian concepts.
- The word Islam means peace and surrender to God.
- Humans have a kind of free will that God is testing.
- Islam believes in a spirit world populated by angels and by creatures called jinns.
- People have a moral compass called fitrah, which directs them to look for God.
Looking at Life
the Islamic Way

In This Chapter
➤ Find out about the three stages of the soul according to Islam
➤ Learn about Shaytan, the Islamic word for Satan, and how he came to be
➤ Beware the major sins and how forgiveness from God is obtained
➤ Understand the meaning of accountability
➤ Learn about the Islamic concept of reward and punishment from God

Philosophers throughout the ages have attempted to tackle the issue of good and evil. What makes a good person go bad, and how can a bad person reform himself or herself? Every religion has its own answer to these questions, and Islam is no different. But whereas other spiritual traditions may emphasize external forces as the primary cause for our sinful behavior, Islam first looks inward. It does so, not with a broad brush by claiming we are evil by nature, such as Christianity asserts, but by delving into the soul and its secrets.

Islam holds that we are all born basically good but have a natural weakness due to our physical nature. Social scientists call this our desire for pleasure and aversion to pain. Through these creature instincts we have the capacity to fall into sin. Islam also has the concept of an evil enemy, a Devil that preys upon our hearts and minds. However, this being has only limited power over us and God has given us the tools to combat him. The result is that we can elevate ourselves to a higher level of spirituality or
descend to a deplorable moral state. God will judge our conduct in this great struggle after our physical death and resurrection on the Day of Judgment, and we will be punished or rewarded as a consequence.

## The Three-Fold Journey

All human beings have three levels of self-development through which they must pass during their lives:

- **The Animal Self**  
  Basic instincts and desires.

- **The Accusing Self**  
  Higher-order questioning of our purpose.

- **The Restful Self**  
  Transcending worldliness as a focus.

These are the stages we attain as we struggle to come to the final realization that God is, in fact, real and that we ought to move closer to Him. Islam teaches that we are all born sinless and free of sin. This is the condition of our soul upon birth. But being creatures of the flesh, we can be drawn into the pleasures of the flesh as embodied in the world around us. This is best demonstrated in the spoiled child syndrome. No child is born evil, but if a child’s every urging and craving is fulfilled, if the child never learns any self-control, then the child becomes unruly and impatient. The soul’s journey, Islam would say, got off to a bad start.

The aim of our *fitrah*, or inner nature, is to countermand this trend and elevate our minds to seek God. The journey out of the first stage, our binding tie to seek ever greater resources unto ourselves, is perhaps the hardest of all. The reward for reaching the end of this struggle, however, is eternal reward, though not everyone will reach his or her full potential. As the Qur’an says, “By the soul and the proportion and order given to it; And its innate knowledge of wrong and right; Whoever purifies it will succeed. And whoever corrupts it will fail!” (Qur’an 91:7–10)

### The Animal in All of Us

The first stage of our soul is activated from birth and is called the *Animal Self*. During this stage our basic desires for food, sex, creature comforts, and wealth guide our life choices. People who remain stuck in this stage as they grow older wind up living only for themselves and their own pleasure. Think of all those people in the world who do nothing but indulge their whims. No matter how rich or poor, educated or ignorant, famous or unknown, all of us are susceptible to the temptations of our earthly desire for self-satisfaction. Christians call such people hedonists. The Qur’an

---

**Translate This**

**Iman** (sometimes spelled *Emaan* or *Eman*) is the Arabic word for faith or belief. It comes from the root word *amuna*, which means to believe, to trust, and to feel safe.
often refers contemptuously to “the life of this world,” describing it as nothing more than “play and amusement, mutual rivalry, hoarding wealth and boasting.” “How can you turn down God?” the Qur’an asks, “for even if you have everything in the world, you can’t take it with you when you die.”

The struggle out of our Animal Self stage is made even harder by the efforts of an evil jinn named Shaytan. Shaytan and all those jinns who follow him seek to corrupt and ruin us so that we will eventually forget our Creator. They do this by playing upon our fears, desires, and emotions, ultimately causing us to make bad choices if we succumb to their intimations. As you might have noticed, the spelling of the name Shaytan is close to that of Satan. But while some of the concepts are similar, there are some important differences between the Islamic view of the Devil and what is believed in the Christian and Jewish religions. You will find more about Shaytan and where he came from in Chapter 7, “In the Beginning ... An Islamic Perspective.”

Stepping Up to the Plate

When we discard the life-is-a-big-party attitude and begin to pay attention to our fitrah, we receive a flash of insight, a deep thought. Here is the chance to enter into the second level of our soul’s development, the Accusing Self. Now the big questions come flooding in: Why am I here? What’s it all for? Is what I’m doing right? What happens to me when I die? Is there a next life?

A person may reflect on the meaning of life for weeks, months, or years until finally becoming motivated to seek spiritual guidance. The person has become ready to look for God. Generally, a person will move toward what is familiar, and thus you can see people becoming fervent practitioners of Christianity, Judaism, Buddhism, and so on. Islam teaches that as a sincere seeker tries to fully satisfy his or her spiritual hunger, the seeker will eventually move beyond those previously revealed (and compromised) religions and into the Islamic way of life that Allah revealed as His last religious “installment” to the world.

After this second stage has been entered and we realize through our heart and mind that we need God, we can now try to mold our life according to His universal way.
We become less attached to the life of this world, more introspective and less irritable and stressed. If we were lucky enough to find the Islamic path, then real progress can be made. Through a daily regimen of prayer, reflection, fasting, and study, and a consciousness of morality, our heart becomes more and more at ease.

**The Supreme Achievement**

One day, through devoted effort, we may achieve complete peace and tranquility in our heart. Now we have entered the third and final stage of our soul’s development. Nothing in the world has a hold on us any longer. We lead lives of quiet contemplation and are not phased by any tragedy or bounty that may come our way. We realize we will die and return to God and that this whole life is a test for us.

This third stage occurs when a soul becomes a Restful Self, awaiting the meeting with the Creator. The individual still has a job, family, and vacations: Islam has no place for monasteries or asceticism. While still maintaining a normal life, the person is no longer living only to satisfy himself or herself but realizes the higher purpose of life.

**Sin and Redemption**

I’ve talked a lot about following God’s way in your life, so what does it mean to surrender to God? For a Muslim, surrendering to God means to believe in Him, to follow a lifestyle that promotes harmony on Earth and among people, and to follow a personal code of morality that can lead to an ever higher understanding of God’s nature.

God’s revelations have guided people throughout history in how to do this. The original Torah, Gospel, scrolls of Abraham, Psalms of David, and countless other religiously inspired texts detail how to achieve such a goal. Islam accepts the validity of them all, though the Qur’an points out that no previous revelation from God has survived without alteration or editing by human hand. The Qur’an, which is considered the last installment of divine guidance to the world, declares itself the culmination of all of God’s previous revelations to us and thus is the source for how to live a Godly lifestyle. The Qur’an, incidentally, says it is the one book that God won’t allow people to change.

Islam makes a clear distinction between good and evil. Islamic Law, which is derived from the rules contained in the Qur’an and the oral traditions of the Prophet Muhammad, is a detailed code concerned with do’s and don’ts, good and evil, and relations among people. A Jewish or Christian person might be very surprised to learn that nearly every virtue one can think
of in the Western religious tradition has its counterpart in Islam. Charity, honesty, thrift, compassion, self-control, and integrity are the goals of a Muslim, while dishonesty, violent behavior, greed, jealousy, gossip, and sexual promiscuity are considered sins that deserve to be condemned. Although Islam has no single listing of a “Ten Commandments” or a “Seven Deadly Sins,” there are ample Qur’anic verses and prophetic teachings to put together a list of over a hundred virtues and vices for a Muslim to be aware of. Some of these are listed next.

The major sins in Islam are

► Committing idolatry.
► Stealing from an orphan.
► Committing adultery or fornication.
► Disobeying parents.
► Collecting interest on investments.
► Accusing a chaste woman falsely.
► Giving false testimony.
► Committing murder or suicide.
► Committing infanticide.
► Enslaving a free person.
► Engaging in slander and gossip.

The virtuous deeds in Islam are

► Speaking the truth.
► Being kind to family.
► Honoring parents.
► Giving in charity.
► Feeding the poor.
► Fighting against injustice.
► Freeing slaves.
► Returning borrowed property.
► Studying and learning.
► Being kind to animals.

**How Does God Forgive?**

Islam teaches that when you commit a bad deed, or a sin, it will be held against you on Judgment Day. The only way to remove the stain of that sin is to follow a four-step process of repentance called making *tawba*. To receive God’s forgiveness, you must
➤ Feel remorseful about the sin.
➤ Repent of your action to God by saying, “My Lord forgive me.”
➤ Make restitution for the sin if possible.
➤ Resolve never to do the sin again. God has promised to forgive our sins if we seek His forgiveness sincerely.

**Law and Order**

In addition, for some sins in which other people’s rights or safety were harmed, there are prescribed penalties that must be paid in this life. These are a kind of deterrent to show people that theft, murder, arson, and other social crimes have consequences. Unfortunately, the way the Western media presents it, you would think that in Islam chopping off a hand or a nose or a toe was the norm for punishing people. In fact, there are only a few crimes that incur physical punishment and even then Islamic Law allows the judge to forgo those if mitigating circumstances allow. (The only physical punishments are cutting off the hand for repeated theft, flogging for certain crimes like fornication, and capital punishment for murder, treachery, and the like.) Personal moral sins require only the four-step process of repentance outlined before, which is done by an individual in private. As you may have noticed, Islamic Law mixes personal morality and civil and criminal law into one overall code in keeping with the religious view that there is no difference between the secular and spiritual realms, though only criminal activity is prosecuted in front of a judge.

**Everything Counts When It Counts**

Islam does not accept the Christian idea that you need to ask a priest to forgive you or pray to a Son of God for deliverance. Even more incomprehensible to Muslims is the Christian belief of being “saved” in which a person who asks Jesus into his or her heart automatically goes to heaven no matter what the person does later in life, good or bad. Islam teaches
that you save or damn yourself every day through your belief, or lack of it, your actions, good or bad, and your overall record. God’s mercy will play a part on Judgment Day because no human can ever hope to be perfect enough to earn heaven. God, in His mercy, will forgive much and overlook much, but this doesn’t absolve us of our responsibility to try to be as virtuous as possible. The Muslim is taught that there is an open line from each of us to God, and when we pray for forgiveness we must each ask God ourselves, every day, until the day we leave this earth.

Our sins, if we don’t repent of them, will be held against us. Likewise, good deeds are considered the hallmark of our true faith. Every time we do a good or bad deed it is recorded with God and will be a part of our record come Judgment Day. Islam, however, does not teach that you earn your way to heaven, as some Christian theologians have charged. Salvation in Islam is founded on believing in and surrendering your will to God and nothing more. Avoiding sin and leading a righteous life are merely proofs of your faith. A Muslim would respond to the false accusation that Muslims get to heaven by deeds by quoting the Apostle Paul who said, “Faith without works is dead.” So the emphasis on good deeds in Islam is for another, more noble purpose.

The Last Payday

God will reward good even as He will punish evil. This being the case, the more good you do, the more rewards you will get from God. A Muslim, then, is basically given more incentive to do good in the world than to do evil. Think of why Communism failed all over the world. Weren’t its precepts noble? No one owns anything; everyone is paid the same, regardless. In practice, however, what happened was that nobody worked hard because everyone took the attitude that extra hard work didn’t matter. A hard worker would get no recognition. Capitalism, on the other hand, succeeds on a certain level because the promise of greater returns for greater effort propels people onward and forward in a mad rush. The Qur’an says, “Every soul has a goal to work towards. Make your goal doing good and race with others for this purpose.” (Qur’an 2:148)
Allah rewards us according to the amount of our good deeds. It's a kind of religious capitalism whose results can only make life better for everyone. If more people rushed to help the poor, visit the sick, adopt orphans, and assist the elderly, there would be no need for government welfare, nursing homes, and the like. In addition, the Prophet Muhammad emphasized the inherent value of doing good for others by saying it would make our own faith stronger and increase our satisfaction in life.

**Our Report Card**

All of our good and bad deeds are recorded in our own individual record. On the Day of Judgment, which will occur sometime in the future, we will be confronted with our book of deeds. Using the yardstick of our faith, deeds, and motivations, we will then be sent to either Heaven or Hell, barring Allah’s extra mercy upon souls who would otherwise deserve punishment. Quite simply, the Day of Judgment is when we get our grade for our test in life. Were we greedy and immoral or kind and hopeful in God? An interesting caveat is that on Judgment Day, when our record is read, anyone we ever wronged will be brought in front of us and they will be told to help themselves to our stash of good deeds in order to compensate them for what we did to them. This gives new meaning to the phrase, “Get your affairs in order before you die!”

Christianity teaches that people are already doomed to Hell unless they believe that God’s son died for their sins going back to the sin of Adam and Eve. Islam, however, does not teach that people are born sinful. Rather, Islam teaches that we are all born spotless and that throughout our lives we can do either good or bad based on the interplay of our *fitrah*, intelligence, and God’s revealed guidance versus Shaytan and our lowly animal desires. Salvation in Islam comes from making the choice while alive to accept Allah and mold your life according to the way of life He has established. That life is based on morality, daily and annual rituals, and repentance for your weakness or misdeeds.

**There’ll Be Hell to Pay**

Why is there the punishment of Hell if we fail God’s test? The consequence of rejecting God and staying in the Animal Self stage is that our soul becomes corrupted, or warped. We took our gifts of free will and intelligence and wasted them, burying our *fitrah* in a life filled with meaningless pleasure. In that case, our soul must be repaired before it can enter again into God’s presence in the *akhirah*, or next life. Thus, we may find ourselves in Hell where our soul is cleansed by fire of all the dirt we heaped upon it through our immorality and misdeeds in the world. The Qur’an explains the two fates this way:
“Shaytan makes them promises and creates in them false desires, but Shaytan’s promises are nothing but deception. [His followers] will have their dwelling in Hell, and they won’t find any way to escape it. But those who believe and do what is right will soon be admitted by Us into gardens beneath which rivers flow to live there forever. Allah’s promise is the truth and whose word can be truer than Allah’s? Anyone who does what is right, whether they are male or female, and has faith, they will enter Paradise and not the least bit of injustice will be done to them.” (Qur’an 2:120–123)

When the deserved punishment is finished, the newly cleansed soul may again rejoin God’s presence and receive its reward in Heaven for any true belief he or she had and any good done. Some souls, however, are so warped by their owners that they will never get out of Hell and will remain there forever. Think of Hitler or Charles Manson—can anyone ever imagine their redemption? Although, as we are taught to say in Islam, God knows best. In other words, He knows the secrets of our hearts better than we know them ourselves. You will find more about Heaven and Hell in Chapter 6, “Islam on Heaven and Hell.”

Just the Facts

Some Western writers have accused Islam of being licentious due to the large number of detailed descriptions of Paradise found in the Qur’an. Islam answers this charge by countering that nearly all of the pleasures of Earth are regulated or even forbidden for a Muslim, so their reward for obeying God in this life is guilt-free indulgence in the next.

The Least You Need to Know

➤ Muslims believe that people are in this life to be tested on whether or not they will surrender to God’s will and lead a moral lifestyle.

➤ There are three levels of personal spiritual development: the Animal Self, the Accusing Self, and the Contented Self.

➤ Islam does not teach that humans are inherently sinful. In Islam, sin is not a consequence of birth but rather the result of a choice that the individual has made to commit a bad deed.

➤ God can forgive any person who asks for forgiveness and is sincere.

➤ Muslims believe people will be held accountable on a Day of Judgment and will be rewarded by God with eternity in Heaven or punishment in Hell.
In This Chapter

➤ Learn in detail about the Muslim concept of God
➤ Revisit the main religious beliefs prevalent in Arabia during Muhammad’s time
➤ Discover the Ninety-nine Names of Allah
➤ Learn what God means to the ordinary Muslim

Islam has a very well-defined conception of what God is and what He is not. Perhaps no other religion has spent as much time defining God and trying to understand how much we cannot understand about Him. Given that Islam categorically forbids making any representations of God, Muslim ideas of God are not affected by changes in social values or mores. For example, until recently in the Western world, God has traditionally been referred to in the masculine gender, and representations show God as a man. Now, as a result of the women’s rights movement, some people are using the feminine gender when making references to God. Muslims take a different approach and are content with a concept of God that has far-reaching implications in our modern world.

For the Muslim, God is not personified into forms or shapes created by the imagination of men and women. (How can you paint or carve what you never saw?) The corpus of literature and the arts produced in Islamic civilization are also strangely absent of divine imagery. Although many other religions have prohibitions against making pictures and statues depicting God, only Islam has succeeded so well that the concept
is unknown. As you will see, what we lack in artwork about God we make up for in a compelling intellectual and spiritual ideology.

**God and Hollywood**

The Islamic concept of God has often been called the most uncompromising monotheism, next to Judaism, in the world. Islam has a very definite conception of God and how to understand Him, and it has no time for concepts that bring God down to the level of human imagination. With the establishment of Islam as a third major influence in the religious life of North America, Muslims must face a new set of challenges and opportunities. Chief among these is battling the distortions about God and His nature that appear in the mind of the general public and in popular culture.

Besides promoting disbelief in God, a trend that Islam abhors, today’s movies have transformed God into a fun-loving old man, such as in the *Oh, God* movies (starring George Burns) or have typecast Him as a stern yet fickle psycho as portrayed by Dustin Hoffman in *Joan of Arc*. Given that Christians worship Jesus as God, the portrayal of a confused blue-eyed flower child in white robes running around Galilee doesn’t help the image of God either (think Martin Scorsese). In Hollywood, God seems to be whatever the director wants Him to be. Hey, and you don’t even have to pay Him!

During the Christian protests of *The Last Temptation of Christ*, Muslim organizations asked their followers not to attend the movie theaters that were showing this controversial film. But whereas Christians were defending the honor of their God, Muslims were more interested in upholding the honor of a man who is considered to be one of the greatest prophets. By the way, Muslims protest all movies and cartoons about prophets. Disney’s kid-oriented portrayals of such figures as Moses and Joseph and the never-ending stream of made-for-TV movies about David and Jesus are considered blasphemous by Muslims, who see any attempt to represent a prophet as wrong.

By showing the face of a prophet, these movies and cartoons give people a false idea about what the prophet looked like and thus they begin to judge that prophet by the actor’s looks and performance. People become less interested in the prophet’s teachings. When was the last time you saw an unattractive man playing the part of a prophet? Such portrayals sell physical charm, not a God-inspired way of living, which is, incidentally, what the prophets stood for.

**Ask the Imam**

Islam forbids all realistic representations of people or animals. Muhammad said that on the Day of Judgment God will command people to put life in what they fashioned. Exceptions are made for children’s toys and art for kids.
There Is Only One God

Muslims look aghast these days at the efforts of Western popular culture to promote the idea that we are all gods inside our hearts or that God lives in us, and we can tap into His power like some sort of personal energy reservoir. It seems people are creating God in their own image and justifying any action they engage in by claiming that “God is Love” and so will condone all types of behavior.

It seems sometimes that authentic knowledge of God and a seriousness about what He represents have descended to the level of a joke. Muslims stand, along with sincere people of every monotheistic religion, like lighthouses in the storm, calling people to resist the false suggestions of Shaytan, or Satan. Muslims have been among the staunchest defenders in the world of their ideology about God. The Qur’an warned us long ago that the desire of Shaytan is to separate us from God, and what better way for him to succeed than to get all of us to call ourselves gods and goddesses or to make up gods of our own!

Does God Show Himself to Us?

Has anyone ever seen God? If you were to believe the claims of televangelists, God comes and visits people in their living rooms all the time. Islam records only one incident in which a person came close to seeing God. The Qur’an records that the Prophet Moses, who is considered to be one of the greatest prophets in Islam, asked Allah if he could see Him. Moses was all alone on Mount Sinai and thought now would be his chance to look upon the Being he loved more than any other. Allah asked him, “Don’t you believe in Me?” Moses affirmed that he did but that he wanted to see Allah to satisfy his own longing. Allah said that if Moses could keep his eye on the next mountain then he would see Him. Allah began to materialize His power on the mountain, which shook and crumbled in a great cataclysm. Moses couldn’t withstand the sight, however, and passed out without seeing what he wanted to see. His faith was given quite a boost, though! So no one has ever seen God in this life.

It Is Written

“These [false gods] are nothing but names that you have devised, you and your ancestors for which God has sent down no authority (whatever). They follow nothing but conjecture and what their own souls desire! Even though there has already come to them Guidance from their Lord!” (Qur’an 53:23)
Islam on God

As explained in Chapter 2, “Food for the Soul,” Islam teaches that its God is the same God as the God of the Jews and Christians. So how does Islam see God in its own terms? How is its view alike yet different from the Judeo-Christian tradition? The first cardinal belief in Islam about God, or Allah, is that He is only one Being, without division, children, or partners. God is strong enough and capable enough not to need anyone’s help or to divide Himself into parts to do different jobs. The Islamic phrase that is most often repeated by Muslims on a daily basis (during prayer) and that reflects these teachings is *La ilaha ill Allah*, which translates as “There is no god other than God.” In addition, Muslims are taught that He is not the God of a chosen people nor can any racial or ethnic community lay claim to His exclusive attention.

Understandably, the Qur’an completely rejects the Christian Trinity theory. It answers the idea of a three-in-one God with these words: “They are blasphemers, those who say that God is the third of three in a Trinity. There is no god except the One God.” (Qur’an 5:73) In the same spirit, Islam would also respectfully disagree with the Jewish belief that God has an all-time covenant with them and a special relationship that divides the entire world by race into Jews and Gentiles. The idea that God makes any kind of racial preferences is reprehensible in Islam. The Qur’an says in this regard, “The Jews and the Christians declare, ‘We are the sons of God and He loves us.’ Ask them, ‘So why does He punish you for your sins (like everyone else)? But no, you are only some people from among the (many) nations He has created.’” (Qur’an 5:17)

Needless to say, the practice of idolatry in which there are many gods, each with its own sphere of influence, is considered ludicrous by the Qur’an, which says, “God has birthed no son nor is there any god along with Him. If there were many gods, behold each god would have taken away what it had created and some would have lorded it over others!” (Qur’an 23:91)
Pagan Arab Beliefs Before the Coming of Islam

The Prophet Muhammad was born in Arabia in 570 C.E. He grew up in the city of Mecca, which at that time was a major trading town. Although a few Christians or Jews lived in or around the city, the vast majority of people were Arabs who worshipped idols. They believed in the concept of an overall Creator, but they felt that God was too remote to be concerned with human affairs. Thus, they venerated idols, thinking they were “convenient gods” who would bring luck, safety, good business deals, and other bounties on a daily basis.

It is in this context that Muhammad grew up. Interestingly enough, from his earliest age he disliked idol-worship, equating it with superstition. This is partly why Muslims believe God chose him to be His last prophet to the world. Beginning with Muhammad’s first preachings in 610 C.E., we find the earliest revelations of the Qur’an regarding the evils of worshipping anything else besides God. The Qur’an declared that God is not remote and is not contained in a wood or stone carving. He hears our prayers. He knows our thoughts and actions, and He needs no partners or lesser gods to do His will in the universe.

Just the Facts

The pagan Arabs accepted a supreme God over all the demigods they worshipped, but they considered Allah to be too powerful and remote to make any difference in their lives.

Mecca is located in southwestern Arabia at the junction of several ancient trading routes.
The Qur’an Speaks

One of the most memorized portions of the Qur’an is the short chapter entitled “Sincerity,” which states:

“The Qur’an Speaks

Tell people that He is One God; Allah, the Eternal Absolute. He neither gives birth nor was He ever begotten, and there is nothing equal to Him.” (Qur’an 112:1–4)

For the pagan Arab this message was completely new. In their world, magic, spirits, shamans, luck, totems, and idols were the defining characteristics of religion. Islam challenged the very core of their belief system. Thus it was inevitable that they would oppose Islam when it was first offered to them by the Prophet Muhammad as an alternative belief system.

Man and God

Contrary to the beliefs that the pre-Islamic Arabs held, Islam teaches that every person has to face God alone. No one can look to another god or person to save himself or herself in this life or in the next. The Qur’an goes so far as to declare that on the Day of Judgment the false idols in which people placed their hope will be brought forward and made to speak. The idols will reject the people who used to worship them and will taunt them, saying that they were fools for believing in gods of their own making. In desperation the idol-worshippers will even start to blame Shaytan, but he will shrug off the blame, saying he only suggested it. He didn’t make them call on false gods. The Qur’an is very clear about blame being laid squarely upon our own shoulders. Listen to how cold Shaytan’s response will be when we try to blame him for our misdeeds.

“And Shaytan will say [on Judgment Day], ‘It was Allah Who gave you a true promise. I made a promise to you also but I failed in my promise. I had no authority over you except to suggest things to you, but you listened to me. So don’t blame me, only blame your own souls. I can’t listen to your cries nor can you listen to mine. I reject your former act in associating me with Allah. For wrongdoers (like you) there must be a terrible Penalty.’” (Qur’an 14:22)
Do Muslims Believe in Original Sin?

If Islam teaches that we all have to bear our own burdens on Judgment Day, how does this idea stack up to Christianity’s view that Jesus takes on all our sins? Is there a doctrine of original sin and atonement in Islam? To answer this question, we need to realize that the entire edifice of Christianity hangs on the assumption that because Adam and Eve sinned all human beings have the taint of that original sin on their hearts. According to this theory, everyone is automatically doomed to Hell because of it. God had to divide Himself into parts and send His own begotten child to earth to be killed by people to atone for this first sin. Believing in Jesus’ death and rebirth, Christians say, is what saves us from a curse God can’t lift otherwise.

Before going further, we need to mention that the Christian concept of God having a son is directly addressed in the Qur’an. Islam considers Jesus to be a prophet of God, born of the Virgin Mary as a special miracle from God. Muslims accept the Virgin birth but consider the lack of a father in Jesus’ creation as being on the same level as the lack of parents in Adam’s creation. Muslims do not take Jesus’ birth as a sign of godhood or as a sign that Jesus was the son of a god. The Qur’an states, “The likeness of Jesus in the sight of God is that of Adam. He created him from dust and said, ‘Be’ and he was.”

The Qur’an even denies that Jesus was killed on a cross. It says that he was not killed or crucified but that it was made to appear so. What happened to Jesus, then? Did he run off to India and study Buddhism like some New Age proponents argue? The Qur’an states only that God saved Jesus and “took him to Himself.” Muslims interpret this to mean that God took Jesus to paradise and is keeping him there until he must return to Earth to defeat the anti-Christ. For more details, see Chapter 9, “From Adam to Armageddon.”

Islam flatly rejects any notion of original sin and says we are all born pure. Yes, Adam and Eve sinned, the Qur’an says, but God forgave them when they asked for His mercy. No sin was passed on to their descendants. Thus, it is our cumulative faith and actions that determine our salvation. The Qur’an declares that Allah can forgive any sin He wants to, whenever He wants to, and that He has no children nor any need for them to act as sacrifices. Certainly God would never allow Himself to be tortured and killed by His creatures before He would forgive them! The Qur’an explains that it is beneath the majesty of God to do such things. It is

Just the Facts

Sometimes God refers to Himself as “We” or “Us” in the Qur’an. A few Christian scholars have suggested that this shows that there is room for the Trinity theory in Islam, but this plural usage of pronouns is merely a common technique called the “Royal We,” which is used in many languages. In other words, a powerful king might say, “We decree that...” even though he is one man. What he is emphasizing by saying We is “Me and My power are decreeing that...”
no sign of love for a Muslim that God would die for him or her. So the doctrines of original sin and the Trinity have no room in the Islamic concept of God because Islam asserts that God’s power is great enough for Him to forgive anything without requiring His death first.

The opening verses of Chapter 2 of the Qur’an are rendered in artistic Arabic calligraphy, eighteenth-century Mauresque style.

(From the private collection of Said Salah, reprinted from the 1840 Paris printing)

How Close Is Close?

But does God’s absolute power make Him remote and unconcerned? Islam says no. We can build a personal relationship with Allah because He can hear all our thoughts and because he knows our feelings. He is not far away and cold. “He’s as close as our jugular vein” says the popular Qur’anic verse. In the Qur’an Allah says, “Call upon Me. I listen to the call of every person when they invoke Me.” Although we don’t phrase our creed in quite the same way as Christians might—“Accept Allah into your hearts and be saved”—we do have a similar phrase: Ataqullah, which means, “Be
conscious of Allah in your heart.” The word *taqwa* means consciousness or awareness of God in your life. It also implies self-control, knowing that God is watching you. The more *taqwa* you have in your heart, the closer you are to God. Islam teaches that prayer, fasting, reflection, and selfless action can cause your *taqwa* to grow.

**Allah Has Many Names**

The Qur’an provides a very clear picture of God, but not in the style of the Bible. The Bible begins by saying that God made man in *His image*, that is, God looks like a human; whereas the Qur’an declares emphatically that God has no form we can comprehend and that He resembles nothing at all in creation. Like Judaism, Islam completely forbids making representations of God, such as paintings or statues. The Qur’an says, “He is not like anything you can imagine.” God is not a human, an animal, or a fuzzy spirit. The rule in Islam is that if you make a mental picture of what God looks like, then God does not look like that at all!

So if God has no form, how can we understand Him? Are we doomed to endless reprimands of “It’s a mystery”? In Hinduism or Christianity, there are statues and paintings of God, but Islam says these are all false imagery. How does a Muslim imagine God then? Islam has a unique answer to this human need to rely on appearances. Instead of focusing on God’s physical form, we look to His qualities. What does God do? What is His nature? What is He like? These are called Allah’s Names and Attributes. We use adjectives to describe the nature of God, and through studying them and emulating them we come to a closer understanding of who God really is. The Muslim approach is not to passively look at pictures but to actively participate in knowing the Divine.

There is a famous listing called the Ninety-nine Names of Allah. The list includes such descriptions as the Merciful, the Strong, the Mighty, the Loving, the Everlasting, the Beginning, the Last, the Acceptor of Repentance, the Caring, the Bringer of Peace, the Avenger of Evil, the Living, the Faithful, and so on. Through these Names of Allah we get a feel for the essence of Allah, and thus we no longer have to worry about what He physically looks like. We can know Him by His qualities and actions. The Prophet Muhammad once said that whoever knows and lives by the Ninety-nine Names of Allah will go to Heaven. This is a way of saying that God’s qualities are the best ones to inculcate in yourself, for by doing so, you bring your life closer to His way.

Islam also teaches that God is neither male nor female. After all, if He has no form that we can understand, how can He have a gender? So why, you may ask, do we use the pronoun “He” when referring to God? In Arabic, as in Spanish or French, all

---

"Tell them, ‘Call on ‘God’ or call on ‘the Compassionate’ by whatever name you call upon Him (it is well), for to Him belongs the Most Beautiful Names.” (Qur’an 17:109)
nouns are either male or female in gender. A house is considered feminine but a chair is masculine. It’s just the way these languages work.

In Arabic there is no word for “it,” so the pronoun “He” is used to refer to God, with the full understanding that Allah is not a male. Interestingly enough, the base word *Elah*, which means *a god*, is a feminine word (the *ah* ending signifies femininity in Arabic); yet when you take the proper name *Allah (the God)* and use the masculine pronoun *Hoowa* (He is), you are canceling out both male and female genders. The phrase *Hoowa Allah* combines both genders and thus each negates the other. This is the closest thing to “it” that you can get in Arabic and applies to no other words in that language.

To summarize, God is a single entity with no divisions, partners, wives, or children. He has no beginning or end. He does not reveal Himself to people, and no human eye is strong enough to behold His power. He can do all that He wishes with no need of a helper. He is not male or female. He has no form we can comprehend. We can know what He is like only through the names He used to describe Himself in the Qur’an. He did not burden us with original sin nor does He ever need to die for any purpose. Idolatry is false. Allah is not a remote God, rather He is active in human affairs and is testing us in this life and giving us the chance to choose to surrender to Him.

---

**Translate This**

*Asma’ ul Husna* means the “Most Beautiful Names (of Allah).” Muslim homes and mosques will often have artwork consisting of Arabic calligraphy that incorporates Allah’s Names, either listing them all or focusing on one.

---

**The Least You Need to Know**

➤ Islam is a monotheistic religion with no concept of the Trinity.

➤ Muslims believe that God is all-powerful and that He knows all, sees all, and can do whatever He wishes.

➤ Original sin has no place in Islamic teachings. Every person has the potential to be good or bad, and there is no need for any atonement or redemption.

➤ Muslims have no physical description or representation of God. They have an abstract concept that consists of God’s qualities, which are embodied in the Names of God.

➤ In Islam, God is not male or female, nor was He ever born on Earth. He never begets any children.
What is the meaning of our lives here on Earth? What is the soul, where did it come from, and what happens to it after we die? Islam provides its followers with answers to these and many other questions related to both this earthly sojourn and the life to come. Muslims believe that we all have four stages to go through on our great journey called life and that each station has its own unique challenges and rewards.

Islam also has an explanation for the creation of the Earth and the appearance of living beings upon it. It differs significantly from the biblical version and has been called more scientifically accurate. Our Holy Book, the Qur’an, goes even further and tells us that life arose for a purpose. All life-forms on this planet, and beyond, have a special duty to live in quiet praise and appreciation of the Lord of the Universe.

While Islam says all creatures accomplish this automatically, humankind is the one exception. We have the free choice to accept God or not. The path of Islam gives us a way to surrender ourselves to God if we so choose. Free will is our great burden, and there will be rewards and consequences on account of it.
Chapter 5

The Four Stages of Life in Islam

In This Chapter
➤ Learn what Islam says about the significance of conception, life, death, and beyond
➤ Discover what Islam says about abortion and when it is allowed
➤ Know about the scientific marvels found in the Qur’an
➤ Discover the main duty of the angels who watch over us
➤ Find out what happens to a person’s soul after death

There has been a lot of controversy in recent times about the meaning of life and death. When does life begin? When does it end? Does our quality of life determine how long we should live? Islam would say that all of these issues are wrapped up in a larger one—our purpose for being alive. Given that the Qur’an teaches that people are alive to learn to surrender to God, it stands to reason that Islam’s answers on many of these tough issues would be framed in that context.

Islam puts forward the proposition that human life begins at conception, that the unborn attain personhood at a definite time, and that life is a testing ground. However, Islam goes even further by asserting the existence of our soul after our physical body has ceased to function. We will live while we’re waiting for Judgment Day, but unlike the fun-loving ghosts in Beetlejuice or the vengeful spirits of Poltergeist, Islam tells us that we will be put into a kind of storage bin, so to speak, and will get a foretaste of
our eventual fate. This is called the Life of the Grave. As you’ll see, Islam has quite a lot to say about what will happen there.

**Four Lives for Each Life**

According to Islam, we all have four well-defined segments of life that we will pass through from our conception in the womb until our death and beyond. These are the stages from the time a soul is joined with the flesh in the womb until we are in either Heaven or Hell. Each of our four life stages has its own unique challenges and features, and each is considered separate from the other, like a series of doors we must pass through on our journey back to our Lord.

Indeed, the whole concept of life in Islam is that our soul is on loan to us from God. Remember that primordial spirit lump from which all of our souls came and that accepted free will eons ago? Well, that’s Allah’s property, and when we die He takes back our souls. Of course, now that we have become individuals we won’t be stripped of our uniqueness. He has a different purpose for us then.

The four stages of life are

- Life in the womb.
- Life in the world.
- Life in the grave.
- The next life (Heaven or Hell).

I will be discussing the first three stages in this chapter, and the expansive topic of the next life in Chapter 6, “Islam on Heaven and Hell.” As you learn about each stage, notice how the Islamic emphasis on our utter dependability on God is interwoven with the events and features therein.

**Life in the Womb**

Physical life begins at conception, according to Islam. This is the beginning of the first stage of life for us. In the womb we are in our most vulnerable state. Our bodies are growing and developing, and our soul becomes one with our physical self. It is understandable, then, that Islam has teachings concerning the welfare of the fetus.

Islamic Law recognizes the right of the mother to have a protected pregnancy and the right of the fetus to be brought to term. If anyone assaults a pregnant woman and the fetus dies, the criminal must pay penalties and compensation, though the act is not classified as full murder in the same sense of killing an already born person. But
the very fact that there are penalties for harming a person in the womb shows that Islam considers this stage of life important and worth protecting.

**Abortion and Islam**

The *Shari'ah* (Islamic Law) states that the fetus has rights. No one has the right to kill a baby in the womb, especially when it has no defense. Abortion is quite forbidden. Islam considers it to be taking away the right of Allah to allow—or not to allow—a pregnancy to come to full term. Despite popular ideas today about personal choice and freedom to birth or abort, Islam does not change with the times and stands squarely against *Roe v. Wade*. There is no trend or tradition, however, of opposing abortionists through individual acts of violence, so in that regard Muslims have been hesitant to fully embrace all of the tenants of the Right-to-Life movement, which is known to have a radical fringe element.

As a rebuttal to the main reason given for people aborting their babies, the Qur’an has formulated this reply: A lack of resources is no excuse to harm a fetus. The Qur’an commands people not to kill their offspring because they are afraid of being poor or because they feel they won’t be able to take care of them. God will provide for the newborn somehow, the Qur’an states, so let the baby live.

Equally forbidden, as an excuse for abortion, is the desire to have a male child over a female one. Throughout the world, many people misuse sonograms to learn the gender of the baby in the womb, aborting the baby if it will be a girl. This problem is especially prevalent in India and China, and Muslim scholars, basing their decision on clear and direct Qur’anic principles, have denounced the practice as sexist. A pregnancy is considered a gift and a trust from Allah not to be terminated by our choice. The Prophet Muhammad said, “Be kind to daughters and treat them well, for I am also the father of daughters.”

Are there any exceptions to the rule that abortion is forbidden in Islam? Yes, but only one. A principle of Islamic Law is that if there are only two bad choices, then take the lesser of the two evils. While...
the Law does not accept abortion, the law does makes an allowance when it is necessary to save the life of the mother. The principle behind this exception is that it is better to keep the life of a wife and mother than to prefer someone who has no social relations yet. So in very clear terms, Islam is extremely pro-life. Only God can decide whether the developing fetus should proceed to term, not us. Even rape or incest is not grounds for an abortion, because the unborn child can’t be killed simply on account of the horrible way he or she was conceived. Why should the baby have to pay for the crime?

**Islam and Contraception**

Contraceptives are generally allowed in Islam as long as they only prevent the fertilization of the egg. Destruction of an already fertilized egg crosses the line. Therefore, abortion pills and such have been declared forbidden by modern Islamic scholars. The entire process after fertilization is considered sacrosanct, as the following passage from the Qur’an illustrates:

“O People! If you have any doubts about the Resurrection, [consider] that We created you out of dust, then out of sperm, then out of a clinging thing, then out of a morsel of flesh—partly formed and partly unformed—in order that We may make clear [Our Power] to you. We cause whom We will to rest in the womb for an appointed term then We bring you out as babies then [foster you] so you can reach your age of full strength. Some of you are called to die early and some are sent back to the feeblest old age so that you know nothing after having known [much].” (Qur’an 22:5)

**When Is a Fetus a Person?**

When is a fetus considered a full-fledged person in Islam? This is determined by when it gets a soul. The Prophet Muhammad explained that after 120 days an angel comes to the baby in the womb and breathes the soul into it. Then the angel begins to write in a book, which will become that person’s book of deeds. The four things that this angel writes are: Will he or she be rich or poor, will the person be happy or sad, how long will the person live, and what will be his or her preferred type of deeds? The answers to these
questions are not predetermining the person’s fate, however, but merely taking a notation of the future, which God sees as well as He sees the present and the past. I will be discussing the Islamic view of destiny in Chapter 8, “The Measurement of Life.”

Although it may seem strange to count our time in the womb as a stage of life, it really isn’t all that far fetched. Islam counts the unborn as a person-in-process, and as the fetus develops it gains all the necessary physical and mental potential to thrive upon entering the world. Isn’t the baby alive in the womb, after all? The Qur’an points out that some babies do not survive their time in the womb because of God’s will and that this is a test for us. According to Islam, all children who die prematurely will go to Heaven. The Prophet even taught that if a person loses two children and bears their loss with patience, the person will be saved from Hellfire on the Day of Judgment.

The pre-Islamic Arabs had many superstitions about how pregnancy was caused, just as many other civilizations have also had ideas that were outlandish and incorrect. The Qur’an explains the process of fertilization, development, and birth of the fetus in great detail. However, you will not find a single passage or group of passages that lay out the stages all in one listing. The Qur’anic method of teaching is often based on presenting a religious idea, then giving a proof from nature that only God could have known at the time, and finally reiterating the principle introduced. This following section about the sun from Chapter 91 of the Qur’an provides a good example:

“By the sun and its radiance, and the moon as it reflects, by the day as it reveals, and the night as it covers up. By the cosmos and He Who built it, and the Earth and He Who spread it, and by the soul and He Who perfected it, and gave to it innate knowledge of right and wrong. By the same token know that whoever purifies his soul shall prosper, while whoever corrupts it shall fail.” (Qur’an 91:1–9)

By first calling on signs in nature, we are introduced to the idea that in a world full of opposites our soul can also be good or bad. Statements that
refer to fetal development in the Qur’an, then, are there to give proof to religious concepts. The very first chapter that was revealed to the Prophet Muhammad, while he was meditating in a mountain cave in the year 610 C.E., said, “Read in the Name of your Lord Who created humans from a clinging [zygote].” (Qur’an 96:1–2)

Life in the World

In the teachings of Islam, the moment we are born we enter the life of the world. This is the second stage of life. In this environment we will need to learn how to lead a moral and upright lifestyle pleasing to God. If we are denied the opportunity to learn as children because of neglect or abandonment by our parents, then our fitrah will help to guide us in seeking such knowledge. When we enter puberty, the standard for adulthood in Islam, God will hold us accountable for our beliefs and actions. Shaytan will continually attempt to corrupt us by whispering evil suggestions into our minds. All the pleasures of the world will present themselves on a platter, tempting our lower animal desires. Our animal self will rule over us until we begin to use our reason and inner spiritual motivations to motivate our heart and mind to seek God. The Qur’an describes this world as an illusory place of deception and play, rivalry and amusement, boasting and hoarding. If as new adults we aren’t careful, we just might fall into this trap.

The span of our life, which was recorded in our book of deeds, will not last a minute longer than it is supposed to. While we are alive, however, we will be confronted with a series of challenges and tests in life: The car breaks down; whom should I marry; I got a big raise; someone stole my credit card; my mother passed away, and so on. All of these daily life circumstances happen in order to give us the opportunity to improve ourselves and to draw closer to God. According to Islam, these tests and challenges in life serve a purpose. They can bring out the best in us and cause us to dig deep within ourselves where bravery, courage, perseverance, and fortitude reside. Without being tested, how would we know that we have the guts to carry through in times of crisis? The Qur’an asks, “Do people think they can just say, ‘We believe’ and they wouldn’t be tested in what they claimed? You can be sure We tested those before them and Allah will show those who are true and those who are false.” (Qur’an 29:2–3)
Many people take the opposite approach, though, and choose not to rise to the occasion. They fail their tests and forget about God. They resort to lying, cheating, back-biting, corruption, violence, or worse when faced with life’s difficult choices. The Qur’an describes them as people who are sitting on the edge of a fence: When times are good, they are satisfied; but when the going gets tough, they engage in evil deeds with no regard for the rights of anyone else.

**Does God Try to Fool Us?**

Some people have charged that God turns us into unbelievers or believers. There are several verses in the Qur’an that say such things as, “God will mislead them” or “Nobody believes unless it is God’s will.” When taken out of context, these verses can give a false impression. The Qur’an is very clear about this principle: God wants us to believe in Him. He’s not going to keep us from surrendering to Him. The problem occurs when we reject God first. He warned that if we do that, He will let us wander off in error as much as we want, and as an added punishment He will cover our hearts with a veil so we understand even less about the truth. The more we reject God, the more we lose our way. If we move closer to God, however, He opens our hearts more and more to the reality of all things. The Qur’an puts it this way:

“No soul can believe except by the Will of Allah and He will place doubt in the hearts of those who refuse to understand. You can say to people, ‘Hey, look at all the signs of God in space and on Earth …’ but neither signs nor Warners profit those who won’t believe. So do they expect anything besides what happened in the days of the people who passed away before them? Tell them, ‘Wait then, for I, too, will wait with you.’ In the end We deliver Our messengers and those who believe. Thus is it fitting on Our part that We should deliver those who believe!” (Qur’an 10:100–103)

**Careful! You’re Being Watched**

The Qur’an says that we all have two angels who follow us around throughout our lives. They are called the *Kiraman Katibeen*, or the Noble Writers. One figuratively sits on our right shoulder while the other sits on our left shoulder. Their only job is to write in our book of deeds every action, thought, or feeling we have each day. The right angel records our good deeds and the left angel our bad deeds. (Imagine if someone followed you around all day with a camcorder!) Muslims often joke with their children that one of their two angels is very busy writing: Which one is getting a tired hand?

This book in which the angels are writing is our cumulative record, which we will be confronted with on the Day of Judgment after our death. There is a widely circulated story in the Muslim world to bring home the point of God’s omnipotence. A religious scholar, or *Shaykh*, wanted to test his young students. He gave each one a piece of
candy and told them to go and eat it where no one could see them. All of the students went away and came back some time later. The teacher asked if everyone had eaten their sweets, and they all raised their hands except one boy. When the Shaykh questioned the boy about eating the candy, he answered, “I couldn’t find a place where Allah couldn’t see me.”

The Qur’an calls this life a time of trial and testing to show who among us has the most consciousness of God and behaves the best. “O People!” the Qur’an announces, “We created you from a single pair of a male and a female and made you into nations and groups so you can come to know each other. Certainly the noblest among you in the sight of Allah is the one with the most Taqwa [awareness of Allah].” (Qur’an 49:13)

The preferred lifestyle Islam envisions is one based on prayer, repentance, contemplation, responsibility, and morality. Islam doesn’t demand that we become perfect. It merely states that we have to use this life to be the best we can be in all spheres of life. The Prophet Muhammad said, “Allah loves a person who, when they do something, they try their best.”

A Persian miniature painting depicting idyllic village life: ordered and honest in its simplicity.

(Photo courtesy of Aramco)
A Muslim who lives a normal life span is expected to work, marry, have a family, participate in social activities, and do his or her part to advance the cause of Godliness. Waste and extravagance are to be avoided, and thrift and conservation are praiseworthy values to acquire. In every sphere of life, religious guidance must be consulted and followed. You often see the bumper sticker that reads, “God is my co-pilot.” Islam says that if you really believe this, then you must act like it and not merely feel smug and do whatever you want. Follow the straight path of Islam in your life and you will please God Whom you will have to face regardless of your personal opinions about His existence on a day that you cannot avoid.

A person may live for 20, 50, or even 100 years, and every day will still be a continuous challenge to remain on the path of surrender to God. There are no easy tickets to Heaven. There is no salvation moment whereby we are guaranteed admittance to Heaven regardless of what we do for the rest of our lives. If we believe in God one day but reject Him a day later and then die, our whole life will be judged by the condition of our belief when we left the physical world. I’m reminded of a tombstone inscription from a graveyard in New York that begs the reader to consider every moment of life and its implications: “Behold and see as you pass by, as you are now so once was I. As I am now so you must be. Prepare for death and follow me.”

It Is Written

According to the Prophet Muhammad, Allah said, “O son of Adam, so long as you call upon Me and ask of Me, I shall forgive you for what you have done, and I shall not mind. O son of Adam, were your sins to reach the clouds of the sky and were you then to ask forgiveness of Me, I would forgive you. O son of Adam, were you to come to Me with sins nearly as great as the earth and were you then to face Me, ascribing no partner to Me, I would bring you forgiveness nearly as great as that.”

Siratal mustaqeem means the straight path. This is the term used to describe a God-centered lifestyle.
Life in the Grave

One of the more graphic and compelling teachings of Islam begins with the moment of our death. Islam teaches that when we are dying, our soul rises in our body and collects in our throat. An angel called Malikul Mawt, or the Angel of Death, arrives and is given the task of removing the soul. This angel isn’t the handsome young Mr. Death like Brad Pitt in Meet Joe Black. He’s stern and unflinching in his duty and has no crisis of identity.

So how does the angel remove our soul from our body? Our soul, or ruh, is an otherworldly substance. The angel merely takes hold of it as it separates from our physical body and pulls. If the person believed in God and led a virtuous life, then the Angel of Death and his assistants gently draw out the soul from the body. But if the soul was that of a person who denied God or a person who led an evil life, then the angels will tear out the soul violently, like yanking cotton through a metal grate.

The exact moment when death is inevitable is described in the Qur’an as a moment of complete realization: “When a dying person breathes his last, when, ‘Can any doctor save him?’ the people ask, then, in the pangs of death he’ll know his time is due. His knees will shake as death approaches and then he will return to his Lord.” (Qur’an 75:27–30)

When you take your last breath, you finally know your time is up and you may panic or be filled with regret. But repentance is too late then. God accepts no repentance from a person who is that close to death. When the process is moments away from completion, the cutoff point has arrived. The Qur’an records the final minutes of the Pharaoh’s life, just before he was drowned in the Red Sea while chasing the fleeing Israelites. The Pharaoh said, “Now I believe.” But God answered by saying he was too late.

Spirit on a Wing

What happens to the soul now? Islam teaches that there is another world, or parallel reality, if you will,
in which only spirit material and energy beings like *jinns* and angels can exist. When we die, our soul is released from every cell of our body and is now in that other realm. The angels who took us out will now hold our soul fixed over our corpse. We can see all of the people gathered around our body, but they cannot see us. We try to speak to them, but they can’t hear us. We see everything that happens to our body. When it is finally time to take the corpse to the graveyard, our soul floats along with it. A person who has been good will say, “Take me forward,” but a person who has been evil will say, “Curses, where are you taking me?”

A good soul will be carried gently by the angels and clothed with shrouds from Paradise. The angels will ascend upward into Heaven and will pass through its gates announcing who the soul is. When they reach the highest place in Heaven, Allah gives the command, “Write My servant’s name in *Illiyun.*” (*Illiyun* is the record of who will get into Heaven after Judgment Day.) Then the angels are told, “Take him back to Earth because I promised them that from it I created them, into it I return them and from it I will resurrect them once again.”

The soul of an evil person is also carried to the gates of Heaven, but when the angels bring the soul there, the gates will not open for the soul to pass through. It is written in the Qur’an that the doors of Paradise will not be opened for someone who rejected Allah. Allah will then command that the person’s name should be written in *Sijjin,* which is the register of Hell. Next He will order the angels to return the soul to Earth for the same reason He also returns good souls.

**Soul Storage**

Even as a person’s body is being lowered into the grave and buried, his or her soul is brought down with it by the angels. We will hear the dirt being shoveled in and also the footsteps of the people as they walk away. Then we are alone, but not for long. By the way, it doesn’t matter whether our body is destroyed or remains intact. Our soul will stay near the place where our body was last placed. So a person who dies in a fire and whose body is destroyed will find his or her soul sinking into the ground there. Even if the body is cremated and the ashes put in an urn and displayed on a shelf, the soul will sink into the earth somewhere along the way.

Now the life in the grave begins. The term for this life stage is *Barzakh,* or the Partition. It is sometimes referred to as “soul storage.” Our soul will wait in this timeless existence until the Day of Judgment. No contact with the living or the souls of the other dead is possible, and we will be aware of nothing except our own self. Islam does not believe that the spirits of the dead can be contacted by clairvoyants or that...
departed souls can inhabit the bodies of the living. Muslims believe that evil *jinns* work with psychics and spirit mediums and fool people into believing that they really did talk to their long dead aunt or grandmother. Islam says death is final and there is no coming back.

So what happens to us in the grave? According to the Prophet Muhammad, two angels with black faces and blue eyes are sent to us shortly after burial with an interesting mission. Their names are *Munkir* and *Nakir*. When they arrive, they force our soul to snap to attention. These angels are the Questioners of the Grave, and they ask us three questions: “Who is your Lord?” “What was your way of life?” And finally, “Who was your prophet?”

Islam accepts that there were other prophets sent by God to the world before the Prophet Muhammad. In fact, as mentioned earlier, Islam teaches that all people in the past received some type of divine guidance through an authentic prophet. Muhammad is merely the last of the prophets in a long chain. So the correct answers to those three questions are: “God”, “Surrender to God’s will,” and then the name of the prophet we followed, whether Muhammad, Jesus, Moses, or whoever.

If we answer all three questions correctly, then something amazing happens. Our good deeds become personified into a being resembling a person who says to us, “I’m here to give you good news. Allah has accepted what you did, and you will receive eternal gardens of delight. This is the day you were promised. I am your good deeds. By Allah I only knew you to be quick in obeying Allah and slow in disobeying Him. May God reward you with good.” Then a door is opened to Heaven and another to Hell. We are shown where we would have gone in Hell if we were bad and then we’re told to look at the place we will go to in Paradise instead. Then the angels expand the size of our soul storage bin to the size of a large room. A soft warm light fills the space, and we will be told to go to sleep and to dream peacefully until the Day of Judgment. Every day an angel will come and nudge us in our dreams and open a window through which we will see our place in Heaven again.

If we don’t answer the questions correctly, and only a true rebel against God will fail the test, then something horrible happens. The angels appear terrifying to us. They strike our spirit body with a heavy mace, and they command our soul storage bin to squeeze in upon us until we feel suffocated. Our bad deeds become personified into a being resembling an ugly person who says, “I’m here to give you some bad news. I am your evil deeds. By God I only knew you to be slow in obeying God and quick in disobeying Him.

**Just the Facts**

Near-death experiences are accepted in Islam. The rule is that if it is not your time to go, you will revive. The Qur’an contains several stories in which the main characters wish to return to the world to warn their relatives about the truth of the next life. Jesus, who is considered a prophet in Islam, is said to have revived those who were thought dead.
May God repay you with evil.” Then the angels come to us and open a window through which we see our future spot in Hellfire. We stay tormented and screaming until the Day of Judgment.

Islam teaches that animals can hear the screams of those being tormented in the grave. The Prophet Muhammad said that if we could hear their cries, we would faint in terror. He often encouraged us to pray for protection against the *Punishment of the Grave*, as it is called. Time has no meaning there in the real sense, but this experience can be either a pleasant or a terrifying one, and, as Islam says, we will all have to undergo it. Chapter 6 will explore what happens after the life in the grave.

**It Is Written**

Prophet Muhammad told an interesting story about Death. It seems the angel of death was sent to Moses and when he went to him, Moses slapped him severely, spoiling one of his eyes. The angel went back to his Lord, and said, “You sent me to a slave of Yours who does not want to die.” Allah restored his eye and said, “Go back and tell Moses to place his hand over the back of an ox, for he will be allowed to live for a number of years equal to the number of hairs coming under his hand.” (So the angel came to him and told him the same). Then Moses asked, “O my Lord! What will happen after those years pass?” He said, “Death will happen.” Moses said, “Then let me die now.”

**The Least You Need to Know**

➤ Islam counts our time in the womb and our lying in the grave as stages of life.

➤ Abortion is all but prohibited in Islam. Saving the life of the mother is the only valid reason for abortion.

➤ Islam says faith can render any situation, good or bad, into a way to please God.

➤ When we die, our soul lives in the grave until Resurrection Day.
Nearly every religion in the world teaches that there will be some sort of reward or punishment for our actions in this life. Whether it is belief in Heaven, Valhalla, or Paradise, a land of eternal delight for the deserving motivates the followers of any given religion to invest in their ultimate future by straight-jacketing their lives here in order to reap rewards later. In the same way, whether you’re talking about Hell, Hades, or the Fire, visions of never-ending suffering are powerful incentives for avoiding immorality and wickedness in this world.

Islam offers a very clear picture of each of these possibilities to its followers. For the Muslim, there is no vague union of nirvana nor a bland pearly gate leading to a street paved with gold. No, for the devoted follower of the Prophet Muhammad, Paradise is presented with such reality that we can almost taste it. Likewise, Hell is given such a vivid treatment that it can give nightmares if we’re not careful. All of this serves to accentuate the very reason that religion teaches us about an afterlife in the first place: so that we can feel the immediacy of the importance of our beliefs and actions in everything we do.
Why Have a Judgment Day?

Over one quarter of the Qur’an’s verses deal with issues related to the next life or the spiritual world. For the Muslim, this is a naturally appropriate ratio given that Islam teaches that the real life is yet to come. This life, the Prophet noted, is like a dream. When we die, we will truly awaken to reality. In Chapter 5, “The Four Stages of Life in Islam,” you learned about some of the things that every person will experience after death: the angels drawing out the soul, being placed in the grave, and being visited by angels in Barzakh. Now I will turn to what happens afterward. Since Islam teaches that the world will end one day, all of those stored souls have to go somewhere!

Life in the grave will last until the Day of Judgment. No dead soul can rise from its grave and walk the earth in the meantime like a ghost or an apparition. The only time the soul gets out of the grave is after God has caused the universe to end in a cataclysmic Last Day. Only then is it time to bring all departed souls together for Judgment Day. The fourth and final stage of our life now begins.

To understand the reasoning behind a Judgment Day, we have to remember what the purpose of life is for each of us. We are here to be tested by God in our belief and actions. Through this test, we try to develop ourselves and raise our soul to the highest of three levels of development, passing from our animal self, to an accusing self, and hopefully becoming a restful soul at peace. We accomplish this through a combination of belief in God, seeking His guidance through His revealed Books and emulating the example of His prophets; and then of a life devoted to good deeds, asking repentance when we stumble. From this philosophy of our purpose, then, the logical conclusion is that there must be an end to this test and that each of us will receive our grade eventually. This is what Judgment Day is for.

The Long Arm of the Law

The very idea that criminals and evil people in this world can escape punishment simply by dying is unimaginable. Can Adolph Hitler, with the blood of millions on his hands, escape retribution? Think of all the children who have been abused, animals who have been mistreated, thefts and rapes that have occurred—what kind of universe would say that criminals can get away with such deeds? The modern mechanistic view of life, which says we are all just intelligent animals who live only once, is
the greatest danger to human safety ever conceived. To tell someone that since you
live only once go ahead and have fun while you can is a license for any deranged per-
son to harm others with abandon.

We must police our own behavior if we are to have
safe societies, says the Qur’an. If there is no pun-
ishment for crimes, there is no peace. If man-made
laws are not enough of a deterrent, then an appeal
to higher laws that transcend humans’ existence
will help for most people. Those who flout both
levels of law will get more than a slap on the wrist
from God! The Qur’an is very clear about the need
for just retribution for those who did wrong and
redress for those who were wronged, and it is on
Judgment Day that injustice will be paid back.
“That will be the Day of ultimate recompense,” the
Qur’an declares, and Islam is very firm in promot-
ing the full justice that is everyone’s right.

When Will It Come?

So when does Judgment Day begin? Is a date given in Islamic sources? Unfortunately,
no. The Qur’an records that a group of idolaters went to the Prophet Muhammad and
taunted him about this whole concept of a final judgment. They dared him to make
it happen right there or to at least tell them when it was supposed to be. A revelation
came to him and he said, “They ask you about the hour, tell them only God knows
when it will occur. When it does happen, they will be taken completely by surprise
and will wish it never came.”

We do know how it will commence and proceed. According to the chronology given
in Islamic sources, one day Allah will initiate the end of the world. Even as He began
it, He will bring it to a close. An angel named Israfil will sound a note on a massive
horn, and the shock wave will permeate the whole universe. Prior to this, Allah had
created the universe in a huge explosion (the Big Bang) and was expanding it. Now
He will roll it up like a scroll and shut it down. People will still be living on Earth at
that time, and they will run in terror as the globe begins to shake and break apart vio-
antly. “What is happening with the world?” they’ll cry. The Qur’an has many vivid
passages describing what will be going on when the Earth is covered in darkness, and
here is one of the more famous ones:

“When the sun is covered in darkness, when the stars fall, when the mountains
pass away, when the livestock heavy with young are abandoned, when the wild
beasts are herded together, when the seas rise, when the souls are sorted, when the baby girl buried alive is asked, for what crime she was killed, when the books are opened, when the skies are laid bare, and when Hell is set ablaze and Paradise is brought near, then, every soul will know what it has prepared.”
(Qur’an 81:1–26)

All living beings will die, including the angels and the jinns, and all matter in the universe will be destroyed. This is called the Last Day, and it signals that the show is over. Next stop: Judgment. The angels will then be brought back to life, and Israfil will sound another note on his horn. All human beings and jinns will suddenly appear standing on a huge level plain. The souls of all the dead will be instantly brought out from Barzakh and given new bodies that will look like their physical bodies from Earth in every respect. We will be stunned by what we see and will feel we had lived on Earth for less than a day. Everyone will be naked and without any symbol of status or power. This is called the Resurrection.

Next, all people will be sorted according to what they used to believe in or follow in the physical world. A Muslim, Christian, or Jew will be standing behind Muhammad, Jesus, or Moses. A Hindu follower of Ganesh will be standing behind a representation of the elephant god. Those who followed Communism will probably be standing behind Karl Marx. This sorting will be absolute, and we can’t cut lines or hide in other groups. The angels will be moving us into place, and we have no choice but to cooperate.

The Prophet Muhammad said that the Day of Judgment will last 50,000 years because of the large number of people present. Think of it: Every human being who ever lived will be there. But no one will be concerned with anyone but himself or herself because of the gravity of the situation. The Qur’an says a person will ignore his or her own parents and children because of the worry and suspense on that day. Think back to grade school and how you felt on report card day; then imagine getting a report for your whole life!

People who denied God will be agitated and filled with stress on that day. All the more so because the pit of Hell will be visible in the distance, and all the terrifying moans and booming sounds of massive explosions will be heard. The sinners will approach the people who were faithful and virtuous in their lives because these good persons will be bathed in a sheen of light. The sinful will beg for some of that light but will be walled off from the righteous.

Allah will be hidden behind a huge veil and will not show Himself, though He will be conducting the judgment proceedings. (He will reveal His true self in Heaven only to those who desired to seek Him alone.)
He will run a tight courtroom, and no excuses will be accepted. People will try to bribe the angels or offer to pay a ransom to God for their salvation, but what can they pay with when everything belongs to God? This gives new urgency to the saying, “You can’t take it with you.”

**The Judgment Cometh**

How will the judgment proceed? The Qur’an and the Hadith give a very detailed picture of the whole affair. There will be no breaks from the standing in lines. We won’t need to eat or drink or sleep. We just wait. When it is our turn to be judged, two angels, one walking in front and the other in back, will escort us before the Judge, God. The angel in front will announce, “I have his record here with me.” Our record will be given to us in our right hand if we were a good person. Those of us who must receive it in our left hand or from behind our back are in big trouble.

Next our whole record will be read in our presence. Every thought or deed we ever did will be there, so much so that we will exclaim, “What kind of book is this? It leaves nothing out, great or small!” Our faith in God will be examined in detail and our sincerity measured. We will then be questioned about what we did and why. If we try to lie or be evasive, our body parts will be made to speak and bear witness against us. For example, if we stole something and denied stealing it, we may be surprised to hear our hand talking, saying, “He did it! He did it!”

Other witnesses will be brought forward. Anyone we ever harmed in our earthly life will come forward and state their claim against us. Our good deeds and evil deeds will be gathered near us in a pile, and people we wronged will be told to help themselves to some of our good deeds. We will be powerless to stop them. We will try to blame Shaytan, but he will disown us. People may call to their idols for help, but they will say, “You’re on your own!” Then we truly will realize that we are held completely accountable for what we did, and no one can save us.

---

**Just the Facts**

Islam is not against “lefties.” The significance of getting your record in your right or left hand on Judgment Day has nothing to do with a person’s dexterity in this world.

**Translate This**

*Kafir* is the term used in the Qur’an to describe someone who does not believe in God. Although the word is often translated as unbeliever, that is not what it means. In fact, there is no equivalent word for unbeliever in Arabic. *Kafir* comes from the word *kaïfara*, which means to cover up or hide. Thus a person who is a *kafir* hides God’s truth and covers his or her heart and mind, refusing to accept the existence of God.
After the review of our record, our good and bad deeds will be placed on a scale and weighed. We had better hope our good-deed side is heavier! However, our record of prayer will be examined first; if it is found to have shortcomings, then all our good deeds will be thrown out. What good are our deeds if we were deficient in calling on our Lord and praying to Him? Why are our deeds weighed if Islam teaches that faith is what brings us salvation? Good deeds are the proof of our faith. So if we did little good in the world, then what was the value of all our declarations and assertions?

After the review, our victims’ payback time, and the weighing of our deeds, we kneel humbly before Allah’s presence. He will explain to us the meaning of the evidence, and no injustice will be done or favoritism shown. If we are guilty or innocent, we are made to understand completely and beyond the shadow of a doubt what we deserve. But Allah is a merciful and a loving God. He loves to forgive those who asked for His forgiveness in their worldly life, and thus He will display that great magnanimity that is only His on Judgment Day as well. He may forgive extra sins of ours for no other reason than He wants to. People who hoped for Allah’s forgiveness may find themselves with a spotless record, and the worst criminal may find that due to some small act of kindness done to a person, plant, or animal, his record may be wiped clean.

Allah Is Merciful

The Prophet Muhammad once told a story to illustrate this mercy of Allah. A harlot was walking down a road when she saw a deep well. As she climbed down its walls to get a drink, she noticed a thirsty dog pacing back and forth above. She felt pity for it and removed her leather sock, filled it with water, and brought it up for the dog to drink. On account of this act of kindness, God forgave all of her sins.

The Bridge over Hell

Finally our verdict is given: guilty or innocent. We either rejoice or hang our heads in shame. Then, when all of the judgments are finished, we must travel on to the next segment of this process. From the Plain of Judgment everyone will move forward to the brink of the pit of Hell. It will be a monstrously huge, gaping hole that you can’t even see across. The flames will leap up for miles, and sparks the size of logs will shoot out. The intense heat will be felt by all, and people will be terrified of it. The angels will throw the worst sinners, who were found guilty of the worst crimes, into the flames. The rest of us, whether guilty or innocent, will have to take a harrowing journey over a bridge called the Sirat, which spans the chasm of Hell and leads to Paradise on the other side.
The Sirat is as thin as a razor and is studded with jagged edges and spikes. The righteous people and the prophets will zoom right over it and make it to the other side. Good people who had a few sins that were not forgiven will be cut and bruised as they journey over the bridge to remind them that there are consequences for all bad deeds, but they will make it over as well. Some people will be in tatters when they step off! (We all are healed on the other side.) Sinful people will be able to make it only so far because they will suddenly become snagged by the bridge and will tumble headlong into the pit. Their screams will echo and terrify everyone else.

What if we were not too bad but also not good enough for Heaven and our good deeds weighed exactly the same as our bad? We might find ourselves in an elevated spot between Heaven and Hell called the Heights. It is not the same as the Christian conception of purgatory or Abraham’s Bosom, but the idea is similar. We will stay there, seeing Hell and fearing it and seeing Heaven and longing for it, until such time as we fully realize that we almost slipped up and went to Hell. Then we will eventually go to Paradise.

Ask the Imam

We all have to see Hell whether we are going to spend some time there or not. This is so we realize that the promise of Allah is true and that He meant business when He outlined the consequences of leading an evil life.
The topics of Heaven and Hell are covered quite extensively in the Qur’an and in the Hadith, or the sayings of Muhammad. The details are unerringly stunning. Wherever we end up will be the culmination of our fourth and final stage of life. Our soul, on loan from God, has now been returned to the other realm and is receiving its rewards or torment based on what we did with it in the world. Now I’ll explain what Islam says about Heaven and Hell.

Use Your Time Wisely

Islam presents a very vivid picture of the afterlife. According to a Hadith of the Prophet Muhammad, Islam goes so far as to say that this life is just an illusion, and the next life is the true reality. The idea is that we only have a few years to live here on Earth and then we die, so shouldn't we look to the realm of the soul? Isn't the afterlife the most important thing to know about? Shouldn't we spend our life investing in the kind of capital (faith and good deeds) that would make our permanent life worthwhile? But all too often we spend our time running after what is only temporary. Regardless of our awareness of what is to come, however, Heaven or Hell is our final destination.

The Gardens of Paradise

Jannah, or Heaven, is the place where our soul is rewarded for listening to its fitrah, or inner nature. Because we have lived a life of faith and good deeds while avoiding bad deeds—which wasn’t always easy in a world where Shaytan and animal desires compelled people to commit evil actions—we demonstrated that we are the best type of creature God created. Our souls have been purified and are ready for the good life after so much struggle and hardship. The Qur’an tells us: “History is a witness! Indeed, humanity is truly lost. Except for those who have faith, do what is right, and who teach each other about truth and perseverance.” (Qur’an 103:1–3)

When we step off the Sirat (assuming we passed our judgment successfully) and make it to Paradise, we will find a huge wall in front of us with eight gates. Each gate is named after one of the main religious rituals that God established on Earth for us. For example, there will be gates named after Prayer, Charity, Fasting, and Struggling Against Evil. We will enter through the gate that corresponds with the activity we were best at.
Some very holy people who will be called by all the gates to enter. In that case they can go through whichever gate they wish! Angels will be standing guard in front of each, and they will greet us as we enter and say, “Peace be upon you! You have done well! Enter here and dwell within.”

The total wonderment of Paradise cannot adequately be described in human language, and God says as much: “I have prepared for My servants what no eye has ever seen, nor ear heard, nor any human being ever conceived of” (Hadith). The Qur’an can merely give us mental images drawn from our own life experiences in this world, and thus Heaven is described in very earthy terms. It will seem to us as a land of lively cities, exquisite gardens, rolling meadows, primeval forests, and river valleys. The colors and scents that will greet us are so vibrant that we will never grow tired of looking at them.

Whoever was handicapped, lame, infirm, or blind will find that they, along with everyone else, will have perfect bodies. Once an old woman asked the Prophet Muhammad if she were going to go to Heaven. He told her that there will be no old women in Paradise. She bowed her head sadly, but then the Prophet smiled and lifted her head up and said, “There will be no old women in Paradise because you will all be made young again.” The woman was overjoyed. We will all be about 30 years of age and in the prime of our physical shape, and we will never feel sick or hurt again. Babies who died will remain as infants, but they will have the run of the place, scurrying around “like pretty green birds all aflutter.”

Heaven has seven layers, and each of us will be taken to our home, which will be located on one of those levels. The level is determined both by the extent of our goodness and by the amount of our prophet’s teachings that we learned while we were alive in the world. Each level is so fantastic, however, that we will not feel any slight or jealousy because of our assigned level. In fact, such sentiments will be unknown in Heaven; and no ill talk, gossip, or lying will ever be heard.

We will be able to visit people who live in different levels. Friends and family will meet and lounge in leisure. Husbands and wives will be reunited, if
they choose, and socializing will be a major activity. There will be special servants and pleasure mates (called houris) in Paradise. They are intelligent yet soulless creatures made only to serve and please us in a world that knows no more vice. Islam is very matter-of-fact about sex and says straightforwardly that guiltless sex is one of the benefits of Heaven.

Wine, another vice that was forbidden in the world, will be allowed there also, and the best food will always be brought to us. We don’t need to eat to survive any longer; there we will eat for the joy of it. Paradise contains markets to shop in, fountains to relax near, roads to travel and endless delights. Boredom will never occur. We will be given silk clothes with jewelry and brocade of the finest quality. The people of Paradise will be quite a sight!

Paradise is forever. No one has to leave. Every question we ever had will be answered. Every delight we ever imagined will be ours for the asking and more besides. Even greater than these, however, is the ability to see Allah. He can be seen beyond the seventh layer in a fantastic spectacle of indescribable light and sound. Such is Heaven according to Islam. There are so many vivid descriptions in the Qur’an and Hadith that the immediacy of the next life is brought to the forefront of the Muslims’ mind. Christians may have pearly gates and golden streets in mind, but Muslims have a closer look at what’s there and long for it that much harder!

No Dancing with the Devil Here!

Hell. The word conjures up images of fire and suffering. Nearly every society has some conception of an ultimate place of punishment for those who seemed to get away with crimes here on Earth. But the purpose of Hell in Islam is not only to punish, but also to purify. Christianity teaches that Hell is forever for anyone who goes there. Islam, while teaching that some will never get out, also says that a few will get out after their fixed term of punishment is reached. Then they, too, will go to Heaven. So in Islam, Hell isn’t forever for everybody.

Even as the Qur’an describes Heaven in stunning detail, so too does it give a very immediate depiction of Hellfire. To begin with, Hell is not the headquarters of Shaytan and his devils, as is the popular idea in Western religion. Shaytan has no throne in Hell from which he directs his plans against true believers in God. Hell is a place that God created only for punishing. Shaytan does not want to go there, and neither does anyone else. Hell is so tremendous that it will
never be completely filled. The Qur’an has a verse in which God says that He will ask Hell one day if it is full yet. Hell will respond, “Are there any more to come?”

Hell has seven layers, just as Heaven does. The lower the level, the worse it gets. Nineteen angels patrol the rim of the chasm and push back anyone who tries to escape. The Prophet Muhammad once remarked that the fire of Hell is 70 times hotter than fire here on Earth. That’s worse than an incinerator! Our level in Hell will be determined by how bad we were and how little we believed in God and the afterlife. The inmates of Hell will frequently hear the phrase: “Didn’t any warners come to you? Didn’t you listen to what religious guides were saying?” Angels will administer the many varieties of punishments and will not flinch in executing their duties.

Among the more terrifying punishments of Hell are these:

➤ Endless columns of fire will enclose the inmates of Hell, and flaming chains will fall upon them. Snakes and scorpions will continuously harass them.

➤ The inmates of Hell will wear clothing made of burning pitch, drink from fountains of burning oil, eat barbed fruits that look like devil heads, and never have a moment’s rest from it. Every time a person’s body will be burnt up or destroyed, a fresh body or layer of skin will materialize so that the punishment can be felt anew.

➤ There will be no communicating with anyone else. Isolation will be complete, and nothing but screams and moaning will be heard. No pleas for mercy or cries for a letup will be entertained. Instead, every time the inmates of Hell cry for relief, their punishment will be doubled.

➤ People will be punished according to their crimes: Faultfinders will scratch their faces with iron nails, liars will rip out their cheeks with iron bars, gossips will cut off their lips with razors, the greedy will be bitten by snakes, and those who dressed to incite lust in others will be disfigured.

➤ Fountains of pus and blood and boiling muck will be the only refreshment, and utter hopelessness will be everyone’s lot.
Western writers have tried to envision Hell for centuries. Dante’s *Inferno* is probably the most detailed Christian conception about the subject. The more dramatic Robin Williams’ movie *What Dreams May Come* also attempts to paint a picture of the next life but ultimately falls short of a full representation of how wonderful it will be. Whereas traditional Christianity gives the one-size-fits-all *Lake of Fire*, Islam provides a closer look at what awaits those who denied God and spent their life hurting other people and harming the world in general. The Qur’an quotes God as saying, “You forgot this possibility so this day I will forget you.”

**Why Does God Punish?**

Hell is not the province of a cruel God. It serves a purpose: to purify warped souls. Once a woman and her son were sitting in a gathering listening to the Prophet Muhammad as he gave a sermon. The child wandered away from his mother and tried to put his hand in the fireplace; the mother instinctively snatched her child away to safety. She thought for a moment about what she had done and asked the Prophet how Allah could punish those He loved in Hell when she as a mother wanted only to protect her little one. The Prophet bowed his head and cried softly and then answered her by saying that Allah does not like to punish. He punishes only those who have rejected Him and committed evil actions. Wouldn’t the mother also punish her son when he did wrong? Thus, we find the purpose of Hell reiterated.

If we have been cast into Hell temporarily but have finished our sentence, the angels will locate and remove us, though we will be mere charred skeletons by then. A substance called the Water of Life will be poured over us, and our bodies will regenerate and be restored to us as good as new. Finally, we will be escorted to Paradise and given our full rewards for any good we might have done. Who will stay in Hell forever? Only God knows, and He is never unjust. The lowest level of Hell is for the worst inmates who will have no way out of it ever.

**The Least You Need to Know**

- Muslims believe in a Day of Judgment where all injustice will be paid back and no one will be treated unfairly.
- Islam teaches that Heaven is eternal, whereas a person’s sentence in Hell can range from temporary to forever, depending on his or her crimes.
- Heaven is presented as an ideal adult playground with the best delights in food, comfort, friendship, activities, environment, and physical pleasures of all kinds.
- Hell is described in great detail in Islam. Punishments there often mimic crimes done in this life. Anyone who has any small amount of faith in God will eventually be released and admitted to Heaven.
The Qur’an has its own explanation for how the world began and also for how it will end. The Qur’an, however, is not structured in chronological order as the Bible is. Rather, it uses scattered references to history and science to prove religious points as they are presented. Many passages in the Qur’an employ this kind of technique. The formation of space, the Earth, and the miracle of life are the most common proofs given. When you gather together all of the statements in the Qur’an related to these three topics and examine them, you’ll find an amazingly accurate description of how everything came to be.

In addition to a well-structured explanation of the elements of creation, Islam also has its own account of how people were made and what human activity means throughout history. Such familiar Judeo-Christian concepts as Adam and Eve, the prophets,
God’s hand in history, and the coming of an anti-Christ have their counterparts in Islam. But as you have already seen with the subjects covered in earlier chapters, Islam has its own version of what each means. Throughout this chapter you will find that the Islamic explanation for how we came here is wide in its scope and complexity as well as independent in its own right.

The Creation of the Universe

“Let there be light” is a familiar phrase for Jews and Christians. It signifies the beginning of the universe according to the Bible. In fact, if one were to read the book of Genesis, a very clear and ordered picture of creation would be presented. Does Islam have its own version of creation? You bet. Is it similar to the biblical account in any way? The answer is both yes and no. As you’ll see, the Qur’anic presentation of the creation of the universe is both unique and startlingly accurate, though not in the biblical sense.

To begin the Islamic narrative of creation, I must go way back to the time when there was nothing but God. Muslims believe that God has no beginning and no end and that He exists independently of time or place. His omnipotence is complete, and He is present everywhere, though He is not a part of anything. In a way, you can almost compare Him to the concept of the Force in the Star Wars movies, except that God is very much alive and cannot be used by people for their purposes like some sort of tool. Given that Muslims do not personify God as other religions do, the mental energy involved in understanding His place in the universe has to come from a higher conceptual level. Trying to explain the origin of God is not something Muslims even try to do.

Allah’s Notebook

Before God even started the ball rolling, though, He made some rules for Himself to follow. One of these was that He would be kinder and more generous with His soon-to-be-made creatures than He would be stern. He also made laws for the governing of the natural universe that would not change. (God invented physics!) Where did He record all of these rules and laws? Muslims believe that God has a ledger in which
He writes whatever He wishes. He does not need this ledger, however, just as He doesn’t need the angels to help Him. He just willed to have it.

In this ledger He also wrote down how long the universe would last and how it would end. Everything in creation, as you learned in Chapter 2, “Food for the Soul,” would be Muslim, or surrendered to God’s will. The only exception to that rule would be those creatures in whom He endowed free will. The Qur’an says, “We did not create space and the Earth and everything in between them except for just ends and for a fixed term.” (Qur’an 46:2–3)

**Creation in the Qur’an**

How did God proceed to make the universe? Did He announce, “Let there be light”? Actually, no. There is no such verse in the Qur’an. What He did do will sound very familiar from a scientific point of view. He said the word “Be,” and an object like a ball (or something equivalent to it) appeared, and then He split it into pieces. The materials from this initial explosion were the building blocks for all things in the universe. The force of that blast continues to expand and spread this matter in all directions even to this day. The Qur’an is very clear when it says, “Don’t the people who hide the truth see that space and the earth were all joined together in one unit of creation and then We split them apart?” (Qur’an 21:30) Does this statement ring a bell? Scientists would call this description amazingly close to the modern concept of the Big Bang.

After this great explosion of matter, the Qur’an mentions that the heavens were filled with a kind of smoke. (For Arabs in the seventh century, this is how interstellar gases would have looked to them.) The formation of planets and stars soon followed, and the fact that they have regular orbits is stated in the Qur’an, as well: “By the rotation of the stars and the orbit and setting of the planets, by the night as it falls and the morning as it passes, certainly, this is the speech of an honored Messenger.” (Qur’an 81:25)

Interestingly enough, the Qur’an also describes the movement of bodies in space by using the Arabic word for swim. Planets and stars are swimming in their courses. As we know today, space is not empty and the objects within it move at a measurable pace not unlike a person gliding under water. The Qur’an even correctly identifies the sun as a giver of light (siraj) and the moon as a reflector of light (munir).
Six Days and Still No Rest

God finished the creation of the universe in six segments, ostensibly called days, and then mounted the throne of power to govern the universe on the seventh. He did not rest, for as the Qur’an says, He never tires. With that said, Muslims do not believe that the universe is only a few thousand years old, as some religious groups assert. Islam can accept the theory that the universe is billions of years old, however. How can this be when the Qur’an declares that it took God six days to create everything? The answer lies in the meaning of the Arabic word for day, youm. The term youm can mean a day as we know it or a segment of time independent of a 24-hour Earth day. The Qur’an further points out that a day to God is not like one of ours. In one verse it says a day to God could be like a thousand years. In another it says that the time it will take the angels to ascend to God for Judgment Day will be a day that is equivalent to 50,000 years of our own time. We simply can’t conceive of time in the same way God does. After all, He made time. So the length of time in years that it took for creation is negotiable for us.
Out of the six days, or time periods, that God took to create everything, the final two days were for creating planets like ours. Our particular planet, and its formation and features, is given more specific treatment in the Qur’an for obvious reasons. Here we find that, as before, we have a large number of inexplicably accurate scientific statements, which the Muslim would say is a sign that the author of the Qur’an could have been none other than God. The Qur’an describes some of the Earth’s salient features this way:

➤ The Earth is round. (A sphere!)
➤ The Earth’s surface is spread out like a carpet. (The crust!)
➤ The mountains have roots like tent pegs to stabilize the Earth lest the surface will move. (Plate tectonics!)
➤ Rain falls from the sky, collects underground, and comes out as springs. (The water cycle!)
➤ There are different types of clouds, each producing a different type of precipitation. (Rain, hail, sleet!)
➤ The Earth is surrounded by a protective canopy. (The ozone layer!)

Muslims are proud to point out that these and many other accurate scientific descriptions were unknown in Muhammad’s time. In fact, most of these discoveries were made only within the last 200 years. As Dr. Maurice Bucaille, a French scientist who undertook to study this aspect of the Qur’an, wrote in his book *The Bible, the Qur’an and Science*, “The relationship between the Qur’an and science is ... a surprise, especially when it turns out to be one of harmony and not of discord.”

**Islam and Evolution**

“We didn’t come from monkeys!” “Life evolved over millions of years.” “God made it all at once!” “How do you explain the dinosaurs?” These are the kinds of arguments and questions that creationists and evolutionists have bandied about for decades. The debate still rages into modern times, and you...
can even see this war being waged on car bumpers as staunch Christians proudly display their stickers of fish symbols and equally passionate science buffs offer stickers of fish with legs as their response. Where do Muslims stand in this debate? Can Islam contribute anything to help solve this seemingly insurmountable gap?

After already reading about the Qur’an and its reliance on scientific statements to prove its validity, you might get the impression that Islam would lean toward evolution, (sometimes referred to as Darwinism, after its founder Charles Darwin). On the other hand, Chapter 2 introduced you to a fantastic world of angels, jinns, Judgment Day, and an omnipotent God. Would Islam swing toward creationism as advanced by fundamentalist Christians? While there has been a lot of debate in recent years among Muslim scholars about this issue, the consensus is that Islam teaches a mixture of both theories. It’s a balanced approach derived from the basic Qur’anic assumption that God made everything and that everything follows identifiable physical laws. Let’s look at how this synthesis can be accomplished.

First of all, Islam attributes the origin of life only to God. He is the exclusive Author of Existence. In this sense, Islam would say God is the Creator. This makes us creationists after a fashion. The first match-up with an evolutionary idea comes from the Qur’anic statement that God created all living things from water. The animals and plants were here before we humans were, as evidenced by the chronological appearance of Adam and Eve after the Earth was populated with life-forms. The Qur’an even makes an allowance for the diversity of species and the extreme age of the Earth.

The Qur’an states matter-of-factly:

“Don’t you see that it is Allah Who sends the rain down from the sky? With it We produce plants of various colors. And in the mountains are colored layers of rock, some white and red of various tones and some black in hue. And so, too, among humans and crawling creatures and cattle will you find a great diversity of colors. Those among Allah’s servants who have knowledge truly fear Him, for Allah is Mighty and Forgiving.” (Qur’an 35:27–31)

Armed with these teachings, Muslim scholars have unanimously agreed that the universe developed over a long period of time and that life arose on Earth through
natural processes. One of God’s names, from the Ninety-nine Names of Allah is, strangely enough, Al Bari, or the Evolver. The caveat that Muslims add is that it was God who provided the spark to those two lonely proteins in the ancient nutrient-rich sea. He is the one who guided the development of all the diverse life forms on our planet, and He is the one who authored animal instincts. “Glorify the Name of your Lord, the Most High, Who creates and completes all things, determines their length, and directs them to their conclusion.” (Qur’an 87:1–3)

This line of argument works well and brooks little dissent among the members of our community—until we get to the formation of human beings. Here is where the battle lines are drawn. In general, most Muslims are of the view that God created humans in a unique way, apart from the evolutionary mechanism. Although a few theologians argue that humans could have been evolved as well, with Adam and Eve being the first of our kind in the chain of development, this view is currently in the extreme minority. So while Islamic theology can generally go along with many aspects of evolutionary theory with regard to plants and animals, Muslim opinion leans more strongly toward creationism where human beings are concerned.

This debate in the world of Islam about human development is still underway and could swing back and forth for a while. Both sides of the argument have their proofs to offer, and Muslims will be watching to see what happens. What we can say for certain is that Islam takes a position somewhere in between the two extremes of evolution and creationism: accepting the gradual development of life while considering God to be the author of its initiation. Again, the place of human development is the subject of debate, and no consensus has yet been agreed upon.

Adam and Eve: A New Perspective

People who are familiar with the biblical account of the first people on Earth will find some similarities with the Qur’anic version. However, there are also important differences that relate directly to the founding doctrines of Christianity and Islam. Before explaining the Muslim thinking about Adam and Eve, I’d like to briefly digress in order to consider the questions of why some stories from the Bible have a counterpart in the Qur’an and whether they give credence to the common Western notion that Muhammad must have learned and copied the Bible. You would be surprised at how Muslims answer this question.
The idea that Islam proposes is that there is one God who has spoken to humanity for as long as we have been here. He has chosen guides called prophets who sometimes leave written messages behind them. When people eventually lost the teachings of their prophet, God raised a new prophet for them who would come with a fresh message that would set the record straight. Being from the same God, each prophet’s message would, of course, share some similar content. Perhaps people altered or changed their previous revelations or warped the oral traditions out of all proportion over centuries or millennia. The previous revelation must then be replaced by the new one. Moreover, if an ancient prophet lived and worked for the guidance of his people, wouldn’t a later prophet’s revelation make mention of him?

This is a basic tenet of the Qur’an: The prophets that Jews and Christians are familiar with were true, and the Qur’an is merely correcting what has been falsely or erroneously written about them and their teachings. People altered their biographies, edited their revealed messages, and lost many of their precepts. (Many Christians and Jews do not know the history of the Bible and how many times it has been lost, rewritten, and edited, Muslims would point out.) So if the Qur’an contains the story of Adam and Eve, or anyone else, it’s not because someone copied it, but because Adam and Eve were real people, guided by God, who had real missions. The Qur’an, which is God’s last revelation, is merely retelling these stories in a more accurate way.

Besides, at Muhammad’s time, there were no Bibles in the Arabic language, nor were books common in Arabia. Even more astounding is the fact that Muhammad never learned to read or write! He was an illiterate in a society where most people could not read. There weren’t any Bible colleges, libraries, traveling evangelists, or churches in Mecca, his hometown. Although there was an odd Christian here or there in central Arabia, none of them were particularly religious, zealous, or knowledgeable. Idol-worship was the order of the day, and a person’s religion didn’t amount to much for most people who were just trying to make it in a harsh land.

Furthermore, when you look into the teachings of Islam and the contents of the Qur’an, you begin to realize that the Qur’an has nothing in common with the Bible as far as structure, tone, voice, grammar, or orientation is concerned. If Muhammad copied the Bible, then the Qur’an would be similar to the Bible, but it is not. There are no genealogies, letters to friends, tribal histories, books of visions, or accounts of doctrinal developments in the Qur’an. What we do have is a book of forceful prose, metered poetry, passionate appeals to reason and faith, and a religious law that is quite distinct. The Qur’an is a uniquely original book.
An Implausible Theory

In recent years some modern Christian evangelists have asserted that there must have been Christian sages in Mecca who taught Muhammad. Others go so far as to say that an agent of the pope at that time went to Mecca to found a new religion. Not only are these theories erroneous, but they are quite a stretch of the imagination. The few Christians who lived in backward Arabia were not knowledgeable scholars, no pope ever wanted to found a new religion in Arabia, and the idol-worshippers of Mecca, who knew Muhammad from boyhood, never charged that priests or evangelists taught him anything. Most Western academic scholars, however, have begun to backtrack from the assertions of previous generations and now accept that Muhammad didn’t have any access to the Bible nor to people who knew a lot about it.

The Angels Had Us Pegged

Now, getting back to Adam and Eve, the Qur’an begins their story with an announcement. Allah told an assembly of angels that He was going to create a *khalifa*, or caretaker, for the Earth. When the angels realized that this new creature, the human being, would have free will, they objected, saying, “Will you create beings there who will cause trouble and shed blood, while we praise Your Holy Name?” From the angels’ point of view, to make someone who could choose to be bad was unwise, especially since God already had perfectly obedient creatures like them. Allah told them frankly that He knew what He was doing (and He would later prove it to them). In other words, He had something in mind, and they could never really know the reasons behind His plan.

Then God created the first man and woman from dust and placed them in a tropical garden paradise. Their names were Adam and *Hawwa*, or Eve.

Where was this garden located? Many Muslims believe that it was in Heaven and that later on the pair were sent down to Earth after having been expelled from it. Others believe the garden was on Earth in a highland area in East Africa, and when Adam and Eve were ejected they settled down not

Translate This

*Khalifa* means a steward or caretaker. Humans are the stewards of the Earth. This is also the title given to the worldwide head of the Muslim political entity. The English spelling is *caliph*.

Ask the Imam

Was woman created from the rib of a man? The Qur’an is silent on this, but a saying of the Prophet Muhammad relates, “Treat women nicely, for a woman is created from a rib, and the most curved portion of the rib is its upper portion. If you should try to straighten it, it will break, but if you leave it as it is, it will remain crooked. So treat women nicely.” (Hadith)
far from there. There is a friendly debate over this, as the Qur’an and sayings of the Prophet Muhammad are vague about its exact location. This issue, however, is not essential to Islamic teachings and is peripheral to our story. I should also mention that Islam does not sanction the Judeo-Christian belief that Eve was created because Adam was lonely. They were both made for each other’s welfare. (The Qur’an rather romantically describes the relationship between a man and a woman as if they were garments for each other, protecting each other.)

As I explained in Chapter 2 humans were created with a soul, free will, intelligence, reason, and an inner nature to seek God called a fitrah. Adam and Eve also were endowed with these qualities. Did they have any other special qualities? The Arabic word used in the Qur’an for human beings, insan, can shed more light on our uniqueness. This term is called an “exaggeration noun” in Arabic. It is derived from the word onss, which means easily adjusting or adapting to everything. The express implication is that humans are clever creatures who can adapt to their environment.

**The Education of Adam**

The Qur’an tells us that God taught Adam all the names of everything in his environment. An examination of the root meaning of the Arabic word for name, ism, shows that Adam was made to understand the meaning of nature around him and how to use it. He could understand his world and what each plant and animal were useful for. When the education of Adam was complete, God called the angels to participate in a demonstration of sorts. God wanted to show the angels what He had meant earlier when He said that He knew what they didn’t know about humans and their value.

God commanded the angels, “Tell Me about all of this (natural phenomena on Earth).” The angels, who were light-based creatures, had no real understanding of how the physical world worked, so they expressed their ignorance about such matters. Then God commanded Adam to tell the angels what he knew about the world. When he finished fully explaining about the plants and animals and how to understand their uses, the angels realized that humans were creatures of great worth and had greater insight than they did. Allah declared, “Didn’t I tell you before that I know what you don’t?”

**The First Racist**

To signify that they were wrong and deserved to pay their respects to Adam, God commanded the angels to bow to the human beings, much in the same way a defeated opponent in a chess game or martial arts school might bow to the victor. They all bowed together. But that was not the end of this episode. Do you remember the jinns, those fire- and energy-based creatures that God had also created? They have a habit of following angels around, and some were in the garden, watching the proceedings.
When the angels lost their contest and were commanded to bow, the jinns began to bow, too, because when the Creator of the universe says to bow, even if you are not mentioned by name, you bow! But one jinn remained stiff and refused to bow. He must have stood out like a sore thumb. His name was Iblis. God asked him why he didn’t bow along with the angels, and Iblis gave a reply that echoes to this day in the prejudices people hold against each other: He said, “I am better than him.”

God had just proven that humans were better than angels, and angels were certainly better than jinns, so for Iblis to make such an arrogant statement was foolish and uncouth. God ordered him to get out of the garden, saying that he, and his jealousy, were to be rejected. But Iblis didn’t want to go quietly. He laid down the gauntlet and dared God to another contest of sorts: “If you give me time,” he shouted, “I can corrupt [your precious humans] and in the end you will find most of them ungrateful to You.”

Now God isn’t one to back down from a challenge. Of course, He doesn’t need to participate in them, either, because He is God, after all. But the way that the Qur’an tells it, God accepts all of our challenges against Him so that in the end when we lose, we finally understand how wrong we were. God punishes only those who fully realize the folly of their ways. For that reason, He lets us stray as far as we want into sin and evil so that when He seizes us, we can’t protest the receipt of our just desserts.

So God accepted the challenge and granted Iblis time until the Day of Judgment to do his worst to us. Iblis boasted, “I will attack them from their front and back and their right and left, and I will create in them false desires and superstitions.” (He does this by “whispering” thoughts into our minds.) But in return for allowing Iblis virtual eternal life until Judgment Day, God laid down one ground rule of His own that Iblis had to obey. He said that Iblis could have no power over those who seek protection with Him.

Iblis’s name was then changed to Shaytan. The word Shaytan means to separate, which is an apt description of his goal: to separate us from our Creator. A segment of the jinn population decided to follow Shaytan, and they are called the Shayateen, or Separators. Shaytan is evil and frightening and wants to have us sent to Hell, but we have our fitrah and God’s revealed religious teachings to help us combat him and our animal desires. Note that Islamic thought does not portray him as a red devil with a pitchfork, nor is he a fallen angel as some religions present him. He is a being with the free choice to do good or evil and he chose the latter.
The Great Test

God warned Adam and Eve about Shaytan in a revelation. He told them that Shaytan was their declared enemy and was out to corrupt them. These first two people were so innocent that they had no need of clothes, for they felt no shame, nor did they engage in lying or theft because everything was free. Food was within easy reach, and they never experienced hardship of any kind. Sounds like an idyllic life, doesn't it? What could possibly go wrong? How could Shaytan hope to corrupt these two virtuous people?

Although Adam and Eve had complete freedom to do as they pleased in the garden, they had to follow one rule: Do not go near or eat the fruit of one particular tree. That was it—one off-limits tree. Was this the Tree of Knowledge of Good and Evil spoken about in the Bible? Well, not exactly. You see, in the Bible we read that the forbidden tree had the power to let everyone know about good and evil deeds. Yet in the Qur’anic telling of this story, God is never quoted as saying that this tree was anything special. In addition, the Bible also mentions a second tree, called the Tree of Life, which could give anyone enough power to rival God. The Bible says that God was scared lest Adam and Eve eat from that one as well.

The Islamic version of the story just has the one tree, and nobody tells Adam and Eve it is special—no one except Shaytan that is. According to the Qur’an, Shaytan came into the garden and tempted both of them to eat from the tree. He told them it would give them eternal life and that their power would never end. This was Shaytan’s first big lie to humanity. Well, they went ahead and did it. They ate from the tree. Why, you may ask, would they do what God Himself told them not to? Here we see the strategy of Shaytan’s sly appeals to our animal self, our desire for more and more. Adam and Eve slipped up because they gave in to their greed for what they weren’t supposed to have.

After they ate from the tree, Shaytan left them, probably laughing at the fact that it was so easy to corrupt God’s “best creation.” The Qur’an does not blame Eve for goading her husband into taking a bite, nor does it let Adam off the hook, as the Bible does. In fact, Islam does not specify who ate first at all! The Qur’an lays the blame on them both equally. “They both sinned,” the verse says. Even though other religions assert that women brought sin into the world, Islam makes no such claim. So what happened next? Adam and Eve realized they did wrong and felt shame because of it. As their sense of shame grew, they began to sew leaves to wear as clothes. The tree they ate from didn't give them any insight into good or evil; they felt the shame from within. Their innate fitrah (conscience) made them feel inadequate and disgraceful.

As a consequence of their disobedience, God ordered Adam and Eve to be expelled from the garden. They were forced out into the wild world to fend for themselves.
with nowhere to go and nothing to shelter them. God declared that humans would have discord and hatred for each other from now on because of the inherent struggle to survive in the world. Imagine the world hundreds of thousands of years ago: no other people, dangers everywhere, and no safe place to hide. Life was harsh for the first two humans for a while. Even worse was their feeling of separation from God. Their *accusing self* was activated, and they sought to find the reasons for their evil actions.

Now whereas Christianity would say that Adam and Eve’s failure in the garden put the taint of sin on us all, resulting in an unforgivable *original sin*, Islam states that after a while God had mercy on the repentant and humbled pair and taught them how to ask for His forgiveness. Then, when they implored God for His grace, guess what? He forgave them. End of story. Although they could not return to the garden, the sin was erased and redemption was complete. *Shaytan*, not realizing that people had a way to remove the stain of corruption from their hearts, was furious! Perhaps he realized that his self-imposed mission was going to be harder than he thought.

Later, Adam and Eve had children, and among them were Cain and Abel (Qabeel and Habeel in Arabic). The Qur’an tells the familiar story of how one murdered the other in a fit of jealousy over an offering. The Qur’an does not, however, assert, as the Bible does, that Cain went somewhere and found a wife and began a new nation. If Adam and Eve and a few children were all the people in the world, where would Cain find his bride? He buried his brother, felt remorse for the crime, and nothing more is said of him in the Qur’an.

**Pass It On**

Allah gave Adam and Eve some important instructions that they were to pass on to their descendants:

“If, and it will happen, there comes to you guidance from Me, whoever follows My guidance will not lose his way, nor fall into despair. But whoever turns away from My message, certainly he will have a life narrowed down and We will raise him up blind on the Day of Judgment.” (Qur’an 20:123–124)
Thus Allah promised to send prophets and guides throughout human history to help combat the ignorance of following our animal desires and Shaytan’s prompting. The entire history of the world, from the perspective of the Qur’an, is nothing more than an expression of this eternal battle.

Do Muslims view Adam in any other way than being the first man? Yes, Islam teaches that he was the first prophet of God on Earth, because he taught his children how to serve God. The Prophet Muhammad said that Adam is sitting in Paradise right now. He turns his head to the right and sees all of his descendants who follow God and he smiles. When he turns his head to the left and sees how many of his descendants are evil, he cries.

In this account of Adam’s life, the major points of difference between the Islamic and Christian versions of the story are …

➤ God placed people on Earth, not because He was lonely, but because people were to be Earth’s stewards.
➤ Shaytan, who thought he was better than we are, challenged God to a contest of sorts saying that he could ruin almost all people morally.
➤ Woman was not created to assuage man’s loneliness.
➤ The forbidden tree was not magical; it was just a test.
➤ The woman is not blamed for the pair eating from the tree.
➤ Adam and Eve were forgiven and their sin was erased, so there was no original sin to pass on to their offspring.
➤ Frequent prophets were promised to help future generations combat Shaytan.

---

**The Least You Need to Know**

➤ The Qur’an has a complete chronology and explanation for how life and the universe began.

➤ Islam accepts elements of creationism and evolution in explaining the origin of life.

➤ The Qur’an contains its own version of the story of Adam and Eve. The woman is not blamed for the pair eating from the tree, and there is no original sin.

➤ God sends prophets to guide people. The messages of the prophets were sometimes lost by later generations.
Destiny. This word evokes a wide range of responses in people, probably because many of them don’t have a clear idea of its meaning, so they unwittingly use the word incorrectly. For example, in popular culture, destiny is often portrayed romantically as a vision of what a person is supposed to do. “I go to my destiny,” shouts the motion-picture hero as he leaps into the fray. In real life, too, people call upon destiny, but their usage of it is more self-serving than romantic. Usually they are trying to justify whatever action they’re engaged in at the moment. In such cases, destiny becomes synonymous with having no say in a matter—an inescapable fate, or fatalism. Yet most people would strongly disagree with the idea of fate: that our personal actions don’t matter. Why is destiny often considered benign but fatalism is outrageously negative? Aren’t both terms two sides of the same coin?
Muslims have a unique concept about their lives and the future, but it does not involve either fatalism or destiny in the usual sense. Islam has been accused of teaching fatalism and of promoting an attitude of acceptance that results in inaction and hopelessness. This falsehood, which grew out of eighteenth-century European criticism of Islam, is actually a highly inaccurate reading of Islamic teachings on the subject. Islam has a unique concept called *Divine Measurement*, which gives Muslims hope that they can affect the future with personal effort and which provides a clear explanation for the reasons why things happen the way they do.

**Destiny, Fate, or Free Will—Which Is It?**

Islam asserts that God is omnipotent. He had no beginning and He will have no end. Because He is outside the realm of time and space, He knows everything that has happened and will happen. He knew that human beings would be valuable creatures when He made them, even though the angels didn’t think much of us. He also knew that the first pair of people would sin, and He made a plan for the salvation of their descendants—if any would choose to take it. This would be the test we are all taking in this life.

When Adam and Eve were expelled from the garden, they were sent into a world full of choices. All of us today have just as many challenges to face as they did. We can do right or wrong. We can lead a successful life, or we can blow our chances and miss golden opportunities. But if God is all-powerful and knows the past, present, and future, and has already written for us the span of our life, our economic condition, and so many other things, are we, in fact, locked into an inescapable destiny? Does Islam teach that each of us has an inevitable fate? Are we destined for Heaven or Hell?

This is an important issue. Christianity, especially, has had to wrestle with this topic for centuries, and it took great thinkers such as St. Augustine and Meister Eckhart to provide some answers. Even then, appeals to *Divine Mystery* permeate Christian literature on this and many other subjects. After all, asking why God made the universe when He already knows the future is a pretty powerful question. What does Islam say about this? Free will and the ability to shape our own future must mean something if our test is to be fair.

**It’s Not Written in the Stars**

You might be pleasantly surprised to know that Islam does not teach *fatalism*, or hopeless reliance on what is destined for a person. At the same time, Islam also does not promote the idea of destiny as it is usually understood in the West. *Destiny*
implies that there is a future plan designed for each individual that will unfold no matter what happens. Many people become apprehensive when they think about tomorrow, and they begin to believe that their destiny can be learned if the right way to discover it can be found. Many claim that destiny is “written in the stars.” Such people throw thousands of dollars at psychics and astrologers to have their fate interpreted.

Islam, however, says that the position of the stars and planets has no bearing on what will happen to us. For this reason, Muslims are forbidden to engage in astrology. The Arabs had strong superstitions in Muhammad’s time, and he worked very hard to dispel them. When his infant son died, an eclipse of the sun happened to occur a few hours later. People started to say that it happened on account of the baby’s passing. When Muhammad heard people were saying this, he came before them and said, “The sun and the moon are two signs of God; they are not eclipsed on account of anyone’s death or on account of anyone’s birth. So when you see them, glorify and supplicate to God.”

On another occasion, Muhammad said that God Himself commented on astrology by saying:

“This morning one of My servants became a believer in Me and one a disbeliever. As for him who said, ‘We have been given rain by virtue of God and His mercy,’ that one is a believer in Me, and a disbeliever in the stars. And as for him who said, ‘We have been given rain by such-and-such a star,’ that one is a disbeliever in Me, and a believer in the stars.” (Hadith)

Watching Time Go By

So if astrology is out, how can people know what will happen to them in the future? Islam says that we don’t need to know what will happen tomorrow! The reason is that God knows; and if we truly trust Him and believe in Him, then we have nothing to worry about. How does this differ from fatalism or destiny? Islam teaches that even though God knows the future, we can still act and make a difference in our ultimate fate. How does Islam balance God’s knowledge of the future with our ability to act? The synthesis comes in a grand concept that can almost be described as managed time. What do we mean by this?
The Islamic answer begins with God’s foreknowledge. God knows the past, present, and future all at the same time. He can do this for one simple reason: He created time and so is not bound by it. Picture a timeline that begins with your birth. As you move to the right you pass through your teen years, college, marriage and family, and ultimately your death. Look at what you just did! You saw it all at once as if you were outside your own timeline. Islam teaches that God is in this position. Muhammad said of God: “People struggle against the passing of time, but I am Time. In My hand is the night and the day.”

So God sees us in any life stage at any time He wants. He won’t end our share of time until we reach the amount allotted for us. In the Qur’an, God has laid out the principle that all of us must live, be tested, and then wait for His Judgment. So for Muslims, knowing that God is outside the timeline means that God’s foreknowledge is not a worrisome issue for us. That’s just the way it is.

Thus, no matter how many times the question pops up: Are we destined to do what we do? Islam says no, we are not forced to do anything. To reiterate, God’s foreknowledge is not making us do what we do. He is merely outside the timeline, looking at us in every stage of our lives. He knows where we will end up tomorrow; however, He is letting time flow, so we can live out our natural lives and experience life for ourselves. Should we still worry then? Is our fate sealed in a way because God knows what will happen?

**It Is Written**

“Every soul shall taste of death. We are putting all of you to a test by passing you through bad and good conditions, and finally you shall return to Us.” (Qur’an 21:35)

---

**All Things Great and Small**

Islam provides a unique mechanism to free ourselves from this kind of worrying about the future. This doctrine is called Qada and Qadr, loosely translated as Determination and Measurement. Qada, which means to determine or to set parameters, covers the span of life for the universe and how it will operate. Gravity causes apples to fall; fire burns combustibles; illnesses can be treated with the right medications, etc. Using this principle we can live life confidently, knowing that we can make sense of our world and the rules with which it operates.

The second principle to make our lives a little easier is Qadr, which means to measure. All things, including people, are dependent on God, and He has measured our life circumstances to provide a varied and challenging test for us to pass. What does this mean in practical terms? Beyond measuring the length of our lives, God will throw a specific set of challenges our way, so we can make choices and learn to live by faith and virtue—or descend into a life of nihilism and immorality. All along our timelines are stumbling blocks and situations that we must react to. When we
consider that God has intertwined everyone’s timelines and how this creates a never-ending web of actions and reactions, we can get dizzy trying to sort it out!

How does this concept of measurement help us to live free from anxiety? Basically, if we say that God has measured the circumstances in our life, we can free ourselves from being overly stressed about what happens to us every day. When we are stricken with calamities, our anxiety is reduced and our despair is mitigated because we trust in God’s measurement or preordainment of our tests. Life, therefore, is a test and not a series of punishments and thus a Muslim’s belief in the goodness of God and the essential rightness of His overall plan remains intact.

The question remains: Can we change what will happen to us? Does prayer or our active participation in a situation have any effect on the outcome of events? Islam says yes. Muhammad said, “Nothing changes the Divine Measurement except fervent supplications (to God).” As God looks at our timeline, there may be a place where we decide to call on Him for His help. In that case, God may change the course of our future. In so doing, His foreknowledge is not affected. In His mercy, He may decide at any moment to alter our timeline and respond to our prayers, so Muslims are asked to make supplications to God often.

As you can see, then, Muslims put their trust in God’s foreknowledge and accept that what happens to them will be a test. But because we have the power to act and react and even to ask God to change things, Muslims always hold out hope that their active participation can influence the course of their lives. In the end, they trust in God and in His knowledge of their ultimate fate: “Whatever good happens to you is from Allah; but whatever evil happens to you is from your [own] self.” (Qur’an 4:79)

**What You Can and Can’t Do**

To gain a greater perspective on how the teaching of Divine Measurement affects the Muslim outlook on life, we can look at what our reactions mean. Islam divides daily life into two spheres: what we have control over and what we do not. We have no control over the circumstances developing around us. The car breaks down; we’re get laid off at our job; an earthquake topples the city; we bump into a long-lost friend; we find a bag of money; the dog runs away, and so on. These things just happen. We couldn’t prevent them because we didn’t know they were coming. Islam says all of these things are a test for us. They were predetermined challenges. They were our Divine Measurement.
Now we come to the essence of the Islamic world-view. Even though we have no control over what happens to us, we do have control over how we feel and respond. When a tragedy strikes, do we blame God? When we see a diamond, does covetousness well up within us? When someone does evil to us, do we reciprocate or forgive? When we are alone, do we feel lonely or jubilant? Islam says we have control over our feelings, emotions, and personal actions. Our test lies in how we respond to what happens around us. Now if we really think of the complex web of actions and reactions that go on every day in all of our lives, we can begin to appreciate how little our capacity is compared to God’s. The Hindu concept of Karma might help here, but Muslims believe in God’s Qadr, or measurement, not in a passive, impersonal web of actions coming back to us.

**Living Free of All Worry**

God sees the timeline and knows what we will do. He sees what everyone else is doing as well. He knows what challenges will erupt as lives cross, and He knows how natural processes such as tornadoes, rainfall, or sunny days will affect the mix. At the end of each person’s timeline, his or her soul is stored in Barzakh to await the end of all time when Judgment Day will occur. By then, the universe, which began with the Big Bang, will be “rolled up” (scientists call this the Big Crunch) and time will no longer have any meaning.

Muslims live their lives, then, trusting in God and His knowledge of the future. The future is not a threat, nor do we fear what is to come. Whatever challenges meet us in our lives we have to try our best to face them. When we have done our best, we leave it in God’s hands. If we are rich or poor, fortunate or sorry, we don’t get too worked up about it. Life’s tests come from God. We try our best and accept what happens and then try some more. The Qur’an says:

“No disaster can come on the Earth, or on yourselves, that isn’t already recorded by Us in a book, and that is indeed easy for Allah. [Remember that] so you don’t despair over what you have lost or brag about what you have gained, because Allah doesn’t love the arrogant and boastful who are greedy and who urge others to be greedy also.” (Qur’an 57:22–23)
Peace from the Pulpit

This next story is a practical example of the peacefulness that belief in Qadr can bring. A story is told about a famous Muslim scholar of the past named Abu Hanifa. He was giving a sermon in a mosque when a man rushed in through a side door, ran up to him, and whispered something in his ear. Abu Hanifa merely answered, “Praise God.” The throngs of people gathered there were puzzled as the man ran back out, but they said nothing and the scholar continued his speech.

A little while later, just as Abu Hanifa was concluding his talk, the same man came running back in and whispered again into his ear. Abu Hanifa replied once more, “Praise God.” When the sermon was finished and the scholar was leaving, a crowd gathered around him and asked him what happened and why he said, “Praise God” twice. Abu Hanifa explained:

“The first time the man came to me, he told me all my merchandise was lost at sea in a shipwreck. When I realized that this loss had no effect on my faith in God, I said, ‘Praise God.’ The second time he came to me, he told me it was a mistake and that the ship with all my goods on it was now coming into port. When I realized that this also did not cause my heart to become altered I again said, ‘Praise God.’”

Islam never teaches that we should sit around and wait for whatever is supposed to happen to us. We must participate, take action, and, when results come in, accept what happened and not be filled with endless “What ifs.” The Prophet Muhammad advised us to say, “God has planned; He has carried out His plan, and I will be patient.” Just because we don’t like the results of our life’s challenges doesn’t mean they weren’t good for us.

In another famous story about Abu Hanifa, he was leaving a mosque one day when he was accosted by a beggar. The man was not disabled or old so Abu Hanifa asked him why he didn’t get a job. The man replied that he was following the teachings of the Prophet Muhammad, who said, “If you would put your trust completely in God, He will provide

It Is Written

“Flow with whatever may happen and let your mind be free: Stay centered by accepting whatever you are doing. This is the Way.”
—Chuang-Tzu (d. 286 B.C.E
Quoted by Joe Hyams in Zen in the Martial Arts)

It Is Written

“When We give people a taste of Mercy they celebrate and when some hardship afflicts them because of their own failures, behold they’re in despair! Don’t they see that Allah enlarges provision and restricts it to whoever He pleases? Indeed in this are Signs for those who believe.”
(Qur’an 30:35–38)
for you in the same way He provides for the birds: they go out in the morning with their stomachs empty and return in the evening with their stomachs full.” Abu Hanifa shook his head and told the man that he had misinterpreted the saying of the Prophet. The man failed to take note of the fact that the birds had to go out in the morning and work for their food. The man dropped his bowl and went looking for employment.

Trusting in God and His plan while taking action is the Muslim way. “Tie your camel and then put your trust in God,” the Prophet once told a man who asked which he should do first. God knows the future, and we can rest assured He is the best Planner. People who do not have this kind of faith, however, often resort to fortune-tellers, tarot-card readers, crystal balls, or psychic hotlines because they are afraid of what is to come. Islam says this is a sign of lack of trust in the Creator. It is such a serious crime in Islam that the Prophet Muhammad once said that a person who consults a fortune-teller will not have his or her daily prayers accepted by God for 40 days! The fortune-telling business is considered a sham by Islamic standards. Why is it that psychics sometimes give true predictions? Islam has an answer for that, too.

A watercolor painting of a Muslim craftsman in the medieval period. (Courtesy of Aramco)
As I mentioned in Chapter 7, “In the Beginning ... An Islamic Perspective,” the *jinns* like to follow the angels around. The angels, who are given instructions about whose soul to take or what natural disaster will occur, often talk amongst themselves. When the *jinns* overhear something that is going to happen on Earth, they rush to people who claim to be fortune-tellers and pour that knowledge into their minds, mixing in a lot of lies along the way. Thus, when so-called psychics speak, they seem to know certain unknowable things, but they often use this knowledge to give bad advice because they do not guide people to lead God-centered lives. Rather their point of reference is to tell people what they want to hear. That is how they make their money. The Qur’an teaches us that people who delve into this type of business “will have no share in the next life.”

---

**The Least You Need to Know**

- Islam does not believe in fatalism or in an ultimate destiny that is inescapable.
- God is the creator of time and is outside of the flow of time, seeing the past, present, and future happening all at once.
- Muslims are taught to avoid astrology, fortune-telling, and similar activities. Islam teaches they are false professions.
- Muslims are taught to have perseverance no matter what happens to them, good or bad. This stoic attitude is a hallmark of an individual’s level of faith.
- Muslims believe that God does not test people with more than they can bear. It’s up to us to rise to the challenge.
Chapter 9

From Adam to Armageddon

In This Chapter

➤ Learn how Islam explains the diversity of religions and cultures in the world
➤ Know the function of prophets and Divine Revelation according to Islam
➤ Discover the meaning of history in the Qur’an
➤ Discover what Islam has to say about Armageddon and the anti-Christ
➤ Learn about the role Jesus will play in the end-times scenario

The history of the world is filled with a dizzying array of cultures, customs, and beliefs. Islam has its own explanation for the origin of this incredible diversity. All true religion, Muslims believe, began with God. It was the fault of people that beliefs mutated over time or were lost. Along the way, new values and customs sometimes emerged, resulting in the great variety of unique local expressions we see today. With regard to our racial and ethnic differences, Islam says that humans are descended from one male and one female and that it is the environment that shaped how we look.

According to the nineteenth-century German philosopher Georg Wilhelm Friedrich Hegel, there are patterns to history, and those who do not know the past are doomed to repeat it. These two maxims describe the entire saga of the human species. The rise and fall of civilizations is a manifestation of our desire to establish a permanent presence in this world. But were we meant to stay? Islam looks upon the passage of human events with a very focused eye. History is considered nothing less than the inevitable journey of all people back to their Lord.
From the first human couple, Adam and Eve, through the innumerable generations of humanity, the struggle between good and evil has ebbed and flowed. But this process will not go on forever. Even as humanity had a beginning, so too will it have an end, and Islam provides us with prophecies about how the conclusion to our story will proceed. The prophets that God sent to the various races and nations of the Earth all warned of a coming Last Day. Some gave more-detailed narratives than others, but the basic theme remains the same—at the moment when human civilization is at its height, it will come crashing down, and God’s promised Day of Judgment will be upon us all.

No Tower of Babel Here

How does Islam explain the variety of human cultures, languages, religions, and historical experiences we have in our world today? The Bible certainly offers a creative explanation. It says that all people were one nation, and in their arrogance they tried to build a high tower to reach God. This was called the Tower of Babel. Then God decided that it would be a good idea to break people up into different groups lest they become too powerful, so He magically made them all speak different languages. People scattered in a hurry and became the different nations of the Earth. Is this how the Qur’an explains the linguistic and cultural diversity in our world? No, in fact, there is no Tower of Babel in the Qur’an.

Islam gives a very reasonable and balanced explanation for the spread of people over the Earth and their unique experiences. To begin our answer, the Qur’an states that the earliest human beings lived together in one community or tribe until the group became too large to sustain a cohesive social life. The Qur’an says “they fell into disputes with one another and scattered” over the Earth. Another interesting verse even gives us a beneficial side effect for this dispersal around the world. It states, “O People! We created you from a single pair of a male and a female and made you into nations and tribes so you can come to know each other. The noblest among you in the sight of Allah is the one with the most spiritual awareness.” (Qur’an 49:13)

So Islam views the diversity of languages and cultures in our world as a natural process caused by the
movement of people here and there. It is a source of richness, wonder, and discovery. Multiculturalism has a treasured place in Islamic ideology; and according to the Qur’an, the only criterion for differentiating among people lies in the strength of their religious sentiment. Muslims are thus taught that race is not a legitimate standard of measurement. Islam has often been praised for its emphasis on the equality of all people regardless of race, creed, or color.

Given this understanding of natural human movement throughout the world, Muslims thus can agree with anthropologists who have proven that all people can be traced back to a single region in east Africa. What about the diversity of our colors and physical features? Islam makes an allowance for that as well. The Prophet Muhammad once commented on the differences of appearance among people in the Arabian peninsula by pointing out that people in the south of Arabia were darker skinned because the sun was harsher and the climate more extreme. People in central and northern Arabia, he explained, were lighter skinned because the climate was fairer. Thus, environmental factors account for how people look from region to region.

### The Rise of the Prophets

The descendants of Adam and Eve spread throughout Africa, the Middle East, Europe, Asia, and finally the Americas. This process took countless generations, and different groups of people developed a variety of cultural expressions. The Qur’an says that God sent prophets to all those nations during the process. Prophets were always chosen from among local people because those born into a community know best how to reach it. Islam makes allowances for the varied rituals and customs that each nation followed by saying that every community received religious features tailored to its specific needs: “To every civilization We have appointed rites and ceremonies which they had to follow, so don’t let them dispute with you on this matter, but invite [them] to your Lord, for you are assuredly on the Right Way.” (Qur’an 22:67)

If you think about the many tribes and communities that have existed for the last 500,000 years, the sheer number of prophets must be staggering. There is an unconfirmed saying of the Prophet

---

**Just the Facts**

The number of Muslim converts among Native American Indians is growing steadily each year. Recently, construction of a mosque began on the Great Navajo Reservation located in Arizona.

**Translate This**

Nabi means prophet in Arabic, that is, someone who receives messages from God and prophecies. Rasul means messenger. This is a prophet who also is given a book, an organized body of teachings that can be written down and passed on for generations. Both offices can be combined in one individual.
Muhammad in which he said that God sent 124,000 prophets to the world and 313 messengers who also received an organized body of laws to pass on. Do we know the names of all these prophets? No, the Qur’an’s unique style doesn’t include names and genealogies, only the word of God to give us guidance.

The Qur’an clearly states:

“We have already told you the story of some Messengers, but of others We haven’t. And Allah spoke directly to Moses. The Messengers gave good news as well as warnings so that people after [the life time] of the Messengers would have no plea [of ignorance] against Allah, because Allah is Powerful and Wise.” (Qur’an 4:165)

Only 25 prophets and messengers are mentioned by name in the Qur’an; and their stories, following the Qur’anic method of teaching, are given mainly in the context of providing an example for the religious idea being taught.

**How Religion Becomes Lost**

What happened to those prophets and their teachings? Does Islam teach that a prophet must always be successful, as some Western scholars have asserted? In general, the Qur’an does not require that a prophet complete his mission successfully. The prophet of the day is only required to try his best. In fact, the Qur’an is very critical of the responses that most people have given to religious guidance. Under the pretense of protecting their cultures, most communities and tribes fought against their prophets. In some cases they even killed or tortured the prophets and their followers, who were mostly drawn from the ranks of the poor and downtrodden in society.

Even though God did His part—sending prophets who spoke with inescapable logic, providing signs in nature of His creative energy, possibly bringing about natural disasters to wake up the people, and sometimes performing miracles to aid the prophet’s mission—Shaytan was able to convince many civilizations to cling to their old ways.

“Before you We sent [Messengers] to many nations and We afflicted them with suffering and adversity that they might learn humility. When the suffering sent by Us reached them, why didn’t they learn humility? On the contrary their hearts became hardened and Shaytan made their [sinful] acts seem alluring to them.” (Qur’an 6:42–43)

In a few instances, the people accepted the message of their prophet and became faithful believers. Other peoples might have adopted their prophets’ teaching after the prophets had died. In any case, with the passage of time any given community was likely to alter, forget, or add to the precepts that had been passed down from generation to generation. If there were written revelations, they were probably edited,
added to, or lost. After many centuries there often was nothing left of a true prophet’s
doctrines but a name and a few snippets of advice. The rest of the religion might now
consist of legends, idolatry, myths, superstition, and weird rituals.

When a prophet’s message had been almost completely obliterated, God would send a
new prophet who would again likely meet with opposition. Thus, the Islamic expla-
nation for the existence of so many religions in the world is to say that all religions
began with a true prophet but mutated over the centuries until they had little in
common with their roots. The core message every prophet taught was surrender to God
and do what is right—in other words, the tenets of Islam—but this message was lost
successively until the last revelation given to the Prophet Muhammad.

Since Muslims believe that every nation received guidance from God and also that
this guidance did not survive the passage of time unaltered, we automatically must
respect the beliefs of other people. This is because a true prophet probably founded
that person’s religion many thousands of years before. The goal of Muslims, then, is
to figure out what remains of authentic guidance from God, as determined by the
yardstick of the Qur’an, and then to call upon that person, using any beliefs held in
common, to take a look at Islam, the last installment of Divine Guidance.

The Cycle of History

Each major civilization during its rise had its corresponding prophetic messages.
Abraham and the Mesopotamians, Moses and the Egyptians, David and the Israelites,
Jesus and the Romans, and countless others. The Qur’an tells us that the rise and fall
of nations was due primarily to their acceptance or rejection of God. When one na-
tion of oppressors would grow too strong, God would allow a stronger nation to con-
quer them. The Qur’an says that God gives nations their chance to shine in turns and
that He uses some nations to check the influence of others lest tyranny should engulf
the whole Earth.

Beginning with the first human tribe to our present-day world, the forces of good and
evil have been locked together in a struggle for the soul of humanity. Shaytan incites
people to evil while God sends His messages to call
them to good. If a people go out of bounds, God
sends a disaster upon them or allows them to be
taken over by others. Think of the fall of Rome at
its most despotic hour or the destruction of the
Nazis after they came so close to world domina-
tion. The Hand of God moves in the world even as
the deceit of Shaytan propels people in the worst
direction. The only people who have any hope of
salvation are those who put their faith in God and
lead a life based on virtuous values. This is the ulti-
mate lesson of history, according to Islam. Chapter
103 of the Qur’an expresses it best: “By [the passage

It Is Written

“The angry man will defeat him-
self in battle as well as in life.”
—Samurai maxim
of time, people are surely in a state of loss. All except those who teach each other truth and perseverance.”

The End Is Near!

Islam asserts that one day the world will end. The march of history from our hunter-gatherer days to our modern space age will not travel onward forever. The Earth will be destroyed, and humanity will have to stand for judgment. Before this occurs, however, fantastic events pitting the forces of good against evil will take place. Christians have their Book of Revelations; Jews have their Messianic Prophecies; Hindus have world-ending scenarios of their own. What does Islam say? Will the end come with no warning, or are there signs to watch for? The Qur’an and the words of the Prophet provide a definite scenario for the end of the world and its portents. They also give us a reason why it has to end.

As I’ve mentioned before, all Islamic teachings are derived from only two sources: the Qur’an and the Hadith, the sayings of the Prophet Muhammad. Muslims consider the Qur’an to be the literal Word of God while the prophetic sayings are Muhammad’s explanations of how Islam should be lived, comments about the Qur’an’s teachings, and also prophecies of the future. Islam, unlike all other religions, did not develop its doctrines over many centuries through the efforts of many men. Every aspect of Islamic beliefs and practices came within a span of 23 years, from 610 to 632 C.E. Islam combines both of these sources in its narrative of how the end-times scenario will play out.

To begin with, Islam teaches that the life span of the universe is fixed. God began it and will end it one day. The Day of Judgment will follow afterward so that evil can be punished and good rewarded. In Islam, God is considered a righteous Being Who will right wrongs and show appreciation for those who listened to His guidance. The Last Day is necessary, for the ultimate payback time has come. Leading up to the Last Day, God will give many signs so that those who are disheartened may gain spiritual strength and those who are rebels against God’s teachings may have one last chance to repent and reform. The twin sources of Islam give a complete picture of what these signs will be.

There are two major areas of focus when we look at the end-times scenario. The first concerns human society and the final battle between the forces of Shaytan and the forces guided by God. The second concerns physical disasters that will overcome the Earth. With regard to the human component, there will basically be tremendous conflicts and battles between nations. Unlike the Book of Revelations in the Bible, however, there is no mention of a climactic melee between

It Is Written

“We lay our little foolish plans as if we meant to stay; Alas, we do not know the end of just one little day.”
—Stillman J. Elwell, Windows of Thought, 1984
angels and demons up in the clouds. All of the battles on Earth will be between people who are either for or against God. The actual destruction of the Earth will follow after that. I will begin with the first topic, that of war between nations and people.

**Prophecies About the Muslim World**

Are Muslims expecting the end of the world soon? Modern conditions, as foretold by the Prophet Muhammad, lead many to believe that the end is indeed near. The greatest of these signs lies in the worldwide condition of the Muslim community. There is no unified Islamic nation encompassing the whole Muslim world, as is called for in the Qur’an. Muslims are not victorious against their foes anywhere in the world, and only recently did the armies of Europe end their military occupation of over 90 percent of the Muslim world. (From the 1800s until the 1960s, most of the Muslim world was ruled by France, Russia, or Britain.)

To make matters worse, in almost every Muslim country the free practice of Islam is suppressed. It is so bad that in Turkey, the former seat of the last Islamic Empire, it is illegal for females to wear head scarves in school or for children to be sent to academies to learn about the Qur’an. It would be akin to outlawing yeshivas or Bible study groups in America! In Syria, if you speak publicly about a role for religion in the political system, you may wind up in jail. In Tunisia, the prisons are full of people whose only crime was that they wanted to promote Islamic teachings in society. In Algeria, the military canceled democratic elections simply because a Muslim political party won the popular vote. From country to country, similar restrictions on Islam exist. Bet you didn’t know that!

Turmoil exists on the economic front as well. Although it may seem that Muslim nations are generally prosperous, especially when you think of the big oil countries, in fact, the rulers of those nations do not look after the welfare of their people. They spend the nation’s resources on building palaces and enriching their relatives in typical despotic fashion. Because of all the petty wars being fought in the Muslim world today between tin-pot dictators, Muslims now make up the majority of the world’s refugees. The resources of the Muslim world do not benefit their countries of origin, because the oil, timber, gas, diamonds, and other treasures are largely exported to other countries, with the cash being skimmed off by the ruling elite. When the Shah of Iran, Suharto of Indonesia, and Benazir Bhutto of Pakistan were forced from power, did you

**Just the Facts**

The Jewish Old Testament of the Bible warns Jews of God’s wrath and the destruction of Zion and its later rebirth by the Messiah. The Christian New Testament warns of a great disaster to befall true believers who will be saved later by a triumphant Jesus. Islam also has a prophetic tradition of predicting the downfall of Muslims until a hero comes along named the Mahdi who will revive the community.
ever wonder where they got all those billions, stashed in Swiss bank accounts, that were reported on by the media?

Multinational corporations make shady deals with the rulers and give tremendous kickbacks and bribes, and the only people who lose are the citizens of the nation whose resources have been sold for cheap. Even though the Muslim world was dominant for over a thousand years in world affairs, both economically and politically, today it is a basket case. Prior to World War I, the Ottoman Empire, the last unified multicultural Muslim state, was even referred to as the “Sick Man of Europe.” The Prophet Muhammad warned that a day would come when the nations of the earth would feed upon the resources of the Muslim world like people eating at a banquet. A man asked the Prophet, “Will we be so few then?” The Prophet answered, “No, you will be numerous.”

The Signs of the Hour

Muhammad gave many prophecies about these dire times, and he said that when the signs are evident, we should look for the coming of the anti-Christ, or Dajjal as he is known in Arabic. Given these conditions, many Muslims feel that we have entered the beginning of the end-times process. In this there is commonality with fundamentalist Christians, who also feel the end of the world is near.

What are these signs of the end-times? Islam teaches that after the Muslim world is vanquished and broken up into many competing nations, the practice of Islam will be increasingly difficult for true believers. Muhammad once described this period by saying that holding on to Islam will be like holding on to a hot coal. Other signs of the end-times include the following:

1. Abundant riches (oil?) will be discovered under the Euphrates River in Iraq, and people will fight over them, causing much death and destruction.
2. Children will no longer obey their parents.
3. Poor nations will compete with each other to build tall buildings in their cities.
4. It will be hard to tell men and women apart.
5. Women will outnumber men.
6. Religious knowledge will decrease dramatically.
7. Wealth will be widespread, and corruption will be rampant.
8. Music, female singers, and alcohol will be prevalent.

Just the Facts

The starting point of the Islamic calendar is the migration of the Prophet Muhammad from the hostile city of Mecca to the friendly city of Medina in the year 622 C.E. This event is called the Hijrah, or migration. We use the initials BH (Before Hijrah) and AH (After Hijrah) in the same way Christians use B.C. and A.D.
9. The worst people will be chosen as leaders.
10. There will be family turmoil in every household.

Looking at this list you might think that the Day of Judgment is coming tomorrow! But things would have to get a whole lot worse, and other similar signs have still to be met. Early Muslims were often under the impression that the Last Day would soon come upon them. However, the Qur’an teaches that only God knows when it will occur. It could still be a long way away by our timetable.

**The False Prophets**

When all the signs do start to fall into place, a series of false prophets will arise in the world. There will be nearly 30 of them, with the last one being the anti-Christ, or **Dajjal**. Before the **Dajjal** appears, though, a great Muslim leader will arise who will unify all faithful Muslims under his banner and will wage many successful campaigns against the enemies of Islam. This leader’s title is the **Mahdi**. Muslims look forward to his appearance and expect that many victories in Palestine and India will be achieved. Invading armies from Europe will be vanquished as well. After conquering the Middle East, peace and prosperity will fill the Earth, and the economic benefits will be overwhelming. The main block of Muslim forces will then retire to Palestine when rumors about the appearance of the **Dajjal** will begin to circulate among the people.

The Prophet Muhammad described the **Dajjal** in great detail. However, whereas the Bible envisions him to be a handsome man who will woo people with his magic and charm, Muhammad said that he will be blind in one eye and will have a mark on his forehead that looks so evil you can sense the disbelief in his face. He will have brown, curly hair and will travel throughout the Earth spreading mischief and trouble. Not surprisingly, the name **Dajjal** translates as liar or man of deception.

The **Dajjal** will claim that he is a new prophet of God. He will be wealthy and have amazing powers to cure people of their illnesses. **Shaytan** will send some of his evil **jinn** to impersonate the dead so that the **Dajjal** can claim to bring people back to life. Later he will make the claim that he is god on earth. The majority of the people in the world, including a few misguided Muslims, will follow him and believe in him. He will therefore amass a lot of military might, which he will use to harass and destroy all vestiges of true religious expression.

The reign of the **Dajjal** will last for 40 days. During that time, he will gather an army and begin to conquer the Middle East, which had been unified under the **Mahdi**. He will even try to invade the
city of Medina in Arabia but will be prevented from entering it by angels who will deter his attacks. The remnants of the Muslim army will gather in Syria and will very quickly find themselves under siege by the Dajjal’s army. Battles will rage for several days, with the Muslims taking heavy casualties. When all appears lost, the Mahdi will call his soldiers together in the evening and receive their pledge to fight to the last man and woman on the following day.

While the darkness of night is still upon the Muslim camps in and around central Syria, a rumor of deliverance will spread like wildfire and a voice will be heard saying, “The one who listens to your pleas has come.” When the time for the morning prayer arrives, the Prophet Jesus, who had been saved from dying on the cross thousands of years before and had been kept in Paradise by God, will descend in the midst of Damascus. After joining the Muslims in prayer, he will lead the Mahdi’s forces against the Dajjal’s army. The Dajjal’s soldiers will number 70,000.

On the battlefield, Jesus will command his troops to move aside so that there will be a clear view between him and the Dajjal. Upon seeing Jesus, the Dajjal’s powers will fade and he will make a panicky retreat into Palestine. The Muslims will come down from the mountains and crush the remnants of the enemy army. Jesus will pursue the Dajjal to a place named Lydda, which is near an airport south of the present-day city of Tel Aviv in Israel. There Jesus will strike down the Dajjal with a lance, and his reign of tyranny will be over.

**The Rule of Jesus**

What will happen next? Is the game finally over? Is it time for Judgment Day? Not yet. According to the sayings of the Prophet Muhammad, Jesus will speak to the Christians and Jews of the world and convert them to Islam. He will succeed in breaking the worship of the cross and will stop the eating of pork. The army he led will disband and disperse back to their home countries, and only a small contingent will remain with him to serve him. Jesus will be the spiritual head of a transnational government of peace. Everyone in the Middle East will convert willingly to Islam, and there will be no more war. He will visit Mecca and Medina while on pilgrimage. He won’t reign for a thousand years, as Christianity teaches, but will live only 40 more years—the rest of his natural life span. Along the way he will marry and have children. While he is in the world, peace and prosperity will bring countless benefits for all people.
**Gog and Magog**

The next great challenge for humanity will occur when the nations of the East, the *Yajuj* and *Majuj*, known as Gog and Magog in the Bible, will begin an invasion with forces such as the world has never before seen. They will invade the Middle East and destroy every city and resource in their path. They will completely drain Lake Tiberias in Palestine because of their armies’ large requirement for water. Jesus will command the faithful to retreat to Mount Sinai in Egypt because no one will be able to withstand the massive onslaught of the invaders.

When the carnage wrought by the *Yajuj* and *Majuj* becomes so great that all looks lost, Jesus will pray to God for deliverance. His plea will be answered because God will unleash a pathogen or some type of disease upon the enemy that will infect their soldiers and cause their army to crumble from within. The power of the invaders will be broken, and Jesus and his followers will leave the mountain and return to their homes. Now, many more people around the world will start to convert to Islam, but before this can be fully accomplished Jesus will pass away. He will be buried in Medina next to the grave of the Prophet Muhammad.

**The Last Day**

We enter the final phase: the end of the world. Three massive sinkholes will open up in the Earth. One will be in the east, one in the west, and one in Arabia. A mysterious cloudy haze will envelop the world, making people feel hot with fever, and the sun will rise in the West. Many of the remaining people in the world who do not believe in God will want to convert now, but no conversion will be accepted then. A strange and fantastic creature will rise from the Earth and warn people about the end of the world. A fire will ignite in the land of Yemen, driving the people in Arabia to flee to Syria.

A new wave of hypocrisy and heresy will sweep over the world. Vice, crime, and state-sponsored oppression will become rampant. All the remaining faithful Muslims will gather in Syria once more. But by this time, even the few remaining Muslims in the world will have forgotten the Qur’an, and copies of it will not be found anywhere. The Earth will start to quake, and the mountains will begin to crumble. As the Qur’an says, “Everything will be in a commotion.”

---

**It Is Written**

“The Trumpet will [just] be sounded when all beings in the heavens and on earth will pass out except such as it will please Allah [to exempt]. Then will a second one be sounded when behold they will be standing [on the Plain of Judgment] and looking on!” (Qur’an 39:68)
The stars will begin to die; the universe will start to “roll up.” The seas will rise, animals will gather in the few remaining patches of land, and terror and fear will grip the people who remain. God will order that all the souls of the dead be raised from their graves and reunited with new bodies on the plain of Judgment. A breeze will pass over the world, taking the souls of any living believers and they will feel no pain. The Earth will be crushed, and the souls of the remaining living people (the sinners) will also be taken. God will then create a new universe with a new Earth, but for humanity the game is over. Everyone will stand before God on a level plain and await his or her judgment.

This is the Islamic view of the end of the world and the establishment of the Day of Judgment. As you can see, there are some similarities with the Christian conception of Armageddon, but the Islamic view has many twists and turns to the story that make it unique in its own right. Again, when will this process start? Only God knows the hour. Muslims today are expecting it to happen sooner rather than later, but thus far people have not been convinced enough to quit their jobs or sell their homes. Panic over this issue has no tradition in the Muslim community.

**The Least You Need to Know**

- The diversity in world religions is caused by the alteration of each prophet’s message over many generations.

- Islam does not believe in the superiority of any race over another. The only valid criterion for establishing the value of people is their religiousness and level of faith.

- Islam has its own view of Armageddon in which Jesus plays a part, though he will be on the side of Muslims when he returns to Earth.

- Muslims believe in an end-times scenario that includes the destruction of Earth and the beginning of Judgment Day.
Part 3

The Five Pillars of Islam

How do we live a godly life? Countless sages and seers for millennia have posed this question. Every religion and spiritual tradition seeks to answer this dilemma with its own program of faith, personal improvement, and social activism. Islam also has its own unique system designed to bring about a heightened awareness of God in our lives. Through strengthened faith and practicing the five pillars of Islam, a Muslim molds his or her life according to the dictates of the Prophet Muhammad.

These religious practices encompass a variety of activities, from fasting and pilgrimage to prayer and active struggle against wrong. It is in this last one, otherwise known as jihad, where a large amount of misunderstanding among both Muslims and non-Muslims occurs. In this part, I will take a look at the pillars and practices of Islam and the unique reason behind each one. I will also discuss the role of jihad in Islam and why it is such an abused term.
Islam has a very detailed philosophy for looking at life and provides a definite statement about what our purpose is in this world. Beliefs and philosophy, however, must be backed up with a program of life-changing action: daily rituals, meaningful practices, and annual reaffirmations of what it means to be a follower of God. Only when faith is reinforced by action can religious concepts be truly realized. From the perspective of the Qur’an, Muslims can’t simply say they believe and then get away with leading any kind of lifestyle they want. What good is faith if it doesn’t improve the way you live?

While every religion asks its followers to engage in rituals to reinforce the precepts of the faith, only Islam requires its followers to keep a daily and yearly regimen of prayer, fasting, pilgrimage, and charity, commonly known as the Five Pillars of Islam. When a person commits to following the Islamic way of living, the commitment is no
joke. However, it’s not so hard that only a select few can do it. People from every walk of life live Islam every day. The idea is that we gain discipline through the application of Islamic rituals in our lives. The rituals teach us to master ourselves and our motivations so that we can gain control over our physical urges and elevate our minds for a higher purpose.

### Introducing the Five Pillars of Islam

Islam has a system of rituals designed to translate our religious beliefs into concrete reality. This serves to keep us constantly aware of our duty to God and helps us avoid the dangers of temptation and complacency. This system is called the *Arkan al Islami*, or Pillars of Islam. In order, they are

1. **Shahadah**  Declaring allegiance to God.
2. **Salat**     Daily prayer.
3. **Zakat**     Annual charity.
4. **Saum**     Month-long fasting.
5. **Hajj**     The pilgrimage to Mecca.

### Just the Facts

There are four degrees of required action with regard to religious duties. These four degrees affect everything from daily prayers to going to bed at night:

1. **Fard** *(required of all Muslims)*
2. **Wajib** *(should be done every time)*
3. **Sunnah** *(the Prophet’s personal example)*
4. **Nafl** *(extra or optional actions)*

These practices are integrated into the daily routine of every Muslim’s life, and they help keep us on the straight path. The Five Pillars remind us of who we are and what we have pledged ourselves to follow. These rituals are so important that they have the legal status of a *fard*, or required duty on the part of a believer. To neglect a required duty is a sin, and the angels will record it in our book of deeds as such. On the Day of
Judgment everyone will have to answer for his or her lack of compliance in God’s multi-step program for change. As you learn about each of the pillars, try to put yourself into the Muslim frame of mind and think about how these would influence your faith on a daily basis.

The Five Pillars are crucial from the standpoint of Islam, because through their practice we remind ourselves of our real purpose in this world. By praying, fasting, giving in charity, and such we train ourselves to become God-oriented people. Islam has often been praised for its disciplining effect, and the five pillars are the core of that program. Prison wardens throughout the United States, for example, are giving greater freedom to the propagation of Islam among their inmate populations precisely because it makes the prisoners calmer and more mature.

The Shahadah

Did you know that there is one phrase said at least 17 billion times a day? It is called the Shahadah, or Declaration of Faith. It is said a minimum of 17 times each day in the daily prayers of each of the 1 billion Muslims on Earth. Anyone who says that people don’t praise God enough obviously hasn’t met a Muslim!

In Arabic, the basic Shahadah formula is said this way: Ashahadu an la ilaha ill Allah wa ashahadu anna Muhammadar Rasulullah. The English translation is: “I declare there is no god except God, and I declare that Muhammad is the Messenger of God.” This phrase includes the two founding principles of Islam and is sometimes called the Muslim Creed. It is a very strong ideological statement in that it lays out the Muslim frontline position: There is only One God, and Muhammad is His last Prophet.

What are the benefits of reciting the Shahadah so many times each day? Think about it: All Muslims have the chance to remind themselves about the reality of God in their lives. Whereas the hustle and bustle of the daily grind may cause us to forget that we are living through a big test and will have to face God one day, the Shahadah and its recitation focuses our hearts and minds on our ultimate purpose. We are here to surrender our wills to God and lead virtuous lives. The Qur’an asks, “Who will take a reminder?” The Shahadah is one way to remember.

Uncompromising Monotheism

The Shahadah consists of two distinct parts. One is a negation and the second is an affirmation. It is interesting that the first part of the Shahadah, the part about believing in God, is phrased in a negating way. It doesn’t just come out and say that God is
our master; rather it goes a step further and makes the point that there is nothing worthy of our attention or allegiance other than God. There is no god but the God.

Islam is very expansive in its definition of false gods. Usually idols or statues come to mind when we think about man-made gods, but Muhammad made the point that anything that takes our attention away from our true purpose in life can be a false god. A belief in astrology, slavish adoration of some famous person, or veneration of paintings of people or animals are examples. Furthermore, Islam says that personal arrogance is grounds for having a false god. People who are so full of themselves that they walk the streets puffed up with pride should beware, the Qur’an says, because they’ve made themselves into false gods.

As Muslims, when we affirm the first part of the Shahadah, we are saying that we want to dedicate ourselves to living for God alone and that we will not hold anyone or anything as worthy of veneration besides Him. It is a daily pillar of Islam and the first of the five rituals because it establishes the foundation upon which all other Islamic beliefs and practices are built. Billions of times each day people around the world declare that God is the One before Whom there are no others. That’s quite a lot of public sentiment!

**Are Muslims Idol-Breakers?**

Recently, the extremist political group known as the Taliban, who rule Afghanistan as of this writing, became the object of a lot of international criticism for their decision to destroy the ancient Buddha statues in the Bamiyan Valley. Everyone from the United Nations to the Grand Sheikh of Egypt’s famed Al Azhar religious university appealed for their restraint. The towering statues, which are among the tallest Buddha carvings in the world, were argued to be historic relics worthy of preservation. The Taliban, however, were not persuaded and went forward with their program, completely obliterating the carved stone statues, which had adorned the side of a mountain cliff for almost 2,000 years.

While the Muslim world debated the merits of the Taliban policy, and the non-Muslim world deplored the destruction of this ancient Buddhist art, the Taliban continued with the demolition. The actions of the Taliban bring up an interesting but
seemingly contradictory situation. When you look at the situation from the point of view of the Shahadah, the Taliban can rightly say they did nothing wrong, yet to Western minds their actions appear very wrong. In the Taliban’s understanding, they were merely destroying idols, or graven images, as the Bible would label them. In fact, Taliban representatives expressed their puzzlement at the opposition from the Jews and Christians, whose own religious book, the Bible, also requires the destruction of idols (see Exodus 20:1–5).

What many Westerners don’t know is that the Taliban are not the original authors of the statues’ destruction. The statues had already been destroyed by the British in the nineteenth century as their armies attempted to conquer Afghanistan. An encamped British regiment unconscionably used the Bamiyan Buddhas for target practice and left behind a pile of rubble. In the 1950s, the king of Afghanistan (who was later deposed by a Communist insurrection) asked for aid from India to restore them as a part of Afghanistan’s heritage. The Taliban, in defending their actions, invoked the basic Islamic principle that there must not be any false deities to detract from the worship of God. In their view, they were merely destroying false idols.

Does this mean that Muslims are supposed to destroy the idols of other religions? The answer is both yes and no. The destruction of idols, under Muhammad’s direct guidance, was implemented in only one situation but was relaxed later. When Muhammad took over Mecca, the first thing he did was pray to God in thanks. The second thing he did was order the destruction of all the idols that the pagan Arabs had stored in the Ka’bah. (The Ka’bah is a large cube-shaped building in the center of the city that Muslims believe was originally built by the Prophet Abraham.) That doesn’t sound like religious tolerance, does it? But Islam asserts that idol-worship was not the purpose for which the Ka’bah was built. It was the idolaters who first made the mistake of desecrating a building dedicated to monotheism. The mission of the Prophet Muhammad was to reestablish a place where monotheism would reign and what better place to start than the shrine of Abraham!

Thereafter, Muhammad ordered the destruction only of idols in central and southern Arabia. In the rest of Arabia, the local rulers were rapidly converting to Islam and abolishing their idols on their own. Muhammad said, “There isn’t room for two religions in Arabia.” So Arabia would be the heartland for the Muslim cause and thus idol worship would not be allowed. However, Muhammad did make treaties with Christians and Zoroastrians. This bound the Muslim community to protect the statues of Jesus and the shrines to the fire god. With this principle in force, whenever Muslim armies came into a land and found people worshipping idols, by and large
they left the idols alone. Muslims have controlled Egypt for over a millennium and all the sphinxes and other statues are still there!

The Ka’bah, or Cube, is a stone building in Mecca believed to have been originally built by Abraham and his son, Ishmael.

The principle in Islam is that religion must be a free choice. Therefore, a forced conversion is a worthless one. Muslims ruled Hindu India for nearly a thousand years, yet they did not mandate the conversion of Hindus to the Islam faith and to this day Muslims are in the extreme minority there. Likewise, the Qur’an commands Muslims not to insult the false gods worshipped by other peoples, lest they retaliate and hurl insults against God in their ignorance. Although Muslim rule was not always carried out in an enlightened manner, if Islam had indeed required the destruction of idols in India, there would not be six million idols in place today. Islamic Law says that we must respect the religious rights of those under Muslim political authority.

Since Islam forbids the destruction of idols that are being venerated by people in lands outside of Arabia, why did the Taliban destroy the Buddha statues? Quite simply because there are no Buddhists in Afghanistan, nor have there been any for over a thousand years. The Taliban concluded that since no one was there worshipping the statues, they could be rightly destroyed as false idols without reneging on the rights granted to religious minorities. They even went so far as to say that they were promoting the rights of Afghans to
remove this affront to their religion! The merits of their actions will continue to be debated in the Muslim world, but one fact remains: They sincerely believed in what they did.

And Muhammad Is His Prophet

The second part of the Shahadah begins with an affirmation: “I declare that Muhammad is the Messenger of God.” This lays out the framework within which Islam says a person has to work to be obedient to God. The Qur’an, as you will recall, accepts that prophets were sent in the past to various nations. Jesus, Moses, David, Abraham—all of them carried the same message from the same God, and they all taught a divinely revealed way of life. Anyone who followed them in their time would get to Heaven.

Islam also promotes the idea that the messages of these former prophets were lost, altered, or even fabricated by later followers. The Qur’an warns: “Woe to those who write the book with their own hands and then say, ‘Here, this is from God,’ to traffic with it for a miserable price. Woe to them for what they make and woe to them for what they fake.” (Qur’an 2:79) So the mission of Muhammad was to restore the truth of God’s authentic message so that people would once again have unimpeded access to God’s true way of life.

By stating that Muhammad is God’s Messenger, we are pledging ourselves to practicing what he preached, doing what he did, and looking to him for our role model. There is even a special word, Sunnah, or Way of the Prophet, that is used to refer to his life example. In his last official speech in Mecca, Muhammad said, “I’m leaving you two things. If you hold fast to them you will never go astray. They are the Qur’an and my Sunnah.” Here are a few things the Qur’an tells us about Muhammad:

➤ You have a beautiful pattern of conduct in the Messenger of God.
➤ You who believe, obey God and obey the Messenger.
➤ Whatever the Messenger gives you, take it. Whatever he forbids you to do, avoid it.
➤ Muhammad is no more than a man; many were the Messengers who passed away before him.
➤ Muhammad is the seal [last] of the Prophets.

It Is Written

“We sent every Messenger before you [Muhammad], with this revelation sent by Us to Him, that there is no god but I, so serve Me.” (Qur’an 21:25)
Muhammad is not considered divine in Islam. He is not a god. He is not sitting at the right hand of Allah meting out justice, nor is he a savior to whom Muslims can pray. “Muhammad is a man among men,” says the Qur’an. Muslims revere him and love him for all of the sacrifices he went through in his struggles with the idol-worshippers of Arabia. He endured unimaginable hardships in order to bring God’s last message to the world. He is also considered by Muslims to be the best model of a husband, father, leader, friend, guide, and politician.

He never ordered a palace to be built, even after Islam became triumphant in Arabia, nor did he ever amass any wealth. His total net worth when he died consisted of a bed, a jar, and a couple of articles of clothing. He lived an austere, almost Zen-like life all the way to the end. Western scholars and writers have begun to recognize his admirable qualities and comment on them. George Bernard Shaw wrote, “He must be called the Savior of Humanity. I believe that if a man like him were to assume the dictatorship of the modern world, he would succeed in solving its problems in a way that would bring it much needed peace and happiness.” (The Genuine Islam, vol. 1, no. 8)

Luckily for us, he lived at a time when the world was getting smaller and information could travel faster. His life and sayings have been documented by thousands of individuals who saw him, heard him, lived with him, traveled with him, and watched him from childhood to his assumption of his role as a prophet. Their writings provide a complete picture of who Muhammad was and what he was all about. Even though he eventually succumbed to human frailty and died, as we all must one day, and is now buried in Medina, Muslims can still adhere to the way of life he taught because a complete description of it has come down to our present day.

**Expressions of Respect**

Whenever Muslims hear the name of the Prophet Muhammad, they say the following phrase: *Sallallahu alayhi wa sallam*, which translates as “the peace and blessings of God be upon him.” Both the Qur’an and the Sunnah require us to say this to show
our respect; if we don’t, it is equated with being stingy. Muslims believe that whenever we wish peace upon the Prophet, an angel goes to Muhammad’s grave and brings this news to his soul, which is resting there. (The souls of the departed remain in their graves in Barzakh.) On the Day of Judgment, God will accept the plea of Muhammad to save from Hellfire whomever he asks to be pardoned, up to a certain limit. Only a precious few will be granted the right to intercede on behalf of others on Judgment Day.

**The Welcoming Tie**

The *Shahadah*, our Declaration of Faith, negates false gods and affirms the way in which we must follow the path to God. The purpose of its frequent recitation is to remind us of those two principles.

The *Shahadah* is the defining statement of Islam. When a person desires to convert to Islam, all he or she need do is believe in what the *Shahadah* teaches and then recite it in front of witnesses. There are no lengthy years of study, as there are to convert to Judaism, nor is there a baptism ceremony as in Christianity. Belief expressed in the heart and tongue is enough to get the spiritual ticket needed to be on the straight path to Allah.

**The Least You Need to Know**

- Islam has a unique set of practices called the Five Pillars of Islam, which encompass monotheism, prayer, fasting, charity, and pilgrimage.
- A Muslim must perform the five pillars, or it is counted as a sin.
- The Muslim Creed is called the *Shahadah*, or the Declaration of Faith. It consists of two parts: belief in God and acceptance of Muhammad as a prophet.
- Muhammad is not considered a god in Islam or even a savior in the classic Christian sense. He is a man who was chosen by God to deliver a message.
- Muslim conversion rituals consist of merely reciting the *Shahadah* in the presence of witnesses.
Understanding Muslim Prayers

In This Chapter

➤ Learn about the Muslim practice of supplication to God
➤ Discover the history and meaning of the famous Islamic call to prayer
➤ Understand the meaning of the five daily prayers of Islam
➤ Unlock the mystery of what Muslims do when they pray
➤ Find out about the Muslim rosary and its benefits

Regular prayer, known as salat in Arabic, is the second pillar of Islam. It is the ritual having the most direct impact on a Muslim’s daily life. Prayer is often a contentious issue in our modern world. As much as people of faith promote its many benefits in public life, those who desire a well-defined separation of church and state often strive to have laws enacted that curtail its practice in municipal circumstances. Both sides have reasons for their actions; and as Muslims enter mainstream life in the West, they, too, will be asked to take sides in this debate. This presents an odd situation in that Islam commands its followers to pray five times each day but then forbids them to participate in the public prayers of non-Muslims. Is prayer in Islam a public or a private act? The answer is that it is both.

The entire philosophy of prayer in Islam is that it is a way for the individual to elevate his or her mind to seek God. It has the side benefit of curbing the desire to hearken to immoral inclinations. Images of Muslims lined up in rows are common staples of
newsmagazines, and many in the West have expressed respect for the group discipline that this activity promotes. Public prayer thus serves to reinforce within the community the importance of regular prayer and cooperative action. In this chapter, I will be exploring this ritual and its importance. In addition, I will walk you, step-by-step, through every stage of the Islamic way of prayer so that you can gain an understanding of what it’s all about and why this practice won’t easily fit into the current debate about prayer in the modern Western world.

Supplication Versus Prayer

“I will extol the Lord at all times; His praise will always be on my lips. My soul will boast in the Lord; let the afflicted hear and rejoice. Glorify the Lord with me; let us exalt His name together.” Thus wrote David in Psalm 34 of the Bible. Muslims believe that God revealed the Psalms to the Prophet David. He is known in Islamic tradition to have been a man much given to worship and fasting. Jews and Christians celebrate his virtues, as well. He was, the Muslim would say, an excellent model to follow. He was also a man of fervent prayer, according to the Prophet Muhammad.

Prayer means different things to different people. Some people consider it a magic cure-all for ailments or a quick fix for tough situations—“If you help me out, God,” they pray, “then I’ll do such-and-such.” “Please God, forgive me.” “Help me do well on that test, God.” These are not prayers, according to Islam, but an attempt by people to have their wants or needs answered. A better word to use for this activity is supplication. The Islamic term Du’ā, or Calling on God, is what we label such personal requests. Muslims are encouraged to call on God for their needs and desires, as long as they are for virtuous goals. God even gets angry if we don’t call upon Him regularly because then we are slighting Him.

The Qur’an encourages us to supplicate with the following words:

“Therefore, you should know that there is no god but Allah; implore Him to forgive you your sins and to forgive the believing men and believing women; for Allah knows your activities and your resting places.” (Qur’an 47:19)

God has promised to listen to all of our sincere supplications. It doesn’t mean He will answer all of them, though, because we may be asking for something that is not best for us. For example, we may ask to get rich, but that is a sign of our latent greed. Muhammad said that God keeps some people poor out of His mercy because they would be arrogant if they were wealthy. He further explained why some of our prayers
(supplications) are not answered by saying, “Indeed, your Lord is very modest and generous. He feels shy that His servant should raise up his hands in supplication, and He may let it go unaccepted.”

The Qur’an and the hadiths contain literally hundreds of ready-made supplications that a person can say to ask God for everything from forgiveness to guidance to recovery from illness. There are even specific ones that Muslims memorize for use during certain times or activities. Supplications can be said in any language, and there are no attendant rituals or requirements other than to raise the hands, palms up, in front of the body as if asking to receive something from somebody. Sincerity is the key to having requests granted. This practice is so important in Islam that Muhammad said that our fervent supplications can even change our future in the timeline that Allah has set for us. Examples of common supplications (*Du’as*) include these:

- **Our Lord, give us the best in this life and the best in the next and protect us from the punishment of the fire.**
- **O Allah, open for me the doors of your mercy. (Said when entering a mosque)**
- **O Allah, You are peace and peace comes from You. You are blessed, O Lord, the Sublime and Generous.**
- **There is no god but You. Glory to you, indeed I was a sinner.**
- **Glory to the One Who gave us power over this because we wouldn’t have been able to master it by ourselves. Indeed back to our Lord is our final return (said when starting out on a journey after entering a car or mounting a horse).**

So you can see that Islam makes a distinction between *supplication* and *prayer*. The Arabic word *salat* is what we would term prayer. *Salat* is the religious ritual that a Muslim must perform five times every day to show obedience and attentiveness to God’s call. It consists of a physical routine of bowing and prostrating coupled with a litany of short recited passages and phrases in which we praise God and remind ourselves of our mission here. It is our way of presenting ourselves before God to say, “Here I am, Your obedient servant.” As you will see, the
Muslim method of performing prayer is one of the more demanding forms of worship but also one of the most rewarding.

Why Do We Pray?

The benefits of daily prayers are twofold. The first benefit that daily prayer provides is a constant reminder throughout the day that we are God’s servants. The second benefit is that God forgives some of our sins each time we perform salat. If we are negligent in our duty and pray only irregularly, then we run a very great risk on Judgment Day. When our good and our bad deeds are weighed, Muhammad said that our prayers will be looked at first. If they are found to be full of deficiencies, then God won’t even look at the rest of our good deeds. Imagine going to court and having all the evidence that exonerates you declared as inadmissible because of mistakes on your part!

Each of the five daily prayers is said at a different fixed point during the day. There are no exemptions to the religious requirement to perform prayers except for children under puberty, women in their menses, the unconscious, and the mentally challenged. The official prayer times and their names are as follows:

- **Fajr**: Before sunrise
- **Zuhr**: Just after noontime
- **'Asr**: Late afternoon
- **Maghrib**: Just after sunset
- **'Isha**: At night

Because the seasons change and the days get longer or shorter throughout the year, the times we pray will move a bit each month. In the summer, our first prayer may start at 4:00 A.M. and our last prayer may be at nearly 10:00 at night! In the winter, our range of prayer may be from 7:30 A.M. to 6:30 P.M. The time for each prayer begins according to the position of the sun and is valid until the next prayer time begins, so there is a lot of leeway and flexibility on the exact moment to make the salat. These fixed times have been laid out in the Qur’an, and no prayer may be said before the official time begins. Any prayer said when the prayer time is over is considered a late prayer and is marked as such by the angels who record our deeds.

The Benefits of Prayer

How does praying at five predetermined points throughout the day help us to be better people? Think about it: Each of the prayers is said at a different strategic time so that no matter what we are doing or how busy we get, we are always aware that we either prayed a few hours ago or will pray again soon. This keeps the mind fresh and aware of our duty to God, and we become much less likely to want to break one of
His laws. Who wants to cheat on a business contract when an hour later you are going to stand before God and ask for His favor and guidance? Only a hypocrite would be so brash.

The Islamic prayer is becoming a much more familiar sight in North America.

I’m often questioned by people about the difficulty in praying so many times each day—“How can you remember when to do it?” “Isn’t it hard to pray so much?” These are valid questions because many concerned people get the impression that Islam is hard to follow. It’s not as onerous as it sounds. A Muslim becomes used to the routine, and once you’re used to something it doesn’t become difficult any longer. Observant Jews also pray several times each day, as do Hindus, Buddhists, and others. The idea is that if you truly understand that God is real, you won’t hesitate to take every opportunity to pray to Him. The actual prayer ritual takes only 5 to 10 minutes to complete, so in a 24-hour day all God asks is that we remember Him for less than 30 minutes of that time.

**The Seven Preconditions**

There are seven requirements that must be fulfilled before we begin to pray:

- It must be prayer time.
- We must wash our hands, face, and feet with water to be ritually pure.
- We must wear clean clothes.
- A clean place to pray must be available. Prayers can be done in a mosque or anywhere else.
- We must be wearing pants, a shirt, and/or a robe to cover our body. Women add a scarf or veil over their hair to remind them that God does not judge us by our looks or beauty, but by our sincerity.
➤ We must face in the direction of Mecca to signify the unity of all Muslims.
➤ We must have the proper intention in our mind about what we’re doing.

If these seven conditions are met, then the prayer can proceed.

**Cleanliness Is Next To ...**

Before Muslims may pray, we must be in a ritually pure condition. This means that we must wash our hands, faces, and feet before we are allowed to make salat. The procedure for attaining this cleanliness is called *wudu*, or ablution. Islam teaches that before we present ourselves before God, we must make every effort to look presentable. Would you meet the president with dirt on your face? Would you cook dinner without first washing your hands? So, too, does God give us a way to make ourselves fitting for His review.

One of the main features of a mosque is the fountain or *wudu* area where Muslims go to make their wudu. *Wudu* can even be made in a sink; all that’s needed is clean water. The entire procedure takes about a minute, and Muslims are encouraged by the Prophet not to waste water while doing so. The state of ritual purity is valid for as long as a person has no bodily waste functions, so a person could make several prayers throughout the day on just one *wudu*. There is a requirement for taking a shower, as well, for those who had intimate relations, or finished their menses. The Prophet Muhammad once said, “The key to heaven is prayer and the key to prayer is being ritually pure.”

**The Muslim Call to Prayer**

When the Muslim community was in its infancy, prayer was a precarious practice. Muhammad lived in Mecca, a city devoted to the business of idol-worship. At the age of 40, when God chose him to be a prophet, Muhammad began preaching that there was only one God and that idols were man-made pieces of wood and stone. Understandably, the Meccans, who made their living by catering to the pilgrims who traveled from far and wide to venerate their idols, were furious. They attacked Muhammad...
through a virulent smear campaign and a bitter propaganda war. When this didn’t work, and they saw many people still accepting Islam, the city authorities resorted to violence and even murder.

Muhammad wasn’t directly attacked at first, because of his family connections, but other Muslims weren’t so lucky. They often had to lie low. When the time for prayers came, there was no public call for people to congregate. Anyone found praying could be attacked or ridiculed. No mosques were built in the city, nor would the Meccans have entertained such an enterprise. Islam was under siege. Many Muslims had to hide their identity for fear of persecution, torture, or worse. For 13 long years Muhammad’s ever-growing following had to endure immense physical and mental pressure. Most of the converts to Islam in this period, which is called the *Meccan period,* were poor, young, or slaves; thus these early followers had little protection from vengeful families or enraged public officials and their mobs.

Prayer under such circumstances was difficult and unnerving. Muslims could meet only in small, secret rooms, and any Muslim who dared to pray near the *Ka’bah* was immediately set upon and beaten. The followers of Muhammad, who are known as his *sahaba,* or companions, enjoyed no religious freedom of worship in the land of their birth. This situation is akin to the period of Christian persecution by the Romans in the first two centuries of Christianity. There were no church bells in Rome during Nero’s time, nor were there any similar devices in Mecca to call Muslims to prayer.

Later on, after Muhammad was invited to migrate with his followers to Medina, some 200 miles to the north, the Muslim community was given permission to construct a house of prayer. The first mosque was built in a small town outside of Medina called *Quba,* and the great Mosques of the Prophet was soon constructed in the center of the city. The mosque was a simple structure made of mud bricks with a roof of palm leaves, balanced on wooden poles. It was illuminated with torches at night. The appearance of the building wasn’t what was important, however; it was the strength of character of those who entered it.

Islam requires prayer to be performed at five fixed times, and in those days clocks were not invented. People told time by the position of the sun. Some way had to be found to let people know that the prayer time had come. Moreover, since Islam taught
that prayer in congregation was better in the sight of God than prayer alone, people needed to be informed when the congregation was forming in the mosque. Yet another reason for notifying people is that Muslim men over the age of puberty are required to attend a special service on Friday afternoon in which they hear a sermon. This is called salat ul-Jumu’ah (the Gathering Prayer). Given all of these needs, the Muslim community had to come up with a way to alert people five times each day. Several ideas were bandied about: bells like those used in churches, horns like those in synagogues, drums, and so on. But Muhammad did not approve of any of them. He prayed for guidance from God on this issue, and the answer came in a unique way. A companion came to the Prophet a few days later and said that in his dreams he saw a man calling out phrases in a loud voice. He was asking people to come to prayer. Muhammad listened to the man’s words and declared that this dream came from God. He ordered the man to teach the words to a Muslim convert named Bilal, who had a beautiful voice. (Bilal was an African slave who was freed from his idolatrous master by the Muslims.) Bilal then stood atop a wall of the mosque in Medina and called out loudly the following words:

Allahu Akbar, Allahu Akbar.
Allahu Akbar, Allahu Akbar.
Ashahadu an la ilaha ill Allah.
Ashahadu an la ilaha ill Allah.
Ashahadu anna Muhammadar Rasulullah.
Ashahadu anna Muhammadar Rasulullah.
Haya alas Salah. Haya alas Salah.
Haya alal Falah. Haya alal Falah.
Allahu Akbar, Allahu Akbar.
La ilaha ill Allah.

The meaning is as follows:

God is greater, God is greater.
God is greater, God is greater.
I declare there is no god but God.
I declare there is no god but God.
I declare Muhammad is the Messenger of God.
I declare Muhammad is the Messenger of God.
Rush to prayer. Rush to prayer.
Rush to success. Rush to success.

God is greater, God is greater.

There is no god but God.

Upon hearing these words, another man rushed to the mosque and told Muhammad that he also had had a dream containing those same words. Thus the Muslim call to prayer, or *azan*, was born. A person who calls the *azan* is termed a *muazzin*. It is not a special office or holy position. Any male can perform it, but Muslims usually appoint the person who has the nicest and loudest voice to do it. No trip to a Muslim country is complete until you’ve been awakened in the early morning to the sounds of the *azan* floating over the landscape.

Why don’t we hear the *azan* being called in the West, even though there are thousands of mosques in Europe and North America? Quite simply, local authorities largely forbid it. Now, Muslims in the West have begun asking for the same rights that Christians have in alerting their followers to their prayers. Whereas the sound of church bells ringing can be heard throughout the day and night in the cities of North America and Europe, Muslims have had only limited success in gaining permission to announce the *azan* outside the mosque with loudspeakers. Perhaps the coming years will see a shift in this restriction.

**Humble Pie**

The purpose of *salat* is to present ourselves before God as humble servants. *Salat* is performed in a set manner, and the rules are the same for Muslims all over the world. The *salat* procedure combines a set of ritualistic movements with memorized passages that are said at specific times. While learning the physical aspects of the prayer is simple, learning by heart the words we must say is a little more challenging. Even more challenging than that is the final goal of *salat*—producing such a meditative state that no distractions are able to take our focus off of God.
Why do Islamic prayers combine physical movements with memorized passages? The answer lies in the makeup of our human selves. When a king walks by, the usual response is to bow and show one's humbleness. If we pray merely by saying spontaneous phrases and getting emotional, then only the heart is humbled. The body is left behind. Likewise, if our prayer is nothing more than whatever words we feel like saying at the moment, then one prayer would be better than another. Islam says that all three of our components must be unified in prayer for it to be truly meaningful. First, we humble our hearts out of love for God. Then, we recite prayers that God gave us and concentrate on their meanings so we can learn how to remember God throughout our lives. Finally, we bring it all together by bowing down low so we feel with our physical senses what true humbleness means.

It Is Written

According to Muhammad, “Your Lord delights at a shepherd who, on the peak of a mountain crag, gives the call to prayer and prays. Then Allah says, ‘Look at this servant of Mine. He gives the call to prayer and performs the prayers; he is in awe of Me. I will forgive My servant [all his sins] and admit him to Paradise.’”

Ask the Imam

There are certain times when some of the five daily prayers can be combined and prayed at the same time. Travelers, pregnant women, and nursing women can combine the two afternoon prayers at either one of the times and also the two evening prayers at either time so there is no hardship on such busy people.

Each of the five daily prayers is performed in a similar way. The only difference between them is the total number of movements in each. The basic procedure to each prayer consists of standing and reciting a chapter from the Qur’an, bowing at the waist and glorifying God, and then prostrating twice on the ground while extolling God’s power. This complete cycle is called a Ra’kah, or unit of prayer. The early morning prayer consists of two units like this, whereas the two afternoon prayers and the night prayer consist of four units. The sunset prayer has three units. The varying number of units serves to give variety to our daily schedule so that we have to keep ourselves aware of what we’re doing and also the varying lengths are fitted to the amount of time we may have at different points throughout the day.
The Prayer Described

Let me walk you through a complete prayer procedure modeled on the early morning salat ul-Fajr. Try to put yourself into the frame of mind of a Muslim, and you will see how this ritual can be very powerful to people who take monotheism as seriously as Muslims do. Let’s begin.

After you have met the seven preparatory requirements for prayer, such as ablution and facing Mecca, begin your prayer by raising your hands to your ears and saying, in Arabic, “Allahu Akbar,” or “God is greater.” (For the duration of this descriptive narrative I will only give the English meaning of what is said in the prayers.) From that moment onward, you are considered to be cut off from the world. All your attention and focus must be on God. You are presenting yourself to Him and should show proper deference. If you laugh, talk to someone, look around, or do anything similar, then your prayer is broken and you must start again. You must ignore everything that happens around you until you are finished. (Emergencies such as helping an injured person or avoiding imminent danger are valid excuses to interrupt prayer.)

These are, in order, the major postures of the Islamic prayer.
Next, fold your hands over your lower chest with the right hand over the left and recite the first chapter of the Holy Qur’an, which for Muslims is sort of like the *Lord’s Prayer*. It is a beautiful summary of the entire message of Islam and reads as follows:

“In the Name of God, the Compassionate Source of All Mercy. All Praise be to God, the Lord of all the worlds, the Compassionate Source of All Mercy and Master of the Day of Judgment. You alone do we serve and it is to You alone that we look for help. Guide us on the Straight Path; the path of those who have earned Your favor, not the path of those who have earned Your anger, nor of those who have gone astray.”
(Qur’an 1:1–7)

Following this you say “**Ameen,**” or “**Let it be so.**” Then you must recite one more portion of the Qur’an, of your own choosing. It can be as few as three verses. (Muslims are encouraged to learn some of the Qur’an by heart for use in prayer.) Say, “**God is greater**” once again and bow forward at the waist, resting your hands on your knees. Repeat three times, “**Glory to my great Lord.**”

Then you say, “**God hears those who praise Him,**” and stand back upright with your arms at your sides. After another “**God is greater,**” you get down on your hands and knees and bow your forehead to the ground. Say three times, “**Glory to My Lord, Most High.**” Repeat, “**God is greater**” and rise to a sitting position. Declare that God is greater again and then bow forward on your forehead once more, repeating what you said the first time. This ends one unit of prayer. From here you say, “**God is greater**” one last time and then stand up again, fold your hands in front, and begin the whole process over.

The only difference in the second and final unit of movements is that after you recite the opening chapter of the Qur’an, you must choose a different second passage to recite afterward. When you finish with your second and final prostration, you rise to a sitting position and say two short benedictions. You end your prayer by turning your face to the right and left, wishing peace upon all those there. (Even if there is no one at your sides, the angels are there.) This is what Muslims do and say when they pray.
If a Muslim is praying in a group with other Muslims, then one of them (usually the most knowledgeable) will act as an Imam, or prayer leader. The Imam will stand in front of everyone while the rest of the people will form straight rows behind him, leaving enough space between each row to bow down. The Imam will recite the passages of the Qur’an out loud while the participants will follow along silently. When it is time for physical movement, the Imam does it first and the rest follow.

Men and women line up in separate rows with all the men filling the first rows, then minor-aged children making their own rows, and finally women making the back rows. If any men are present, a male is always chosen for the Imam. Given the nature of how we pray, men might have a hard time concentrating on their prayers if women were prostrating just ahead of them. That is why we separate the men and the women in congregational prayer. Muhammad said that there is no decrease in reward for women in the back rows. If it is only a congregation of ladies praying, then one of the women will be the Imam for the group and lead them in front.

It Is Written
When the Prophet Muhammad uttered the salutation at the end of the prayer, he would say: “O Allah, forgive me my former and latter sins, what I have kept secret and what I have done openly, and what I have done extravagantly; and what You know better than I do. You are the Advancer and the Delayer. There is no god but You.”

A typical group formation for Muslim prayers.
Remembrance of God

After prayer and supplication, there is a third way of reforming our hearts and minds and communicating to God how much we love Him and recognize His love for us. This is called *dhikr*, or Remembrance. It is basically the same as chanting the Rosary in Catholicism, except Islam has a great variety of phrases that we may repeat to bring to mind the reality of God. (There are over 50 to choose from!)

The whole philosophy of chanting set words or phrases over and over is rooted in psychology: Whatever you fill your mind with, that is what you will believe. This doesn’t cause passive complacency, however; rather it conditions and keys the subconscious to surrender to God. Karl Marx might have said that religion was the opium of the people, but Muslims hold that excessive music is the true opiate. Lyrics in songs are commonly memorized and sung by most people, and this could be likened to a secular rosary of sorts. Although music and singing are allowed in Islam (though under more restricted conditions,) remembering God is a more productive mental activity, and *dhikr* is considered the best music in Islam.

One common *dhikr* phrase is *Alhumdulillah*, which means Praise be to God. By saying this phrase over and over, we make ourselves aware that God should be praised. Put away the CDs and remember the One who made us all to begin with! The Sufis, the mystics of Islam, have perfected group *dhikr* and engage in it as part of their daily routine, usually by sitting in a circle with others. Are there any rules or methods to *dhikr*? All *dhikr* should be said in Arabic for maximum benefit. Any phrase or word may be chosen and chanted. There are longer formulas for remembrance—some are paragraphs long! The Prophet taught each of them, and many of them carry a reward from God for their performance. Here are some others and their benefits:

- There is no power or might save in God. (By saying this *dhikr* often, you will be given treasure in Paradise.)
- Glory be to God and praise belongs to Him. (If said 100 times, all your lesser sins will be forgiven.)
- Glory to God. Praise be to God. God is Greater. (Say each one 33 times before going to bed.)
Often after performing the ritual salat, you will find Muslims sitting for a few quiet moments “making dhikr,” to use our phrase for it. When they finish, their minds are relaxed and they have preprogrammed their consciousness to act the part of a virtuous servant of God for the rest of the day.

The Islamic way of performing prayers is both unique and comprehensive. By humbling ourselves before God five times each day, supplicating to God in private moments, and remembering God through the repeated phrases of dhikr, we seek to mold our minds and thoughts into a way pleasing to God. Salat builds discipline as well and makes a person learn punctuality even as it keeps the mind focused on the true reality of our time here in this world. The next time you see Muslims at prayer, let your own faith be strengthened by knowing that people can learn piety and self-discipline in wholesome activities. This is the goal of Islamic prayers.

The Least You Need to Know

➤ Muslims have to pray five times every day at predetermined times.
➤ The Islamic prayer consists of ritual bowing and the reciting of prayers and glorifications to God.
➤ A clear distinction is made between personal supplication and ritual prayer.
➤ Muslims gather on Friday afternoons for their congregational religious service.
➤ Muslim students and employees need a few minutes every afternoon to perform their obligation of prayer.
➤ The Muslim rosary, or dhikr, consists of various phrases repeated over and over that help focus a person’s mind on God.
Chapter 12

Elevating the Soul

In This Chapter

➤ Learn about the third pillar of Islam, the practice of zakat
➤ Discover how wealth is regarded in Islam
➤ Learn about fasting, the fourth pillar of Islam, and the month-long fasting ritual of Ramadan
➤ Find out what a Muslim learns from charity and fasting

Avarice and gluttony are counted among the Seven Deadly Sins in Catholicism. The effects of these two vices have far-reaching consequences not only for the individual but for society as well. The green-eyed monster, greed, causes envy and hatred by pitting the haves against the have-nots. Those of means become loathe to part with their money, while the poor become jealous and spiteful over their woeful condition. The eternal struggle pitting the classes against each other (over the control of resources and wealth) has even spawned revolutions and created new ideologies such as socialism and communism. In capitalist nations, the problem is only partially addressed by scant welfare and social programs whose existence is always begrudged and under constant assault.

Personal gluttony, as expressed in the uncontrolled urge to eat, engage in sex, and take harmful drugs and alcohol, has the disastrous result of causing ill health, addiction, lethargy, family discord, criminal activities, and feelings of hopelessness in its
victims. Billions of dollars are spent each year in trying to curb people’s appetites and urges. But these programs often don’t address the root causes of overindulgence and thus usually return poor results, leaving people more disheartened than before. The term used to describe this backsliding and failure to make long-lasting life changes is \textit{relapse}.

Islam takes these two ailments, greed and gluttony, and considers them in a new light. The problem is not that we cannot control our desires; rather it is that we have forgotten why we are alive. We are not defective as people or naturally inclined to sin. We are merely forgetful of what life is about, and \textit{Shaytan} uses our desire for pleasure to accentuate this. So to attack this twin-headed beast, Islam prescribes a unique antidote that emphasizes personal reform along with physical action. We can strive for success and even accumulate money—but we are frequently reminded that only good deeds get us into heaven and we will die one day soon. A portion of our wealth each year must also be paid out like a tax and distributed to the poor. Islam also says that we can eat and drink and procreate as much as we legally want to—but a month-long fast from those things will be required of us every year in order to teach us that we have mastery over our desires and not vice versa.

\section*{The Burden of Wealth}

“The rich get richer, and the poor get poorer” is accepted common wisdom. Throughout human history there have always been those who had it a little better than everyone else: finer food, nicer quarters, more profitable businesses, and higher-class lifestyles. These are the stuff of everyone’s dreams. But every dream has the potential to become a nightmare and everyone has the potential to fall into misfortune. For every person who lives well, someone else has to make do with much less. Some people even live in desperate, pitiful conditions with no way out and nowhere to turn. There is no worse feeling than seeing one’s own children starving or relatives in grave sickness and knowing there is nothing you can do to save them. In such cases, the poor may appeal to the rich for help, and deliverance may come from kind-hearted benefactors. However, another outcome is equally possible: that the wealthy may turn their faces away and choose not to see. It is when the rich fail to remember their blessed position with regard to the fortunes of others that the sins of greed and miserliness come in.

One of the hallmarks of any community is the way in which it treats its weaker members. The Qur’an explains that there are always those who are stronger and wealthier, and that their test in life lies in what they will do with their accentuated capabilities. Likewise, we are taught that the poor and weak are also given their condition as a test and are judged in

\textit{It Is Written}

“Those who are saved from the greed of their own selves, they are the ones who will prosper.”

(\textit{Qur’an} 59:9)
how they manage their spiritual state. The two positions can even be reversed, with a wealthy person suddenly losing it all or a poor soul gaining everything in an instant. (Eddie Murphy and Dan Ackroyd portrayed two such characters in the movie Trading Places.) The Qur’an puts it this way: “We alternate these days of varying fortunes among mankind so that Allah may show the true believers and take witnesses to the truth from among you.” (Qur’an 3:40)

Islam commands its followers to give up a portion of their annual savings for the benefit of the poor. An Islamic government even has the task of imposing this tax on its citizens and using the collected funds for welfare and social programs for the less fortunate. The Qur’an tells Muslims to give this charity with a friendly, jovial spirit, recognizing that all prosperity ultimately comes from God’s favor and grace. No matter how much we may boast that we are self-made successes, the Qur’an reminds us, it was really God who created all the conditions that resulted in our triumphs. We pay God back by doing His work in the world. And perhaps the greatest work we do in His Name is alleviating the suffering of others. That is what the third pillar of Islam, zakat, or the Islamic duty of charity, is for.

Bah! Humbug!

“Allah has bought from the believers their lives and wealth and in exchange will give them Paradise,” states the Qur’an. For Muslims, both our lives and our money are given in pledge to God. When we declare that we believe in Him and seek to follow His will, it follows that we recognize our responsibility to our Lord. Sometimes God requires sacrifice on our part in the great plan He has for the universe. Men and women sometimes have to struggle and die for a just cause. In the same way, there are times when resources are needed to do justice.

That’s how Islam looks at wealth: as a proof of faith (or lack of it). What will you do with what you have received, especially when you are asked to give some of it up? Will greed overtake your heart and cause you to sneer at the plight of the less fortunate? How can we learn that wealth has no permanent value in the great test of life that will lead ultimately to the Day of Judgment? Islam requires its followers to give in charity to force them to learn this lesson. Those who hesitate or refuse to pay zakat provide evidence from their own actions that they are insincere and focused only on the things of this world. Imam Al Ghazali, a great Islamic scholar of the eleventh century, explained this concept in his monumental work, Ihya Uloomuddin:
Worldly goods are an object of love in everybody’s eyes, being the means by which they enjoy the benefits of this world; because of them they become attached to life and shy away from death, even though death leads to meeting the Beloved [God]. The truth of our claim to love God is therefore put to the test, and we are asked to give up wealth which is the darling apple of our eye.

The Islamic civilization has produced many beautiful works of functional art such as this vase inlaid with verses from the Qur’an.

(Photo courtesy of Aramco)

If we cling to our wealth with gnarled fingers, such as Ebeneezer Scrooge did in Charles Dickens’s *A Christmas Carol*, then we are saying that this life is all we believe in. The Qur’an promises eternal paradise to those who make sacrifices in this life, and one of the sacrifices Islam expects of us is to use our resources for the benefit of the needy and helpless. Because Muslims believe that God is the Creator and True Owner of everything, whatever is placed in our hands throughout our lives is considered to be like a trust. We can’t take it with us, and the Qur’an provides a very blunt explanation of the folly of those who look only upon the transitory materials of this world:

“Do any of you wish to have a farm with date-palms, vines and streams and all kinds of fruit, but then to be stricken with old age while your children are still small? [Do you want] your prime lands to be caught in a tornado followed by a fire and have it all burnt up? This is how Allah makes signs clear to you so you may consider.” (Qur’an 2:266)
Whatever is in your hand now, Islam reminds us, will be gone very shortly. Financial empires and hard-earned fortunes may outlive our deaths but only for a few days or years. In this regard, Islam is very similar to Taoism with its emphasis on transcending the world. There is an entire corpus of literature, backed up by innumerable Qur’anic verses and hadiths on this subject. Though Islam does not necessarily advocate living the life of a poor hermit, nor does it call wealth a sin, at the same time it challenges people to let go of some of their love of material possessions so that they can become more willing to help those who are less fortunate. When Prophet Muhammad passed away, his personal possessions consisted of only a bed sheet, a bowl, and a shield that he had pawned to a Jewish merchant.

Who Must Pay Zakat?

Zakat, as a religious duty, is due from anyone who meets the following requirements:

► The person must have a minimum amount of savings or assets that have been held for at least one year. The value of three ounces of gold is given as the usual figure above which zakat is due. Business assets, cars, farm animals, cash, and even jewelry are zakatable.

► The man or woman must be past the age of puberty and of sane mind. There is no zakat due from children or the mentally challenged.

► All yearly expenses must be paid, including any debts.

If all conditions are met, then zakat in the amount of 2.5 percent of your average annual wealth should be paid to either a government agency designed to collect it or a local mosque or charitable organization for distribution to those who deserve it. This is welfare Islamic style, and because the rate is constant, the wealthy will pay a larger share of money into the fund than the poor will. It is the perfect system for redistributing the wealth!

Ask the Imam

Can a person intentionally go into debt to avoid paying zakat? Islam teaches that a person’s actions will be judged by his or her intentions. If someone tries this kind of scheme, God knows about it and will hold that person accountable. Besides, debtors have to wait outside of Paradise until their obligations are paid by someone on Earth. Thus, debt is strongly discouraged to begin with.

It Is Written

“Whoever spends their wealth in the cause of God, and doesn’t follow their gifts with reminders of how generous they were, nor with hurtful humiliation, they shall have their reward with God and they will not be afraid nor will they be sad.” (Qur’an 2:262)
Who Gets Zakat Assistance?

*Zakat* money is to be given primarily to the poor, the needy, destitute new Muslims, people drowning in debt, needy travelers, refugee relief foundations, widows, orphans, poor relatives, and causes for freeing slaves. As a rule, *zakat* money should be spent in the local area first, where the community lives.

Islam teaches that the disbursing of *zakat* funds should never be done in a way that makes the recipients feel humiliated, for as the Qur’an says, “Kind words are better than charity that hurts.” (Qur’an 2:263) A person’s economic condition is often beyond his or her control. If we make it seem as if we’re doing this person a favor by helping, then we are losing that free spirit of communal assistance, which is the foundation of a society based on brotherhood and sisterhood and which Islam demands of us.

The Sin of Denying Your Brother

Every society has ways to punish tax frauds and cheats. In America you may receive a heavy fine or spend time in jail. In China you might even be shot! In most societies, the implications of refusing to give your fair share are that you don’t want to help those in need and that you won’t play by the rules of a collective society. Islam feels the same way and counts the nonpayment of *zakat* as a sin that will be addressed on Judgment Day. After all, the amount of *zakat* is only 2.5 percent. Trying to avoid paying it would be a sign of serious greed, and a person who would do so is on the path to Hell.

The fate that awaits people who fail to pay their *zakat* is a frightening one. The mere thought of the dreadful punishment is enough to make one’s hair stand on end. The Qur’an is very clear when it says:

“There are people who hide gold and silver to keep it and not to spend it in God’s cause. Inform them of a painful punishment. On the day when the fire of Hell will be heated with the wealth they hid, they will be burned on their forehead with a branding iron and on their sides and back. They will be told, ‘Here is the treasure that you hid for yourselves. Now taste the [worth] of what you hid!’” (Qur’an 9:34–35)

*Zakat* is a reasonable and fair obligation for the benefit of the needy. Islam says the wealthy owe this duty of service because God has given them more wealth than others. Those who try to avoid *zakat*, then, are committing a crime against the poor and are denying them their rights. “In their wealth the needy have a right,” intones the Qur’an. Islam does not accept the teachings of communism, with its denial of personal property rights. At the same time the excesses of raw, naked capitalism have the potential to drive large numbers of people into poverty. With the institution of *zakat*, Islam sets a median way between the two extremes so that the poor are given badly
needed relief while the rich are saved from the potential sin of greed, which could destroy their souls and send them on the road to eventual ruin. It’s a win-win situation for the poor, the rich, and society at large.

The Fast of Ramadan

The fourth pillar of Islam is known as Saum, or fasting. During the month of Ramadan, which is the ninth month of the Islamic lunar calendar, Muslims are required to observe a strict fast from dawn until dusk. Since a lunar month has about 30 days in it, what purpose is there in this long and arduous practice? As you will see, the benefits achieved are truly life-changing.

From the very beginning of time, people have been involved with the great struggle to master their bodies and emotions. The urge to eat is one of the most powerful motivations anyone must face. Many people fail and overeat or consume unhealthy foods. Other substances can be abused by our penchant for pleasure: Drugs, alcohol, and cigarettes can pull us down just as easily as too many tubs of our favorite ice cream. Sexual addiction is another unique problem that can drive people to commit excesses and cause harm to themselves and others. The rise in AIDS, teen pregnancy, rampant promiscuity, and prostitution has reached the level of national policy issues, and the problem seems to get worse every year.

Reform programs such as diet fads, cold turkey denial, counseling, and alcohol and drug treatment programs are often unsuccessful, leading people to relapse into their self-destructive overindulgence. Merely giving these vices up for a short period won’t solve the problem. Is there no way out of personal gluttony? The answer lies not in watching our weight with new pills or eating plans or in wearing a nicotine patch, but in the education of our soul and in curbing its desires from within.

Islam’s cure starts with defining the problem as a spiritual identity crisis. When we forget that God exists and is watching us, when we ignore our fitrah, or inner nature to seek God, when we fail to live according to God’s good laws and forget the

Just the Facts

Muslim Americans have recently petitioned the U.S. Postal Service to create a special stamp to commemorate the Muslim fast of Ramadan.

Ask the Imam

Who must fast? Every Muslim over the age of puberty who is sane and healthy enough to do it must observe Ramadan. Those who are exempt are the very young (below puberty), the permanently sick, the elderly who are too weak, and the mentally challenged. Temporary exemptions are given for women in their menses, travelers, and women in labor or after childbirth.
advice of the prophets, then we can fall prey to any self-destructive impulse. The solution, then, must begin with strengthening the soul and then bringing the body along in step.

Islam carries with it a fasting component for this reason. We can become better enlightened only when we rise above the flesh and recognize the force of our spirit, our very human will. The Qur’an explains the purpose of fasting in this way: “You who believe! Fasting is prescribed for you, as it was prescribed for those before you, so you can gain more spiritual awareness.” (Qur’an 2:183) Because the Qur’an has given fasting in Ramadan the status of a religious duty, whose neglect is sinful, the conscientious person resolves to complete the fasting period and this is where the real transformation takes place.

Welcoming Ramadan

When the new moon is sighted, signaling the beginning of the month of Ramadan, Muslims gather and say this prayer: “God is Greater, God is Greater, God is Greater. Praise be to God Who created me and you and Who decreed for you the phases [of the moon] and made you a sign for the universe.” Then a short supplication is quietly said in which we dedicate ourselves to fasting in this month.

Wake Up! It’s Time for Sahoor

Now imagine waking up, long before the first light of the sun has risen over the darkened sky, and taking a small meal, called a sahoor, in silence. When the hint of light approaches, the meal has to end and then you pray the morning prayer and read a chapter or two of the Qur’an. During the daylight hours, you must abstain from all food, liquids, inhaled substances, sexual activity, and nutritionally related medicine or any nonessential oral medicine.

In addition, all normally undesirable behaviors are forbidden, with the threat that God won’t accept your fasting if you engage in them. No fighting, cursing, arguing, lying, gossiping, or other sins are to be indulged in. Of course a Muslim must naturally avoid such sins anyway, but sometimes people fall into error if they haven’t been reminded of the importance of their actions for a while. Fasting for a month from these vices is the best corrective. If God doesn’t accept your fasting, you may not go to heaven no matter what other good deeds you did. There’s an incentive for you!
Now you are expected to carry on with your normal day. You have to go to work, take care of the kids, do the lawn work, and anything else that comes up. The difference is that by about 2:00 P.M. time seems to move painfully slow for you. You fight the urge to get that cola, and snacking is out of the question. You also become hyperaware of your behavior and want to avoid committing any sin as much as humanly possible. Doing good deeds is also occupying a prime place in your thinking because in this month your angels record each good deed as doubled or trebled or more.

When the sun finally declines completely past the horizon, the period of fasting is over. You waited the last couple of hours in your home reading the Qur’an alone or with your family and making supplications and dhikr. When the last sliver of the sun has fallen past the horizon, the Muazzin’s call brings a rush of joy to the house. You thank God for His mercy in allowing you to complete the day’s fast, and now you’re allowed to take a small snack, called an iftar, before going to pray the sunset prayer. Families usually join together for iftar. When the prayer is finished, you celebrate the end of the day with a joyous dinner at home or in the mosque, where you gratefully partake of food and gain a new appreciation for the value of eating and drinking.

Translate This

Iftar means to break your fast with a small meal. The usual iftar fare consists of dates, water, or milk.

Muslims gather in the mosque for the special late-night prayers held during Ramadan.

After the last regularly scheduled prayer of the day, you might go to the mosque and join in as the congregation prays the special Ramadan prayer known as Salah al-Tarawih. Each night the Imam will stand with the other worshippers in prayer and read one thirtieth of the Qur’an aloud until the end of the month when the reading
is complete. Then the celebration of the Festival of Fast Breaking, or Eid ul Fitr, will engulf the hearts and minds of the community with laughter, joy, and a sense of accomplishment. The holiday begins with the 'Eid Prayer and sermon on the morning after Ramadan ends and lasts two days afterward with dinner parties, family outings, fairs, carnivals, and great celebrations.

Muslims are expected to give their Islamic center a small donation called Sadaqat ul Fitr, or Charity of the Fast Breaking, before the last day of Ramadan. The donations allow the mosque to arrange meals for the poor, allowing everyone to partake in the joys of 'Eid. It is an obligation upon every household, and parents must count their children when figuring out the total to give. It is the equivalent of the cost of one meal per person times the number of people in the house.

The Month of Training

What are some of the lessons learned by participating in the Ramadan fast? You would be surprised at the variety. The month of Ramadan provides a sort of spiritual and moral “boot camp.” We know that fasting in Ramadan is a duty from God and that any sins may spoil our record of fasting, so we take great pains to be on our best behavior. This intense modification of our habits is designed to help us avoid such sins throughout the rest of the year.

The Blessed Prophet once remarked, “Whoever doesn’t give up lying and acting on lies during fasting, then God has no need of him giving up food and drink.” On another occasion he warned, “There are many people who get nothing from fasting except hunger and thirst.” Clearly, the moral dimension is as important as the physical aspects of fasting.

The lessons learned during Ramadan are many. We learn what it means to be hungry, so we feel more compassion for the poor. We understand how close we are to leaving this world at any moment and how much we depend on food and liquids. We learn to control our animal urges and passions, and we clear our minds and thoughts for serious remembrance of
God. We restrain our anger, and we train our habits toward prayer, forgiveness, self-sacrifice, and good behavior. By curtailing sex for the whole day, we force ourselves to train our bodies to obey our will and not to be licentious. There is nothing like the Muslim fast of Ramadan in any other religion for realizing personal reform and self-mastery.

The reward for a successful Ramadan is no less than the forgiveness of all our sins. Imagine wiping the slate clean with God! So, in addition to all the improvements Ramadan can make in our character and health, we get the slate erased and can start over. (All our good deeds remain; it’s only the bad deeds that disappear!) With all these benefits derived from the observance of this blessed month, is it any wonder that Ramadan is the best time of the year for every Muslim?

A surprising number of Christians also observe the Ramadan fast here in North America. They recognize the disciplining effects of the fast and use their time to come closer to God. Every year Islamic centers receive calls from non-Muslims asking how the fast is performed and where they can get a month-long chart showing the start and end times of each day’s fast. Employers and schools are also beginning to make accommodations for the needs of their Muslim workers and students.

Because the month of Ramadan falls about a week earlier every year, as the lunar calendar rotates backwards through the solar, Muslims experience differing conditions in their fast. The period of fasting is longer in the summers and shorter in the winters.

As the population of Muslims continues to grow, the awareness of Ramadan will undoubtedly have a positive influence on people of all faiths in the West. Renewing our commitment to God and undergoing a physical and spiritual training program to increase our intimacy with our faith is what Ramadan is all about.
The Least You Need to Know

➤ Greed and gluttony are considered conditions of the soul and can be cured only with a combination of spiritual advice and a program of action.

➤ Zakat, the third pillar of Islam, is a yearly charity tax on every Muslim that amounts to 2.5 percent of all the person’s annually valued assets.

➤ Ramadan is the name of the month in which Muslims fast from food and drink from first light until sunset.

➤ Fasting, the fourth pillar of Islam, teaches Muslims to control their desires and urges for worldly satisfaction and to feel empathy for the poor. The reward for successful completion is forgiveness of the individual’s sins.
Throughout the centuries people have held certain places in great esteem. Art lovers adore Paris and flock to its galleries in droves to pay homage to the artists of the past and present. Mountain climbers head for Nepal and its soaring peaks, and aspiring students dream of going to Yale, Harvard, or Oxford. People seeking more spiritual motivations travel to religious sites, some of which are the objectives of holy pilgrims on very personal quests. Catholics congregate at St. Peter’s Basilica in Rome and at sites where the Virgin Mary was reported to be seen. Jews long to visit the Western Wall in Jerusalem, and Protestants consider a trip to Bethlehem as an essential lifetime journey. Buddhists, Sikhs, and Hindus also have their holy places, which draw millions each year for worship and contemplation.

Of all the religious gatherings in the world, though, there is one that stands out for the sheer magnitude of its size and scope. This is the Islamic pilgrimage, or Hajj. It is the largest annual religious gathering in the world, with over two million people descending upon a desert oasis city once a year for a week. All the major networks from ABC to CNN now offer live Hajj coverage every year on prime-time television. What
makes this ritual increasingly noticed by the non-Muslim world, and why has it been veiled in secrecy for so long?

Mecca, the birthplace of Muhammad and home to a shrine with roots going back to the Prophet Abraham, is the center of attention for over a billion Muslims around the globe. Although every Muslim desires to make this once-in-a-lifetime journey, few non-Muslims know anything about this arduous ritual of Islam. In this chapter, I will help you discover the significance of the Hajj and what Muslims hope to achieve by going there. By religious law, no one is allowed in Mecca except followers of the Prophet Muhammad, so prepare to enter a world few outside of Islam have ever seen.

**Introducing the Hajj Ritual**

For over 14 centuries people from all over the globe have undertaken a journey for the sake of God. From every nation and every land, using every mode of transportation, Muslim men and women have set their sights on the city of Mecca (sometimes spelled Makkah) in what is today Saudi Arabia. They come to worship God, to renew their faith, to honor God’s last prophet, and to look for the meaning of life in a land where all conventional luxuries and worldly distractions are absent. This is the fifth pillar of Islam, known as the Hajj.

The Hajj, or Pilgrimage, occurs in the twelfth month of the Islamic lunar calendar. It is a journey that all sane, adult Muslims must undertake at least once in their lives if they can afford it and are physically able. It is a ritual whose roots go all the way back
to the Prophet Abraham. By choosing an austere desert region for pilgrimage, Muslims believe that God also wanted to show us that the world is really an illusion of sorts and that we are merely travelers here, so we shouldn’t get too comfortable.

**The Origin of a Holy Place**

The main feature of the city of Mecca is a curious, box-shaped building in the center of town called the *Ka'bah*, or Cube. It is a religious shrine made of bricks and covered by a heavy black cloth. Four thousand years ago, the valley of Mecca, then called *Baca*, was a dry and uninhabited place. That is, until one day when a man traveling in a small caravan brought his wife and young son there and told them that this wasteland was to be their new home.

The man’s name was Abraham, and he was instructed by God to bring his second wife, Hagar, and their son, Ishmael, to Arabia from Palestine. This may have been to protect them from any potential conflicts with Abraham’s first wife, Sarah, who wanted her child, Isaac, to be the next leader of the tribe after Abraham passed away. Besides being the second wife, Hagar had the unenviable position of having been Sarah’s servant before her status was elevated to that of a co-wife. If Abraham had to choose whom to move, guess who had to go!

Muslims believe that God instructed the Prophet Abraham to take Hagar and her son to the wilderness of Arabia and leave them there. He obeyed his Lord and left them with only limited supplies of food and water. Then he made the two-week journey back to Palestine, leaving his little family behind and trusting in God that they would be safe. Hagar and Ishmael pitched a tent and waited. Their supplies quickly ran out, however, and within a few days the mother and son were beginning to suffer the effects of dehydration and hunger. In her desperation, Hagar ran up and down two hills trying to spot any help in the distance, but there was none. Finally, she collapsed next to Ishmael in the center of the valley and prayed to God for deliverance.

The boy struck his foot on the ground, and the action caused a water-spring near the surface to gush forth. The water was cool and sweet. Hagar and Ishmael were saved! With their water supply secure, they were able to trade water with wandering
nomads for food and other needs. In time, the Prophet Abraham came back from Palestine to check up on his family in Baca and was amazed to see them the masters of a very profitable well. Ishmael, who was developing a strong sense of wisdom and justice, pleased his father greatly. There is no record in Islam that Ishmael became an archer or was raising his hand against everyone, as the Bible states, perhaps under the influence of a biased unknown author.

Now, as he rested with Hagar and their son, Abraham’s great test was about to occur. The aged patriarch saw in a dream that he was sacrificing his son on an altar. When Abraham told his son about this, the boy courageously replied, “Do as you have been commanded.” Abraham took the boy into the wilderness and tied him to a stone outcropping. Imagine the stress and anxiety felt by both. Abraham was being asked to take the life of his own beloved son, and the boy was lying there, knowing that his own father was about to kill him. But just as Abraham was about to strike with the knife, an angel came to him and told him to stop, because he had already demonstrated his willingness to give up everything he loved for God’s sake. Both father and son rejoiced and found a ram nearby to sacrifice instead.

Now, in reading this account you may have noticed that the boy who was going to be sacrificed is not Isaac but Ishmael, which is opposite from the Biblical account of this story. Islam asserts that this story took place in the Valley of Baca and that because God spared Ishmael and tested Abraham’s faith, a great shrine would be built by the pair in celebration. This would be the forerunner of the present-day Ka’bah.

The evidence to support this claim can be derived from the Bible itself, which tells of Abraham being told to sacrifice his only son. As you well know, both Ishmael and Isaac were sons of Abraham, with Ishmael being the older, so to call Isaac his only son would be incorrect. Jewish law does not discriminate between sons born to different wives, so Muslims hold that the name Ishmael was changed to Isaac by people who had modified this ancient account. (Jewish tribal records were lost for a period of years during the Babylonian captivity and were rewritten from memory by a priest named Ezra.)

The Prophet Abraham then received the revelation from God to build a shrine in the Valley of Baca, dedicated to Him alone. Abraham and his son obeyed without question and constructed a small stone structure that was to be the gathering place for all who wished to strengthen their faith in God. It was meant to be something of a center for monotheism, if you will. The Qur’an recounts part of the story thus:

It Is Written

Abraham said, “O my Lord! Make this city [of Mecca] one of peace and security and preserve my sons and I from worshipping idols. O our Lord! I have made some of my offspring dwell in a [desert] valley [in Arabia] without cultivation by Your Sacred House in order that ... they may establish regular prayer.” (Qur’an 14:35, 37)
“Remember when Abraham and Ishmael built the foundations of the House [and prayed], ‘Our Lord! Accept this from us because You are the Hearing and Knowing. Our Lord! Make us compliant people who bow to You. And of our descendants, make them compliant people, bowing to You also. Show us where to perform our rituals and turn to us because You are the One Who Accepts Repentance and is Merciful.’ ” (Qur’an 2:127–128)

As the years passed, Ishmael was blessed with prophethood, and he gave the message of surrendering to God’s will to the nomads of the desert. He continued the tradition established by his father of bringing servants of God to the shrine for pilgrimage. Eventually, people began settling in the Valley of Baca, and the name was later changed to “Mecca” (or Makkah). The Qur’an itself notes both the ancient name, Baca, and the modern one, Mecca.

The Hebrew Bible affirms the existence of this great pilgrimage rite at the Ka’bah in Mecca (Baca). King David wrote in Psalm 84:

“O Lord Almighty, my King and my God. Blessed are those who dwell in your house; they are ever praising you. Blessed are those whose strength is in you, who have set their hearts on pilgrimage. As they pass through the Valley of Baca, they make it a place of springs; the autumn rains also cover it with pools.” (Psalms 84:4–6)

After many more centuries had passed, Mecca became a vibrant town, mostly because of its reliable water source, but also because of its rising position as a stop on the international caravan route from Yemen and India through to Syria and Europe. But Abraham’s religion was not to survive there intact. Gradually, people began to develop false ideas about spirits and a plurality of gods. Finally, the shrine of Abraham was turned into a house to store idols and statues, which people worshipped instead of God. It would be many years before God would send the right prophet to clean up those false ideas and restore the Ka’bah to the worship of the one true God. That prophet, who would be a descendant of the Prophet Abraham through his son Ishmael, was named Muhammad.

Why Do Muslims Go to Mecca?

Every year, thousands of eager Muslims from every country anticipate making the Hajj. For many, it is the greatest journey they will ever make and the one goal they’ve
patiently waited for, all of their lives. But before performing this important act of service to God, Muslims must have all of their debts paid and all of their worldly affairs put in order. (You never know what will happen to you tomorrow, so it is best to prepare today.) In the past, it was more difficult to get to Mecca, but today with planes, trains, and automobiles it’s really quite easy.

The purpose of the Hajj is twofold: to honor the faith and life of the Prophet Abraham and to come together as a community to renew our commitment to God’s way of life. It is not an easy task, though, for Mecca is a hot, dry place all year round and the sun is harsh and unforgiving. In addition, some of the rituals performed during the Hajj require physical exertion. Add to this the fact that now almost two million people converge on this one small town for a week each year and you have quite a recipe for hardship and struggle.

But Hajj comes with its abundant rewards, making whatever we have to endure well worth it. The first reward is total forgiveness for all our sins. Muhammad said that a perfectly done Hajj permits us to enter into Paradise (assuming we maintain our faith for the rest of our lives). We also get the chance to follow in the footsteps of Abraham, whom Muslims revere as the Friend of God. By participating in the rituals initiated by Abraham, Muslims feel as though they are with him in spirit. Another benefit is to see the city where the Prophet Muhammad was born. Muslims love him and respect him, and to see the streets he walked on is akin to Christians visiting Jerusalem or Bethlehem and feeling the presence of Jesus. The sense of immediacy is quite satisfying. Finally, the Hajjis get the chance to meet Muslims from all over the world; every race and culture is represented, and people’s bonds of universal brotherhood are strengthened.

The Hajj had such a profound effect on Malcolm X that he renounced racism against whites, even though racism was a cardinal teaching of the Nation of Islam—a skewed organization that mixed a few scant pieces of Islam with black nationalism. One of the factors in his decision was his experience in Mecca, where he was walking with, sitting with, and living with white Muslims who taught him, through their example, that the Islamic teaching of equality was better than the Nation of Islam’s narrow view of whites as devils. When he returned to the United States, Malcolm X changed his name to Al Hajj Malik Shabbaz and quit the Nation of Islam.
Chapter 13 ➤ Gathering in Mecca

The Rituals of Hajj

There are two types of pilgrimages that Muslims can perform. The smaller pilgrimage, which can be done anytime throughout the year, is called an 'Umrah. It doesn’t count toward the once-in-a-lifetime pilgrimage, however. Rather, it is an act of piety performed to get extra merit. Many Muslim families make the decision to go for 'Umrah rather than taking a vacation at their favorite resort.

The main pilgrimage, or Hajj, must be performed during the beginning of the Islamic month called Dhul Hijjah. This is the pilgrimage called for in the Qur’an as a duty upon all believers who can afford it. Regardless of the type of pilgrimage one chooses, however, certain restrictions are placed upon those who undertake this journey for God. These restrictions serve to create uniformity in practice among untold thousands of people and also to emphasize that pilgrimage is no vacation. You’re here to worship God, so you have some rules to follow.

All male pilgrims must wear two white garments that are called the Ihram (restricted clothes). Stitching is not allowed in the cloth, nor can any straps be used to join the two pieces together. The two garments go on sort of like a toga. Women are allowed to wear whatever clothes they wish. Among the restrictions that every pilgrim must observe are the following:

- No intimate relations.
- No shaving or nail cutting.
- No colognes or scented oils can be used.
- No killing of any living things or hunting is allowed.
- No fighting, arguing, or bothering anyone.
- Bathing is allowed, but perfumed soaps are frowned upon.

Just the Facts

Planning a vacation to Mecca? Don’t call the travel agent just yet! The Prophet Muhammad ordered Mecca to be off-limits to anyone who has not accepted Islam. You have to convert first and then you can call the Hilton in Mecca.

Translate This

The Kiswah, the cover placed over the Kab’ah, is made of black cloth and has verses of the Qur’an embroidered on it with thread made of real gold. It takes a year to make this cover, and at the end of the Hajj the Kiswah is cut into pieces, which are given away as gifts. Then the newly made Kiswah is draped over the Ka’bah for the next year’s service.
On to Mecca!

The Hajj begins when a person arrives at a set point outside of Mecca. This point is equivalent to an entry station. Here the pilgrims bathe and change from their normal clothes into their Ihram garments and make the intention to do Hajj. A bus then takes the pilgrims into Mecca itself, where they will approach the giant complex within which is the Masjid al Haram. This is the huge building surrounding the holy places that is ringed with columns and minarets. In the center of the complex in an open courtyard stands, on holy ground, the Ka’bah, covered in a black cloth called the Kiswah and embroidered with verses from the Qur’an.

All along the Hajj journey, the pilgrims chant a special passage over and over to remind themselves why they are there. The passage should be repeated often with an earnest heart. It is recited as follows: Labayk! Allahumma labayk. La sharika laka labayk. Innal hamda wan ni’mata laka wal mulk. La sharika lak. This translates as: “Here I am at Your service. O God, here I am at Your service. There is no partner with You. Here I am at your service. All praise and all blessings belong to You. All dominion is Yours and You have no partner.”

The Ka’bah in Mecca.
Nothing Like Being There

Now let’s join with the pilgrims for a moment and look at the Hajj through the eyes of someone performing it. When the awe-inspiring sight of the Ka’bah presents itself before us, we join the throngs of pilgrims and walk around it in a great knot of people seven times, pointing toward it and repeating our chanting as we move. This is called the Tawaf, or Encircling. Imagine two million people all in the same place doing what we are doing! (The Hajj is the largest annual religious gathering in the world.)

Muhammad Asad, a Jewish convert to Islam, described his first impression of the Ka’bah in these words:

And there I stood before the Temple of Abraham and gazed at the marvel without thinking (for thoughts and reflections came only much later), and out of some hidden, smiling kernel within me there slowly grew an elation like a song.

Smooth marble slabs, with sunlight reflections dancing upon them, covered the ground in a wide circle around the Ka’bah, and over these marble slabs walked many people, men and women, round and round the black-draped House of God. Among them were some who wept, some who loudly called to God in prayer, and many who had no words and no tears but could only walk with lowered heads. (From The Road to Mecca)

Many people who have returned from Hajj have described their first meeting with the Holy Shrine in similar terms. When we have completed seven rounds, we make our way to the fountain that saved Hagar and Ishmael from perishing. The Well of Zam Zam, as it is called, has never failed since. We drink the water reverently and taste its heavy mineral content. Muhammad said that it is water that can improve one’s health dramatically. (Yes, they bottle it and sell it all over the world!)

From there we move to a long chamber enclosing the two hills between which Hagar, in her desperation, ran back and forth. We, too, will walk between

Ask the Imam

There is a black stone about the size of a basketball set in a frame in one corner of the Ka’bah. It is a meteorite used by Abraham as part of his original shrine. Muslims point to, or kiss, this stone while circling the Ka’bah to express their love for Abraham.

Ask the Imam

Men and women follow the exact same rituals on the Hajj. They also pray together in mixed groups, side-by-side, unlike in any other mosque. This is done for the sake of practicality: With millions of people to line up, it is impossible to form separate male and female rows.
those two hills to commemorate her frantic search—but we will walk on a giant tiled walkway. The rest of the day we will spend in prayer, study, and reflection. All during the Hajj, pilgrims are expected to ponder the meaning of their lives and what they have done in the world thus far. The harsh landscape of brown dirt and black rocks helps to clear a person’s thoughts with its absence of flashiness and comfort. (If you’ve ever been to Arizona or New Mexico, that’s what central Arabia looks like.)

The next day, we travel to an open valley called Mina where we spend the day again in the open air, praising God and taking stock of our soul. We pass the night in tents and the next morning begin perhaps the hardest part of the journey. Keep in mind that the temperature during the day is often over a hundred degrees Fahrenheit. We pilgrims will be moving to a wide open plain, a few miles outside Mecca, called the Plain of Arafah. It is literally a huge, barren wasteland that signifies what it will be like on the Day of Judgment when all people will be lined up and sweltering in the heat. We remain there the whole day until night falls and then travel to another place called Muzdalifah.

While camping there for the night in open tents with the desert wind blowing softly over our campfires, we will join with the other pilgrims in gathering together a set number of small stones that are just the right size for throwing. In the morning we stand together and praise God and then travel back to Mina where we approach a large round roofless enclosure, inside of which are several tall stone pillars. All of us gather around the low wall and throw our stones at the pillars, which represent Shaytan, who had tried to dissuade Abraham from sacrificing his son. This exercise is an affirmation that, although Shaytan is real, we can fight against him if we are determined, even as Abraham did.

After we have “stoned the Devil,” it is time to re-create the test of loyalty that God required of Abraham. God’s purpose was not to require Abraham to sacrifice his son but to make Abraham decide whether he loved God more than anything else. Even as an animal was sacrificed instead of Abraham’s son, we do the same by offering a sacrifice on a plain about a mile outside the city of Mecca. The sacrificial animals—usually goats, camels, cows, or sheep—are brought for the pilgrims to slaughter. Because there are so many pilgrims, each group of 5 to 10 people will have one animal.
While it may seem bizarre by today's standards to sacrifice animals during religious rituals, we have to look deeper into why it's being done and how. The idea behind the sacrifice is that we are willing to give up what we love for God's sake, just as Abraham was willing to do that. Islam has very strict rules about how to slaughter an animal. The knife must be sharp, and a swift cut to the jugular vein is all that is allowed. In addition, no one is permitted to slaughter an animal in the presence of another animal. The animal feels no pain, nor is it made to feel scared. This is essentially similar to Jewish kosher regulations.

Unlike the Old Testament of the Bible, which calls for sacrificial animals being burnt on altars, Islam has no such practice. The meat from the slaughtered animals is used to feed the pilgrims, and the majority is distributed to the poor. Nothing is wasted. The meat is processed at a nearby canning factory, and the cans of food are sent to the poor and to refugees all over the world. So looked at from another angle, the rite of sacrifice during the Islamic pilgrimage is another way to help those in need. Where do you think all the meat used in hamburgers and fried chicken comes from? Industry slaughterhouses kill thousands of animals each day in very painful ways and in the presence of other animals. Islam is much more humane in its practice and adds a religious dimension once a year besides.

**Crew Cut, Anyone?**

The next step of the Hajj is for men to shave off their hair, signifying their rebirth into true faith. Women don't shave their hair but merely cut a lock. At this point, we and the other pilgrims are released from some of our Hajj restrictions, and we return to Mecca for another tawaf around the Ka'bah. The next few days are spent in stoning the Shaytan again, visiting various sites around the city, praying, making supplication, and studying the Qur'an.

On the last day of the Hajj we make one final set of farewell passes around the Ka'bah and a final supplication imploring God's forgiveness, and then the Hajj is complete! The next day is the second major holiday in Islam, the Eid ul Adha, or Festival of the
Sacrifice. We commemorate together the ultimate act of obedience when the Prophet Abraham was commanded to sacrifice his beloved son. Abraham proved he was willing to give up the one thing he truly loved for God's sake. The lesson of the Hajj, then, is this: How much are you willing to give up for God?

**Continuing the Journey**

When the Hajj is completed, most pilgrims, following the advice of Muhammad, make a stop in Medina. Medina is the place where the Prophet was able to establish a functioning Islamic society. He predicted that the people of Medina would always be good-natured and religiously minded. While there, we will visit the famed Masjid an Nabawi, or Mosque of the Prophet. Today it is a large structure with a dramatic green dome centered over the spot where Muhammad is buried.

After spending a few days there taking in the historical sights, it is common for Muslim pilgrims to make a final stop in Jerusalem, the city of many of God's great prophets. David, Solomon, Jesus, and others walked its streets, and the Prophet
Muhammad even came here once on a kind of journey accompanied by an angel. The famed Masjid al Aqsa, with its spectacular gold dome, marks the spot where Muhammad stood and ascended to heaven for a tour of the next life. More about that in Chapter 21, “Muhammad in Mecca.” Although the Israeli authorities have imposed many restrictions on Muslim tourists in recent years, many pilgrims are still able to complete this third leg of what is considered a well-rounded Hajj trip.

The Hajj is a beautiful way of presenting ourselves before our Lord. This journey is perhaps the hardest thing someone will ever do in his or her life. It is also the yearly gathering whereby Muslims affirm their unity and humility before their Lord. There is no other gathering like this in the whole world. Everyone, regardless of color, race, status, education, economic level, or gender, comes together and is treated as an equal. Everyone stands shoulder to shoulder, together, and no one receives preferential treatment, whether king, president, farmer, or locksmith. Everyone who makes the Hajj carries home an experience that changes his or her life forever.

**The Least You Need to Know**

- Every Muslim who can afford it and who is physically able must make a pilgrimage to Mecca at least once in his or her life.
- Only Muslims are allowed to enter Mecca.
- The Hajj ritual consists of a series of activities each designed to teach the pilgrim a different lesson or to commemorate an event from Abraham’s life. The main idea behind the Hajj is to learn how to let go of what we love in place of God.
- The Hajj is the largest religious gathering in the world and is covered by major news networks every year.
- Muslims believe that it was Ishmael and not Isaac whom Abraham was commanded to sacrifice. Abraham and Ishmael then built a shrine in Mecca to commemorate this test. This was the forerunner to the modern Ka’bah.
- The main religious site in Mecca is the Ka’bah. It is a cube-shaped building whose foundation, Muslims believe, was originally constructed by Abraham.
Chapter 14

Uncovering the Real Story About Jihad

In This Chapter

➤ Find out why the media often associate Muslims with violence
➤ Understand the Islamic view of war and conflict
➤ Take a new look at the issue of terrorism
➤ Learn about the nature of jihad
➤ Discover the place of social activism in Islam

Perhaps no other term from the world of Islam is as misunderstood in the West as *jihad*. Its very mention conjures up images of swarthy brown terrorists in ragged turbans and robes, Kalashnikov rifles slung over their shoulders, ready to mow down anyone who isn’t a believer. It would be easy to believe that these pictures define the term *jihad*. Nightly news reports perhaps unwittingly deliver the wrong kind of message with almost daily stories of one Islamic group or another either named *Something*-Jihad or calling for a jihad against America, *the Great Satan*. Chanting crowds of flag-burning Third Worlders are often queued to seal the impression that Muslims are a bunch of unruly fanatics.

Just what is a jihad, though, and are all the images associated with it a valid comparison with actual Islamic teachings? Is there any relationship between events throughout the world and the proper application of religious values? No one would deny that we live in a world filled with injustice. Are Westerners giving a fair hearing to the
grievances of the world’s poor and downtrodden? These are the questions I will attempt to answer in this chapter. Although some of the concepts may be controversial, it must be remembered that there are many sides to any issue and whenever conflict or injustice is perceived, passions will run very high.

What Is Jihad?

The word *jihad* literally means to struggle or strive or to work for something with determination. Although English translations define it as holy war, that is not the Arabic meaning. The Arabic word for war is *harb*, and the word for fighting is *qital*. This is important to know because “making jihad” is any action done to further the cause of God. Providing missionary services in a tough place, going to a far land to study, or donating money when it’s a hardship can be a type of jihad. Even just trying to curb your desires for the life of this world is considered a type of jihad.

However, the word *jihad* is most often associated with the act of physically confronting evil and wrongdoing; hence, it can be applied to the act of fighting as well. But the goal of a physical jihad is not to have a big war, gain riches, or kill people; it is to further the cause of Allah and to create justice on Earth. Then, when the evil is removed, or the other side wants peace, Muslims are to make peace as well.

The Qur’an explains for us the reasons why fighting is sometimes a part of jihad:

“Let those fight in the Cause of God who sell the life of this world for the next life. To the one who fights in the Cause of God, whether he is killed or achieves victory, We shall soon give him a great reward. And why shouldn’t you fight in the Cause of God and of those who, being weak, are mistreated; the men, women and children whose only cry is, ‘Our Lord! Save us from this land whose people are oppressors and bring to us from You someone who will protect us and bring to us from You someone who will help.’ Those who believe fight in the Cause of God, and those who reject faith fight in the cause of evil. So fight against the friends of Shaytan.” (Qur’an 4:74–76)

Islam is not a society of vigilantes. It’s not up to anyone who feels like it to declare a jihad. Although it seems everyone and their uncle is waving this word
around, only an Islamic government or a worldwide leader of Islam has the authority to declare a jihad. Neither one exists in the Muslim world right now.

Jihad is one of the most misused words in the world today. It means to struggle in God’s way. If someone does something in a way other than what God ordained, then it is a crime that the individual will have to answer for on the Day of Judgment.

Social Activism in Islam

There are many levels of jihad. An important part of our daily life as Muslims is to strive (or “make jihad”) to improve society. Judaism has its concept of Tikun Olam or perfecting the world, and many other religions have a similar idea. The key phrase for us comes from the Qur’an, which says that Muslims must “encourage good while forbidding evil.” Thus, Muslims must be active in the social affairs of any community they live in.

Examples of activities that a Muslim must oppose are …

- The selling of alcohol, pornography, and drugs.
- Littering and pollution.
- Public disputes that turn chaotic.
- Gossip or slander in the media.
- Corruption in government.
- Pedophilia or spousal abuse.
- Cruelty to animals.

These and many other vices are mentioned in Islam as sources of discord and injustice that must be opposed. What are the ways allowed by Islam to change things? An important saying of the Prophet Muhammad with regard to stopping vice is that if you see an evil deed you should try to correct it with your hand or your tongue, or at least feel bad about it in your heart if you think you can do nothing about it.

Islam is a proactive way of life, meaning we are taught to get involved and take action in the defense and promotion of the truth. Why should Muslims try to get involved in the welfare of the society around them? Quite simply because God said, “You are the best community brought out of

Translate This

A person who engages in jihad is called a mujahid, or struggler for God.

It Is Written

“Whoever recommends and helps in a good cause becomes a partner in it. And whoever recommends and helps in an evil cause shares in its burdens and Allah has power over all things.” (Qur’an 4:85)
humanity. You encourage what is right and forbid what is wrong and you believe in Allah.” (Qur’an 3:110) That is quite a defining statement!

Muhammad once told an interesting parable to explain the importance of our participation in keeping sin out of the city. He said:

“The example of a person who follows God’s orders and limits in comparison to the one who does wrong and violates God’s limits and orders is like the example of people drawing lots for seats in a boat. Some of them got seats in the upper deck while the others went to the lower part.

Those in the lower part of the ship had to pass through the people in the upper decks to get water, and that bothered the people up there. So one of [the people from below] took an ax and started making a hole in the bottom of the boat. The people in the upper decks came and asked him, ‘What’s the matter with you?’

He answered, ‘You keep getting bothered by my [passing through your deck] and I really need to get some water.’ Now if they stop him from doing that, they will save him and themselves. But if they leave him alone, they will destroy him and themselves.”

In Arabic, the right or good way is called the maroof, and the evil or bad way is called the munkar. When we try to make our societies better and oppose evil, we make a safer and more orderly world to live in. Peace and security are the goals of civilization, and Islam gives us the definite prescription for achieving that condition and making it a reality.

What sorts of things should we try to encourage in our societies? Free medical care, aid to the poor and orphans, better schools, accountability in government, clean water and air, humane treatment of animals, and assistance for the elderly and handicapped are good things to start with. All of these have a good track record in classical Islamic civilization, where there was universal health care and free schools for all.

We will never have a perfect world. This life is not the place for perfection. But we can employ our hands, words, and feelings toward making it a better place than how we found it. This is the purpose of encouraging the right and forbidding the wrong in Islam. A person can’t feel personally pious yet ignore the decline of morals in his or her own community.

It Is Written

“You who Believe, stand up firmly for justice as witnesses before Allah and even [be a fair witness] against yourselves or your parents or your relatives also. And whether it’s [against] the rich or poor, too, because Allah can protect both sides the best. Don’t follow the lusts [of your hearts] lest you swerve and if you distort [the truth] or decline to do justice, Allah is aware of everything you do.” (Qur’an 4:135)
Muhammad once told of an angel who was sent by God to destroy an iniquitous city. The angel was about to cause a natural disaster when he noticed something strange and rushed back to God. “Why haven’t you carried out My order?” God asked. The angel reported, “I found one good man there who prays and fasts and praises You, though he keeps to himself and does nothing more.” God said, “Then start with that one (destroy him).” Social reform is our duty, and a failure to make things better is tantamount to condoning vice and sin. In the teachings of Islam, jihad against the evils of society is just as important as jihad on the battlefield.

The Myth of the Holy War

I turned on the evening news to see what was happening in the world. The first report was about a terrorist group named the Islamic Jihad Brigade, which was threatening to plant bombs on planes. The second report was about Muslim extremist groups declaring a jihad against America. The final report was about Islamic terrorism against Israel and the new wave of suicide bombers. Any reasonable person might conclude that with the demise of the Soviet Union the next great enemy of freedom-loving people everywhere is Islam. This is an unfortunate conclusion because Islam is not the enemy of the West nor of the Judeo-Christian tradition. On the contrary, Islam is a cousin to the West, and its values have more in common with modern international norms than most people realize. Why is there such a horrible misperception, then?

A Historical Misunderstanding

As is the case with many ancient prejudices and misinterpretations, history and its many twists and turns is the primary culprit for this misunderstanding about Islam. For most of the Middle Ages, Europeans painted an image of Islam that was designed to provoke fear and loathing in the minds of the populace, especially when the rulers were attempting to drum up support for the Crusades. The Saracens and the Turks were viewed as minions of the Devil. In his book The Life of Mohammed, Emile Deir Mongem writes, “When the war blazed up between Islam and Christianity ... each side
misunderstood the other one. It should be admitted, however, that the basic misunderstanding was more on the part of westerners than the easterners. ... argumentative debaters overloaded Islam with vices, degradation and abasement without taking the trouble to study it ...” (quoted in *The Spirit of Islam* by Afif Tabbarah, page 9, 1978)

The nineteenth-century orientalist, Count Henri de Castri goes even further when he comments on the practice of “mercenary poets” and paid storytellers who traveled Europe inciting hatred and misinformation against Islam. “Out of total ignorance of Islam, these songs were charged with hatred against Moslems ... and inculcated such mistaken views in the minds of Christians, even to our present day. Every singer used to consider Moslems as polytheists, disbelievers, and disobedient idolaters.” The campaign of anti-Islamic slander was so successful that to this day some textbooks in European and American schools refer to Muhammad as having epilepsy, the Qur’an as being copied from the Bible, Muslim armies as forcing conversions on people (by the sword), and Islam as being against science and learning. All of these things are quite untrue, and enlightened Western authors from Arnold Toynbee and Bertrand Russell to Yvonne Haddad and John Esposito have been dispelling these myths in book after book for decades; nevertheless, the message hasn’t reached the masses, who still believe numerous false myths concerning Islam.

When Europeans succeeded in occupying virtually the entire Muslim world during the era of Colonialism, they considered their victory over Islam complete. Rudyard Kipling’s *White Man’s Burden* of civilizing the savages was the culmination of Europe’s guiding philosophy. The occupiers closed Islamic schools and colleges all over the Muslim world, arrested and killed religious leaders, disenfranchised the population, and installed as rulers Western-educated natives who were completely dependent on their European masters. But with the end of Colonialism in the mid-1950s, European fears about the return of Islamic power have caused another round of hysteria to grip the Western world.

Virtually all Muslims now feel that the modern Western media have taken on the role of the mercenary poets of the past: presenting an overly negative view of Islam or unfairly connecting violent events with it. They feel that political or regional conflicts are seen only through the eyes of religion, and Islam is blamed for anything that happens. Even worse, sometimes people with Muslim-sounding names will be given an overwhelming amount of exposure when they talk about jihad, even when they don’t fully adhere to Islamic principles to begin with. For example, the Palestinian National Authority which now governs part of Palestine recently opened a casino in Jericho. Even though most Palestinians are Muslims, their leaders disregard clear Islamic prohibitions. On the
flip side, Islam forbids dealing in interest money, yet even such Islamic Republics as Iran, Pakistan and the Sudan routinely engage in this type of activity in their annual budgets and purchases. Clearly many people reference religion only when it suits their interests.

Take the case of Osama bin Laden, whom the CIA considers the mastermind of a network of violent terrorists. After several high-profile terrorist attacks, most notably the bombing of two U.S. embassies in Africa, Western media sources aired footage of the one-time Saudi entrepreneur issuing Islamic religious decrees to justify what he had done. Even though Muslims in general were horrified at the brutality of the attack, the false link was made that terrorism equals Islam.

**A False Alarm**

After the United States Federal Building in Oklahoma City, Oklahoma, was bombed in 1995, several mosques were burnt down, Muslim homes were vandalized, and the FBI and the news media were fingerling Muslims as the responsible party. They even made all Muslims seem as if they were somehow guilty of some great conspiracy! Then, when the nation found out that it was a white Christian man who did the bombing, did the media apologize to Muslims? Of course not!

All Muslims are asking for is to be treated in a fair manner like the adherents of other religions are. If a deranged person commits a crime, it doesn’t matter what the person’s name is, where he or she was born, or what religion the person ascribes to; a crime is a crime and is condemned by all spiritual people, Muslims included. This is an issue that Muslims feel strongly about because it affects them inside as well as outside their community.

**Islam on War**

What is the position of Islam on war and conflict? Peace on Earth is the ideal that the world of Islam works toward, and war is abhorred as the last, worst option. However, there are times when there is no alternative but to fight. Every society has its own views about a just war. What do Muslims believe is worth fighting for? According to Islamic Law, an armed struggle can be initiated only for the following reasons:

- To defend your community or nation from aggressors
- To liberate people living under oppressive regimes
- To remove any government that will not allow the free practice of Islam within its borders

The first two reasons are easy to understand. The third would be necessary if, for example, a country forbade the practice of Islam or its preaching. Obviously from the Qur’an’s perspective, such a country is attempting to stop God’s religion from being preached. Interestingly enough, Islam does not give people the right to declare a war
vigilante style. A group of disgruntled people in country X, for example, does not have the sanction to start an armed struggle, even if they have legitimate grievances. The power to declare war rests only with the properly chosen authorities in an Islamic state (elected by the majority, confirmed and accountable). The leader of the entire Muslim community is the only one who can ask Muslims to enlist in the army and fight in a just war, not someone with a big name or an inflated sense of importance.

At the same time, an individual Muslim religious figure is not authorized by Islamic Law to tell his followers to go and fight, because the main principle of Islamic governance is mutual consultation, known as Shura. Nobody can make a big decision without all of the governmental representatives discussing it first. This is sort of like the Islamic House of Representatives. Given that there is no worldwide Islamic government or forum where political issues can be discussed, rather than declaring jihad all over the world, the proper goal of activist Muslims must be the establishment of a political structure acceptable to all Muslims first. Looked at in this light, we can see that most of the Islamic groups in the world engaging in armed struggle have no more legitimacy in Islamic Law than the Crusaders had when they invaded and sacked the city of Constantinople, which was a Christian city!

Muslims are actually divided about supporting most of these armed groups for this very reason. They often support the objectives but feel queasy about the methods and the legitimacy of the participants. The worldwide Muslim community is in somewhat of an awkward position because there is currently no Islamic government functioning today. No, not even Afghanistan or Iran is considered to be adhering to Islamic Law by most of the world's Muslims. So there is no official agency to police the activities of would-be vigilantes.

What Makes a Terrorist?

The bitter Arab/Israeli conflict in the Middle East has caused four wars and countless strikes and counterstrikes by both sides. One action on the part of both sides that gets a lot of media attention is the frequent bombings of buses and other public places. Before I address the Islamic position on such actions, I will shed some light on the motivation of the people who do these things. After all, nobody gets out of bed one day and says, “I want to bomb a bus.” Keep in mind, Islam does not justify the acts of terrorism committed by people who are driven by passion more than spiritual ideals. I just want to explain what drives some people to violence.
Imagine if one day a foreign army unit comes and forces your family out of your home at gunpoint and tells you to leave forever. With just the clothes on your back, you and your parents and siblings are thrown out with nowhere to go. You wind up in a makeshift shelter on some barren hills and have to scratch for your sustenance. Your mother is crying. Your father is frail and looks hopeless, and your siblings are cold and scared, every day. Many other people in similar circumstances join you. Their homes and farms were appropriated, as well. There is no running water, no sewers, no electricity, no schools, and no doctors to help you. Imagine living in such conditions for decades and growing up in squalor. Then think of how you would feel if you were not allowed to leave your squalid camp without showing an identity card to the soldiers who surround your miserable tin-roof town. The humiliation would be overwhelming.

The only jobs you can find are working in lands that were seized from your parents years before. You labor in the fields and look at the shiny new houses built on the land that had been in your family for generations. The people who live there were born in Europe and have taken your land with no other excuse than, “God gave it to us.” You are a second-class citizen with no citizenship rights. Perhaps you join with some of your friends and decide to fight back to regain your land. The soldiers, however, are equipped with tanks and machine guns while all you have are stones or small arms. You lob rocks at the checkpoints in frustration while the soldiers gun down your friends mercilessly. If you get arrested, you’re sent to a prison where you are legally tortured and held without trial for years.

Meanwhile, your baby sister has died because of malnutrition, your uncle’s land was recently seized, your cousin’s house was bulldozed to the ground, the ramshackle schools are sealed shut, and chances for any kind of future look grim. The soldiers laugh at you, and you see on the side of supply boxes in the prison storeroom the words “Made in America.” Your anger at the soldiers and their people is so great that you begin to transfer some of it to those who are supporting them. You don’t have an army to fight the invaders; you don’t have any hope of organized resistance. Then you think about how to exact retribution, and individual acts of violence such as bombings come to mind. Thus, a terrorist is born. But in his eyes, the real terror was done against him and his people first. He is merely striking back.

From the southern Philippines to Chechnya in Russia, Muslims are taking up arms to right the wrongs that they perceive have been done to them. Given that there are no Islamic governments, it has been left largely up to people to defend themselves. They find sanction for their
choice in the words of the Qur’an: “And those who, when they are oppressed wrongly, help and defend themselves.” (Qur’an 42:39) But due to the lack of guidance in the proper conduct of war in Islam, excesses and misguided approaches are often the tools of choice for drawing attention to their cause.

**Islam and Terrorism**

What does Islam say about the kinds of actions such angry young men carry out? Try to understand that, first of all, no matter what they say, Islam is often not in the forefront of these people’s minds. They feel that they have been wronged and they are looking for revenge. If they shout, “Allah is Great,” or give their clandestine groups names that refer to Islam, it is oftentimes more of a veneer than a true orientation. Adolf Hitler and the Nazis sometimes used references to Christianity to justify hostility to the Jews. Slave owners in America repeatedly justified slavery with the excuse that they were Christianizing the blacks, and Hindu fundamentalists in India claim that their attacks on mosques are designed to bring Indian Muslims back to their true religion: Hinduism. People misuse religion quite often, and Islam is misused as much as any other faith.

**The Rules of War**

The rules for the conduct of war in Islam forbid the killing of noncombatants. The Prophet Muhammad never allowed any Muslim soldier to harm women, children, or the innocent. The trouble with bombing a bus or library is that soldiers are not the ones who are killed. Thus, the people who engage in this type of attack are going against the teachings of Islam. According to the Qur’an, “If you kill a life unjustly it is as if you killed all life.” (Qur’an 5:32) Suicide bombers are also guilty of ignoring Islamic teachings, because suicide is forbidden in Islam. The Prophet Muhammad said, “Whoever kills himself with a weapon will have that weapon in his hand, and will kill himself forever in the fire of Hell,” and yet this is exactly what these men do when they detonate bombs strapped to their bodies. Are there some religious leaders in that part of the world who condone these actions? Yes, there are, but remember that they, too, have been shaped by the same sense of injustice as the rest of the people there. Muslim scholars in other parts of the world condemn these actions as being against the letter and the spirit of the religion.
So we can say that there is no such thing as terrorism allowed in Islam. Harming innocents is forbidden in Islam, so those who engage in this type of activity cannot rightly call upon religion to justify their actions. Be that as it may, there are some misguided Muslims with legitimate grievances who seem to do everything in the world to make themselves, and Islam, look bad in their pursuit of redress. They say they are *doing jihad*; however, in reality they often break all the rules for carrying out one. Even as Christianity and Judaism have sometimes been wrongfully used to justify the actions of extremists, a small minority of Muslims is doing the same with Islam. The overwhelming majority of Muslims do not support, condone, or engage in such reprehensible acts.

### The Least You Need to Know

- Stereotypes of Islam being a violent religion began in the Middle Ages and have persisted into modern times.
- *Jihad* does not mean holy war. It means any exertion in the cause of God.
- Jihad is the term usually used to describe a war fought for God’s sake; however, even going to school can be a kind of jihad.
- Any war for conquest or glory is forbidden in Islam.
- Terrorism is forbidden in Islam, and the actions of people who engage in it and use Islamic slogans are not sanctioned by Islamic teachings.
- Islam has a strong tradition of social activism, and the Qur’an calls on Muslims to oppose vice by working for the welfare of their fellow human beings. Such a struggle is also considered a jihad.
Part 4

Islam and Other Religions

In a multireligious world there are bound to be numerous bumps on the road as each religion interacts with the other. Islam, as taught by the Prophet Muhammad in the seventh century, existed in a land where idolatry, Christianity, Judaism, Zoroastrianism, and mysticism coexisted. As a result there is a clear track record of relations among all the faiths from Islam’s earliest days. This helps Muslims understand multiculturalism and differing religious beliefs and makes us tolerant and accepting of other people’s deeply felt convictions.

While idolatry is generally frowned upon in the Qur’an, Judaism and Christianity have a special status in Islam. Muslims call the followers of each of these two great monotheistic religions “People of the Book.” This is a respectful reference to our belief that in the past God revealed His message to prophets whose later followers crafted those two religions. The Prophet Muhammad had both Jewish and Christian acquaintances and always taught Muslims to be respectful and upright toward the sincere adherents of these faiths. In this part, I will explore the relationship between Islam, Christianity, and Judaism in great detail.
Islam is a faith whose legitimacy lies in the idea that all true religion is part of a historical cycle. Islam asserts that it is nothing less than a continuation of the message given to previous prophets. All prophets taught the same core beliefs, declares the Qur’an, and thus the followers of previously revealed religions must be respected on a certain level. Furthermore, the Qur’an contains the stories of many prophets that are also mentioned in the Bible. These stories, however, are not told in the same manner, and important differences do exist.

Jews and Christians are often mentioned in the Qur’an as people who have received God’s guidance in the past. The trials, triumphs, and perceived failures of both of those communities are presented as lessons for Muslims to learn from. Given that Islam teaches that every nation received a prophet from God, a complimentary component of this ideology is that all people are equal, regardless of race or color, and are endowed with a standard foundation of human rights that must be respected. As you will see, this intertwining of prophetic history and humanistic values creates a very interesting worldview for the practitioner of Islam.
All Prophets Are Brothers

Any student of world religions soon comes upon a startling discovery: The precepts, beliefs, and practices of all the major religions have an identifiable commonality to them. Judaism teaches its practitioners to pray, as does Hinduism. Islam asks its followers not to harm animals senselessly, as does Buddhism. Christianity orders its adherents to show compassion toward the sick, and so does Zoroastrianism. When a person realizes the incredible similarities in all religions, what should he or she do about it? Would it be prudent then to say that all religions are equal? Islam would answer in the negative, but before I discuss that, let’s look at what a few modern researchers have theorized about religion and its origins.

Many thinkers have tried to assert that religion is nothing more than a man-made system for keeping social cohesion. Authorities from diverse disciplines such as Sigmund Freud, Margaret Mead, and Carl Sagan have echoed this view. Under this theory, when emerging human communities needed a way to get people to cooperate, they began calling upon nonexistent gods and spirits that could punish the recalcitrant members of the group if they didn’t comply. Other researchers have even postulated that religion was the invention of people who were frightened of the world around them and needed to feel that they had allies in a world full of supernatural phenomena. They cite the proliferation of anthropomorphic gods such as the many river gods, mountain gods, or animal gods found throughout the world.

Although these arguments are interesting and with some merit, at the same time they fail to answer certain fundamental issues that Muslims would assert are evidence for the existence of a higher power. The first issue revolves around the human mind. Recent studies into human psychology have found that people who practice some form of religion are generally more peaceful and freer from worry. They even tend to live longer! If faith increases longevity, well-being, and the general mental condition, then there must be some component in our makeup that either requires it or thrives upon it.

Second, mere mechanical processes cannot explain the existence of a universally accepted standard of right and wrong. Morality and evil are purely human concepts. One doesn’t find an emphasis on virtue in the animal kingdom. If the Darwinian survival of the fittest is the way in which life continually develops, then morality and compassion would actually hold back the strongest from acquiring ever-greater resources and the best mating opportunities. But the very fact that religion has laid a foundation for personal conduct that goes against the basic principles of natural selection is proof that there must be a unique source for our belief in the concept of

Translate This
The word for religion in Arabic is deen. It means lifestyle or way of life.
right and wrong. Muslims would say that God placed a fitrah, or natural inclination within us, as part of our innate constitution. In other words, we were born with a conscience.

The third issue concerns the main features of religion itself. Every religion on Earth has a set of very similar precepts. Whether it is a local tribal religion or a widespread tradition, the core values seem consistent, giving rise to the theory that all religion is, in fact, from a singular source. All religions teach that stealing, adultery, lying, cheating, and murder are wrong. Each also has some form of self-denial rituals to teach enlightenment, prayer methods for communicating with the higher power, and either an oral or a written tradition that is passed on through the generations. The evidence would suggest that the scattered peoples of the world had a single source for most of what they believe.

There are other issues that could be explored, but my main focus here is on the multitude of related ideas and the continuity of concepts found in world religions collectively. But there are, to be fair, many major differences among religions as well. This brings me to the question: Why are there so many religions in the world that are similar and different at the same time? What does Islam say about this phenomenon? Islam's answer is straightforward and clear: All revealed religions began with a true prophet from God. People's alterations over time have caused the introduction of varied practices and rituals that may not have any relationship to what their ancient prophet actually taught.

**Will the Real Prophet Please Stand Up**

Everything in the material world has a beginning. Likewise, every religion has a main figure who first started to teach it. Islam calls such people prophets and messengers. Whereas some would assert that these people made up their own religious beliefs and promulgated them, Islam would say that all of those founders were really just relaying a message from God.
The Qur’an puts it this way:

“O Muhammad, We have sent revelations to you just as We sent them to Noah and the Prophets who came after him; We also sent revelations to Abraham, Ishmael, Isaac, Jacob, his descendants, and to Jesus, Job, Jonah, Aaron and Solomon. We revealed the Psalms to David. Revelations were also sent to those Messengers whom We have already mentioned to you and to those whose name We have not mentioned to you, and God spoke to Moses directly. All these Messengers conveyed good news to mankind and admonished them so that, after conveying the message through the Messengers, people would have no excuse to plead against God. Indeed, God is the Mighty, the Wise.” (Qur’an 4:163–165)

So Islam accepts all true prophets from God whether He told us their name in the Qur’an or not. Muslims are asked to be tolerant of the religions of other people for this very reason. Upon learning of a different religion, our basic attitude is one of inquiry, not prejudice. Who was its prophet? Was he an authentic prophet from God or a charlatan? What does this other religion have in common with Islam?

Islam recognizes that there is a great diversity of religious expression in the world. To set up every religion as equal with its peers and then to judge them would not be fair. Are there concocted religions? Undoubtedly there are, but at the same time there are other spiritual traditions whose origins are harder to explain. What has sustained Judaism or Buddhism or any of the other major religions for thousands of years? Each religion must be judged on its own merits, not on the excesses or shortcomings of others.

When Muslims try to identify a potential prophet in a religion they have just encountered, we must first ask several questions. The first question is this: Was the religion founded between the time of Adam and Muhammad? Why focus on this range? The Qur’an calls Muhammad the seal and last Prophet to the world. If the religion was founded after the time of Muhammad, then Islam says it is a false religion. To be even more accurate, we find that Prophet Muhammad said, “There were no Prophets sent to the world between Jesus and I.” By this stricter definition, any religion, other than Islam, can be preliminarily true only if its founder lived before the removal of Jesus from the world. So the cutoff date for a religion’s validity is about 33 C.E., with Islam coming later (in 610 C.E.).

The second question is what did that founding person teach? This is where a little deeper investigation is necessary. Through the use of whatever old records are available, a survey of current practices and their consistency can be conducted. Finally, a thorough
comparison with other related religions can help to sweep away centuries of accretions, exposing a more accurate picture of what the ancient ideals were. For example, Buddhism as it is practiced in China is a synthesis of the core principles of Buddhism with folklore, ancestor worship, superstition, and popular myth. When you strip away the baggage, however, you find a religious message not all that dissimilar from Islam. Some Muslim scholars, who have undertaken such a survey, are of the opinion that Buddha might even have been a prophet of God whose teachings became altered through the centuries.

The famed Akbar, who ruled in India during the Mughal period, used to preside over regular interfaith dialogues in which Muslims, Jews, Buddhists, Christians, and Hindus took part.

Other Muslim scholars have attempted to show that Socrates, Lao-Tzu, Hammurabi, and Zoroaster were prophets of God acceptable to Islam. While these theories cannot really be proven with available data, it is interesting to get a peek into how the world of Islam tries to make sense of and integrate the founders of other religions into its own milieu. None of this influences Islamic teachings, however, which are forever enshrined in the Qur’an and in the sayings of Muhammad. This process does serve to accentuate the strain of tolerance inherent in Islamic philosophy, though. If all true religion is from God, then all prophets must be brothers. How can a Muslim discriminate against a follower of another religion?

**Introducing the Prophets in Islam**

When God banished Adam and Eve from the garden, He said that people would live in hatred and rivalry on the Earth. *Shaytan*, along with our animal desires, would factor greatly in that prophecy. According to Islam, Adam was the first prophet in the world. He has this title because he taught his descendants to love God and loathe the influences of the Devil. As generations marched by, and *Shaytan* attempted to corrupt them, God raised up new prophets to teach people the right way to live again.
In those remote times, the major sins of men and women were not that they disbelieved in God, but that they fell prey to anger and hatred and false ideas. The Qur’an says, “All People were once a single nation; later on they became divided after inventing different lifestyles.” (Qur’an 10:19)

The greatest triumph of Shaytan, however, was in eventually goading people into worshipping idols instead of God. By shifting the emphasis away from merely trying to live in harmony with each other to rejecting the guidance of God completely, Shaytan hoped to counteract the prophecy God gave to Adam and Eve that He would send prophets to guide their descendants. According to Islam, Shaytan thought if no one believed in God, no one would listen to His prophets.

How and when did he succeed in doing this? The Prophet Muhammad explained that in the generations prior to the Prophet Noah, there lived five great heroes whose deeds and reputations were known far and wide. When they died, the next generation decided to erect statues of those men to honor them. A few decades later, Shaytan implanted the idea into people’s thoughts that their fathers actually worshipped these statues and thus veneration of false gods began. This is the Islamic explanation for the origin of idolatry.

From then on, the struggle between God’s prophets and the misguided notions of people would be a conflict wrought with violence and great confusion. But God never sent any angels or supernatural creatures to Earth to show people that His power was real. The test would be compromised if God showed His hand too early. Islam teaches that all prophets were plain human beings with no magical qualities or abilities in themselves. The Qur’an explains it this way: “We didn’t send any Messengers before you except that they were people whom We inspired. They lived in human communities.” (Qur’an 12:109)

Sometimes God would grant miracles to these prophets to give the faithless people a chance to reflect. Many of the miracles mentioned as gifts to the prophets in the Bible are also mentioned in the Qur’an. Moses had a staff that turned into a snake. Jesus could heal people. Solomon, according to the Qur’an, could control the jinns and understand the languages of animals. But the usual reaction of people to these miracles was often skepticism. People generally didn't believe in what their prophets brought. On one level this attitude is understandable; after all, if a man came to you and said he was a prophet, would you believe him? Probably not.

The Qur’an even comments on people’s usual reactions to one of their own claiming prophethood:

“Do people find it incredible that We send Our inspiration to a man from among themselves? That he should warn humanity [of the danger of evil] and give good news to the believers that they are
Chapter 15 ➤ It’s All in the Prophets

It’s All in the Prophets

held in high esteem in truth before their Lord. The Truth-Hiders just say, “This [revelation he brings] is evidently clear sorcery!”” (Qur’an 10:2)

However, prophets were no ordinary men. They had logic and reasoning that could not be explained or denied if given a fair hearing. What would cause people to oppose someone like that? Love for material wealth, sin, or decadence could be definitive factors, for along with bringing a spiritual message, the Qur’an notes that the prophets also brought a message of social reform and personal accountability for one’s own behavior. People were asked to change their lives but were prone to resist.

The basic theme in Qur’anic stories is that people just won’t listen, no matter what signs are given them. They have become focused on gods of their own making and don’t want to change their lifestyles. They’re even willing to resort to violence to protect their unjust ways. The Qur’an charges that “… if you were to dig a tunnel in the earth or raise a ladder into the sky and bring them a sign [they still wouldn’t be convinced].” In another place it quotes people as doubting miracles and prophecies by saying, “It’s nothing more than magic.” For all his many miracles, even Jesus’ disciples doubted him sometimes.

Looking at the Characteristics of the Prophets

Many Western scholars have a misconception about the mission of prophets in Islam. They often write that in Islam a prophet is not allowed to fail, so the Qur’an paints a rosy picture of success for God’s messengers. This is simply not true. The Qur’an contains several references to prophets who failed to convince their people and even to prophets who were killed by their own communities. It’s not that a prophet cannot fail; rather, sometimes people are so obstinate that no amount of convincing will get them to leave their evil ways. The excuse that the Qur’an records as having the least merit but the greatest use is, “We found our parents doing it, so we will do it, too.” Then the Qur’an adds, “What! Even though they had no sense or guidance!”
The Qur’an contains many different types of prophetic stories. There are stories of prophets who convinced the poor to follow them but who were attacked by the rich. Other prophets are presented as rulers or kings who worked to guide their nation, whereas others are portrayed as men with struggles in their soul and doubts about what they were doing. It is interesting to note here that the Qur’an often uses these different themes to convince people that Muhammad is also an authentic prophet and is undergoing some of the same trials that previous prophets went through.

**Abraham and Muhammad**

Are there any qualities that would make God choose a person to be a prophet? You bet there are. In general, people who were given a revelation from God were moral individuals who sought out God with earnest hearts. The Prophet Abraham is portrayed in the Qur’an as searching for God amid an idolatrous society even from childhood. His own father was a maker of idols, so Abraham grew up seeing his dad carving faces in stone and thus understood from an early age that the idols were man-made in the worst sense.

One beautiful passage of the Qur’an has Abraham seeing the stars and praying to them as gods. When they set in the late night, he realizes that they were just heavenly bodies, so he turns to the moon next and finally to the morning sun, thinking each must have been God. When they each set in turn, he realizes that God cannot be found in natural phenomena. A heavenly body is no more a god than a carved idol. Later God revealed his message to the young man, and a prophet was born.

Muhammad also had a unique experience. His father died before he was born, and his mother passed away when he was less than six years old. He was cared for first by his grandfather and then by his uncle. Being an orphan, he was not treated with any special dignity or deference and thus grew up feeling very humble. His mother had sent him to a foster mother in the countryside as a toddler, as was the custom in those days. Here he could learn rural values, which fostered thrift and good character. Because of his time there, Muhammad had better manners than most other children in Mecca. When he was a teenager, he was given the job of tending sheep in the pastures. This gave him a lot of time to think. He developed a reputation for honesty and trustworthiness and never acquired a taste for idol worship. These qualities led him to look for God.
Chapter 15 ➤ It’s All in the Prophets

So, if the people selected by God to be His prophets were basically good and introspective before receiving their commission, how did they act after becoming God’s elect? Did they ever sin? This is where Islam parts ways with the Jewish and Christian concept of prophethood. Whereas the Bible often makes the prophets appear sinful and weak, Islam holds that all prophets were sinless. What does this mean? Were they demigods? No, they were still men open to human frailties. Sinless doesn’t mean perfect. It doesn’t mean that they didn’t make mistakes or errors in judgment on temporal matters. What it signifies is that all persons chosen to be prophets had their records cleared, their hearts purified by God, and thereafter never intentionally did any immoral action again.

Moses Learns a Lesson

Here is an example of an error that is not a sin. Moses, in his frustration with the Jews whom he had just liberated from Egypt, impudently called out that he knew more than they did, so they had better stop arguing with him. For his lack of patience, God sent him on a quest to find a man who was wiser than he was. This is the famous Qur’anic story of Moses and Khidr. Basically Moses was taught a lesson in patience as he traveled with Khidr who kept doing odd things everywhere he went. When Moses, against orders, kept questioning him, Khidr told Moses that he (Moses) had no aptitude for learning. Finally, after the third inexplicable event, when Moses could contain himself no longer, Khidr explained the meaning of everything he did; and Moses felt ashamed for not seeing the truth of the actions before. Thus human foibles can occur without sin being involved.

Prophethood Is a Men’s Club, but Revelation Is Equal

This brings us to the gender issue. In Islam, all prophets and messengers are said to be men. In this, Muslim belief is no different than Judaism. The standard reasons given for this seeming gender discrimination are that

1. Men are generally physically stronger, and oftentimes prophets were tortured, starved, or attacked or had to fight in wars.

2. Men are not burdened with certain functions that make women ritually impure at certain times. Prophets are expected to lead their followers in prayer on a daily basis, and receive revelation from angel Gabriel at a moment’s notice. Menstruation (haidh) invalidates a ritually pure state (known as taharah). Unlike Judaism, however, there is no social stigma for women who are menstruating.

But Islam has a saving grace for the status of women on this issue. Although none of the prophets were females, the Qur’an opens the door to women having received revelation from God. This is akin to the Christian belief that men and women can prophesize. The Qur’an mentions two women in particular who received direct revelation from the Creator. One was the mother of Moses, who received several
messages; and the other was Mary, the mother of Jesus, whom an angel visited with direct instructions from God. The Qur’an also mentions the names of several men who received revelations but who were not prophets, such as Khidr and an African sage named Luqman. So, taken in that light, the numbers of men and women who received revelations from God, but who were not prophets, could be in the thousands.

**Prophets on Judgment Day**

All prophets will die and be judged on Judgment Day. They don’t have to worry about going to Hell, of course, but they will still get a cursory review. Their main job on that momentous day, however, will be as a witness against their followers. People will claim all sorts of false ideas, and even ascribe them to their religion, but their prophet will reject the charges and make it clear what he really stood for.

Islam also teaches that one prophet hasn’t died yet. That is the Prophet Jesus. He was saved from being crucified by God and was taken to Paradise to live until the end-times. When he is returned to Earth to fight the anti-Christ, otherwise known as the Dajjal, he will then marry, have children, live out the rest of his natural life, and die. The Qur’an says, “Every soul shall taste of death.” The Qur’an makes no mention of any prophet being carried to Heaven on a flaming chariot, as the Old Testament of the Bible does with Elisha. To travel the highway to the next life, everyone will have to die first.

**The Books of God**

Islam accepts that written revelations given by God existed before the time of the Qur’an. As you learned in Chapter 9, “From Adam to Armageddon,” there are two types of prophets: regular prophets who received prophecies, and messengers who received codified “books” that were meant to be passed down. Tradition states that there were 313 messengers. If we use that figure, it means that there were as many revealed religious texts. These would be the holy books found throughout the world from the ancient Chinese and Greeks to the Toltecs of Mexico or ancient Jews of Palestine. Not every “book” necessarily needs to be written down, according to Islam, because oral transmission would suffice in most cases.

So, where do all these revelations come from? The Qur’an says that God keeps a special book with Him called the “Mother of the Book.” This is the source
from which all revelations are derived. When a messenger is supposed to receive a message from God, the Angel Gabriel, who is nicknamed the Spirit of Holiness in the Qur’an, takes the revelation from the “Mother of the Book” and brings it to the messenger entitled to get it. Because there were so many revelations, Gabriel must have been very busy! Of these many “Books of God,” the Qur’an mentions five by name:

➤ The Scrolls of Abraham (Suhuf)
➤ The Law of Moses (Taurah)
➤ The Psalms of David (Zabur)
➤ The Gospel of Jesus (Injeel)
➤ The Reading of Muhammad (Qur’an)

What happened to all the rest of the many revealed books? This problem is best left to literary historians to unravel. Religious texts abound throughout the world’s ancient civilizations. Some have survived; some have been heavily edited; others were lost or destroyed in the great movement of conquerors and conquered; yet others may survive buried in the recesses of a civilization’s historical literature or popular myths. The Qur’an declares, “All [Believers] believe in God, His angels, His Books and His Messengers. They say, ‘We do not discriminate against any of His Messengers.’” (Qur’an 2:285)

Thus Islam accepts all previous scriptures and prophets that were truly sent by God. (Fakes and imposters excluded, of course.) The caveat is that all other religious books have had their integrity compromised, and therefore the job of the Qur’an is to correct the mistakes of previous scriptures. “These are the verses of the Book that make things clear.” (Qur’an 12:1) Islam does not accept the Bible that was created in the fourth century as being authentic revelation. The Qur’an accuses Christians and Jews of inventing their own scriptures and mixing them with the authentic words of the prophets.

How does this relate to the Qur’an’s acceptance of the revelations of Moses, David, and Jesus? By negating much of the Bible, we are not negating the original messages of those prophets. Any Christian or Jewish scholar will readily tell you that much of the Bible was written by unknown people and that some of it is even spurious. The Bible, as a
book, didn’t even exist in Jesus’ time. The so-called Gospels in the New Testament are really biographies of Jesus written by spectators and not the Gospel of Jesus.

Muslims believe that it is precisely because the Holy Book of Jews and Christians is faulty that they have deviated from God’s universal way as enshrined in the Qur’an. Listen to this harsh indictment:

“The Jews say: ‘The Christians are not on the right track,’ and the Christians say: ‘It is the Jews who are not on the right track,’ yet both read the same books! Those who have no knowledge of their books talk like this. God will judge between them in their dispute on the Day of Judgment.” (Qur’an 2:113)

So the premise that Muslims live by is that those who follow the Bible cannot help but make errors in doctrine. The original teachings of their prophets have been lost. The Qur’an was revealed to appeal to their sense of logic and faith. All true Christians and Jews, asserts the Qur’an, will have eyes overflowing with tears when they hear God’s last revelation read to them, recognizing the truth of it: “O humanity!” the Qur’an declares, “there has come to you a direction from your Lord and a healing for the [diseases] in your hearts and for those who believe a Guidance and a Mercy.” (Qur’an 10:57)

The Least You Need to Know

➤ Islam accepts all the major biblical prophets but explains their life and mission in a different way.

➤ Prophets are sinless but can make honest mistakes.

➤ All true religions originated from God, and Muslims are taught to be tolerant of other’s beliefs because of it.

➤ Muslims do not accept the Bible as the word of God but do believe that it is based on what was once authentic revelation from God.
Jews in Islam

In This Chapter

➤ Learn about the special status both Jews and Christians occupy in Islamic thought

➤ Bring to light the influence of Judaism on pre-Islamic Arabia

➤ Find out how Jews and Muslims interacted in the early days of Islam

➤ Know what the Qur’an says about Judaism

➤ Discover the Golden Age of Judaism in the classical Islamic Empire

The Qur’an and the hadiths both make frequent mention of the Jews. They discuss in detail the beliefs and practices, as well as the merits and drawbacks, of the Jewish religion. Whereas the earliest revelations of the Qur’an concern the evils of idolatry, later revelations spend more time on interfaith issues. This change in emphasis is the result of the conditions that Islam underwent. When Muhammad began preaching in Mecca, his audience consisted mainly of Arab idolaters. After he moved to cosmopolitan Medina, 13 years later, the audience expanded to include not only idolaters, but also three well-settled Jewish tribes (and a few scattered Christians).

Although Muslim-Jewish relations endured many strains in the first few years of Muhammad’s rule in Medina, this hostility soon abated. In fact, Jews never had anything to fear from the rise of Islamic civilization. While Christians in Europe were busy persecuting Jews all throughout the last thousand years, culminating in the
Holocaust, Jews who lived in the Muslim world enjoyed tolerance, peace, and prosperity. The Qur’an mentions with reverence the major Jewish prophets and even calls the founding of ancient Israel an act of righteousness.

In recent times, however, political conditions have cast a pall over Muslim-Jewish relations that never existed before. The tension of the Arab-Israeli conflict has divided Muslims and Jews irreparably, it seems. However, recent efforts have been made to heal some of the mistrust, and tentative steps toward peace may yet restore amicable relations between the followers of the world’s two purest monotheistic religions. In this chapter, I will be exploring the place of Judaism in the Qur’an, Muhammad’s interactions with Jews in Arabia, and the long history of mutual tolerance that came to an end in 1948.

The People of the Book

The Middle East, the crossroads of the world, is the birthplace not only of Islam but also of Judaism and Christianity. Because the Qur’an was first revealed in the Middle East, it is only natural that the majority of its contents reference people and places found there. Islam, then, has certain similarities with Judaism and Christianity, arising from the fact that they share the same basic geographic and historical background. This makes all three religions cousins of sorts. Islam is even classified as a Western religion.

Given that Islam recognizes that Jews and Christians received authentic prophets and revelations in the past, the Qur’an uses a special title to separate them from mere idolaters. This term is *Ahl al Kitab*, or People of the Book. It is an allusion to the fact that Jews and Christians received Holy Books from God long before and can be counted on to have certain ideas and concepts that are similar to Islam’s.

The People of the Book have such an elevated status that, according to Islamic Law, a Muslim man is allowed to marry a practicing Jewish or Christian woman. (And he is not allowed to force her to convert or curtail her religious freedom.) In addition, meat prepared by Jews and Christians based on their religious dictates (the kosher standard) is permissible for Muslims to eat. (Think of the great boom kosher delis will experience as the Muslim population in the West continues to increase!) Thus, Islam considers Jews and Christians to be co-religionists after a fashion.

Judaism and Islam

Over the centuries much misinformation has surfaced concerning the conception of Judaism in Islam. Some of it can be traced to long-held prejudices and historical misunderstandings, and some of it is due to the fact that the current state of relations between Israel and the Muslim world leaves a lot to be desired. Sadly, in modern times, the misinterpretation of historical events and the use of Qur’anic verses out of context have allowed some Western writers to contribute to the problem. Nevertheless,
Chapter 16 ➤ Jews in Islam

except for a rocky start and the unfortunate enmity prevalent today, the history of Jewish-Muslim coexistence has been remarkably friendly.

With that said, we can take a closer look at how Islam really perceives the Jewish people. To unravel this issue we have to look at three areas:

1. The interaction between Muslims and Jews in Medina at the Prophet’s time
2. The perception of Judaism in the Qur’an
3. The relationship between Jews and Muslims throughout the succeeding centuries

When Islam began in Mecca in the year 610 C.E., the city really did not have any Jews. Muhammad was dealing with an Arab society steeped in idolatry and tribal custom. There was no police force or central authority governing the city. At best, a council of rich tribal heads dictated local policies, and these decisions were usually guided by self-interest. Public drunkenness, prostitution, infanticide, spousal abuse, the worst form of abject slavery, and robbery and banditry were the order of the day. Consequently, we find that the Qur’anic revelations were mainly directed against these and other vices.

After Muhammad and his followers migrated to Medina (which was formerly called Yathrib) to escape the persecution of the Meccans, Muslims found themselves in a city that was divided among three factions. One consisted of a group of three Jewish tribes who lived in and around the city:

- The Banu Nadir
- The Banu Qaynuqa
- The Banu Quraiza

The other two factions consisted of two Arab tribes who frequently fought wars with each other. They were known as the Aws and the Khazraj. The Jewish tribes often played one Arab tribe against another and thereby exercised a certain amount of dominance in city affairs, even though their numbers were small compared with the rest of the population. Jews also exerted a sort of moral authority over the Arabs by pointing out that monotheism was better than the idols they worshipped. This helps to explain why the Arabs of Medina were

Translate This

The Qur’an uses the term Bani Isra’il (the Children of Israel) to refer to the people who were liberated from Egypt by Moses. Anyone who lived prior to the time of enslavement by the pharaoh is not considered ethnically Jewish according to Islam.

Jahaliya, or ignorance, is how Muslims term the customs and culture in Arabia before the advent of Islam.
more amenable to Muhammad than the Arabs of Mecca were. The citizens of Medina were already primed for religious discussion. (Jewish leaders often predicted to the Arabs that a new prophet would come and destroy them and their idols and ally himself to the Jews.) This was the political and religious makeup of Medina in 622 C.E.

Muhammad had been invited to live in Medina by representatives of both Arab tribes, who were tired of the constant warfare. This united decision on the part of the more numerous Arabs had the effect of limiting the influence of the Jewish tribes in the city. When Muhammad first arrived, though, the Jewish tribes acquiesced peacefully and accepted his civil leadership. Why did they do this? The answer lies in shared religious concepts.

The Jews had learned that Muhammad was preaching against idolatry and thus felt something of a common cause with him, for Judaism was also critical of this Arab custom. In addition, the Qur’an, as it was being revealed, spoke respectfully of Jewish prophets, and this had the effect of causing many Jews to sympathize with Islam. Moses, Job, Saul, David, and Solomon all had a revered place in Islamic theology. Many Jews thought that Muhammad would actually convert to Judaism and increase Jewish power throughout central Arabia.

Many were even further impressed when Muhammad demonstrated his considerable political acumen by drafting a constitution for Medina, spelling out the rights and responsibilities of all groups resident within the municipality. This lengthy constitution included the following terms:

- Everyone must live in peace within the city.
- No side will make any alliances with an enemy of any other party in the city.
- All citizens of Medina have the right to be secure and have their economic rights respected.
- If the city is attacked, all parties will join together in its defense.

In addition, Muhammad made a separate treaty of friendship between the rapidly growing Muslim community and the three Jewish tribes. The treaty bound each side to respect the other and not to form alliances with outside parties against one another. Its acceptance by both sides demonstrated their willingness to accept the legitimacy of Muhammad’s authority in Medina.
Tension soon arose, however, after several Jewish families converted to Islam. Among them was a prominent Jewish rabbi who named himself ‘Abdullah ibn Salam. He kept his conversion a secret at first but then declared it publicly in a meeting of Jewish clan leaders. Add to the situation the fact that Muhammad was not converting to Judaism and that the Qur’an was not being particularly supportive of certain Jewish beliefs, and you can see the beginning of a rift. Some Jews began to charge that Muhammad could not be a true prophet because he was an Arab and not one of God’s chosen people. They also began quizzing him at every opportunity about arcane facts concerning the prophets of old in order to trip him up. As the months went by, the situation went from bad to worse.

The Qur’anic revelations received by Muhammad painted a picture of Judaism, as it was then practiced, that was extremely unflattering. The Qur’an accused the Jews of practicing racial discrimination and hypocrisy. It said that they were not following the teachings of Moses and that their customs had no authority from God. But the worst of it, from the Jewish point of view, was still to come. When Muhammad first arrived in Medina, the Jews had been hopeful that he would denounce Jesus as an impostor. (Judaism holds that Jesus is a false rabbi.) But instead of rejecting Jesus, the Qur’an called him the Jewish Messiah and a messenger from God who was sent to call the wayward Jews back to true faith! Such a view was totally unacceptable to the Jews, and the situation deteriorated from there.

Muhammad had been engaging in dialogues with Jewish leaders over religious issues and had succeeded in making some more conversions. However, after six months in Medina, the Jewish clan leaders began a vicious propaganda campaign against Muhammad, and a lot of slanderous talk was directed against the Muslims. Some Jews actually pretended to convert just so they could gain entry into Muslim meetings and ask confusing questions to sow doubt into the minds of recent converts. The Aws and Khazraj tribes, who had almost all converted to Islam, were soon engaged in a war of words with their Jewish neighbors. The breaking point would soon be upon the city.
The Qur’an on Judaism

Let's digress for a moment and discuss what Islam was saying about Judaism. When we look into the numerous verses of the Qur’an that comment on Jewish practices, we must remember that they were mostly directed toward the customs of the three Jewish tribes in Medina. Those tribes were not examples of the best in Judaism, being as much involved in the shady life of rough desert merchants as any idolatrous Arab tribe. We must note here that the Qur’an does praise true Jews and Christians who have sincere faith and try to lead virtuous lives. In Chapter 2, “Food for the Soul,” you read:

“Rest assured that [Muslims], Jews, Christians and Sabians—whoever believes in God and the last day and performs good deeds—will be rewarded by their Lord; they will have nothing to fear or regret.” (Qur’an 2:62)

The Qur’an even refers to synagogues as places where God’s name is mentioned:

“If God didn’t check one set of people by means of another there would surely have been pulled down monasteries, churches, synagogues and mosques in which the name of God is commemorated in abundant measure.” (Qur’an 22:40)

So it is not the concept of being Jewish that the Qur’an calls into question. It is the application of religion or the lack thereof that is being highlighted. According to the Qur’an, the shortcomings of the Jewish community include the following:

➤ Jewish Law is overly harsh without sanction from God. (Qur’an 16:118)
➤ Jews assert that Abraham and his immediate descendants were Jewish, but that is rejected in the Qur’an. The Jewish identity came much later. (Qur’an 2:140)
➤ God did not make an all-time covenant with the Jews. The conditional agreement He did make with them was broken by the Jews later on. (Qur’an 2:83)
➤ The Jews of Medina engaged in slander and misinformation in their intrigues against Islam, and they publicly taunted and were disrespectful of the Prophet Muhammad. (Qur’an 4:46)
➤ Many Jews do not keep God’s laws about the Sabbath, kosher, and other things. (Qur’an 4:47)
➤ The Jews in Muhammad’s time said they were God’s chosen and would never be harshly punished by Him for their sins. (Qur’an 2:80)
➤ Rabbis have not done a good job of influencing their people to lead moral lives. (Qur’an 5:78–81)

Translate This

Yahudi is the Arabic term for any Jewish person who is born after the fall of the ancient kingdom of Judah. Anyone before that time, all the way back to Moses, is labeled as Bani Isra’il. Thus Islam divides Jews into two main historical periods.
These are some of the many charges that the Qur’an makes against the worldwide Jewish community, and it calls on Jews to take a look at Islam and accept it as the best expression of the messages of Abraham and Moses. By accepting Islam, the Qur’an states, the Jewish people can perfect their faith and bring themselves back under the terms of the covenant between Moses and God, as called for by both Jesus and Muhammad. The Qur’an explains it this way:

“Indeed We revealed the Torah to Moses, in which there is guidance and light: By its laws, all of the Prophets, who were surrendered to God, judged those who call themselves Jews and so did the Rabbis and jurists of [Jewish] law. They were entrusted with the protection of God’s Book and they themselves were witnesses. [O Jews,] have no fear of people; fear Me, and do not sell My revelations for a petty price: those who don’t judge by the law which God has revealed, are indeed concealers of the truth.” (Qur’an 5:44)

Islam makes the connection between Judaism and Jesus in this way:

“Then in the footsteps of those Prophets, We sent Jesus, the son of Mary. He confirmed whatever remained intact from the Torah in his time, and We gave him the Gospel wherein was guidance and light, corroborating what was revealed in the Torah; a guidance and an admonition to those who fear God.” (Qur’an 5:46)

The Only Muslim-Jewish War

The Jewish tribes of Medina grew increasingly hostile to the Muslims as a result of the major doctrinal disputes and the clash of cultures. One by one each tribe engaged the Muslims in battle (even though they had signed treaties of peace). The first tribe to pick a fight with the Muslims was the Banu Qaynuqa. After declaring war on the Muslims, they were surprised to find that their neighborhoods were immediately blockaded. They surrendered under the terms that they would have to pick up their...
belongings and leave Medina forever. That tribe moved into northern Arabia and eventually settled in Palestine.

The second tribe to fight the Muslims was the Banu Nadir. They were the most active in intriguing against the Prophet and even tried to assassinate him. Again, when actual fighting broke out, the Muslims surrounded the fortresses of the Banu Nadir and forced their capitulation. The Banu Nadir were then ordered to pack up and leave as well. Most went to Palestine, but a contingent went to live in a Jewish community called Khaibar in northern Arabia.

The third tribe, the Banu Quraiza, avoided all conflict with the Muslims, and its leaders were determined to abide by the terms of their treaty with the Muslims. But the leaders of the Banu Nadir wanted revenge and thus sent ambassadors to Mecca, which was the center of idol worship. They convinced the Meccan leaders to arrange a grand coalition of dozens of Arab tribes in order to destroy the Muslims in Medina. The astonished Meccans asked the Jewish ambassador whether the Banu Nadir considered idol-worship superior to Islam and its emphasis on one God. The envoy said that the Arab’s idols were better.

A force of over 10,000 Arab warriors assembled and laid siege to Medina for about a month. Never had the Muslims been in such danger before. They feared that if the idolaters breached the great trench, hastily dug around the city by the Muslims, the Arabs would show no mercy. The worst danger, though, lay in the Muslims’ rear line. The Banu Nadir, after a lot of hard negotiating, brought the Banu Quraiza into the war and extracted promises from them to attack the Muslims from behind when they least expected it. Muslim women and children were sheltering in the buildings closest to the Banu Quraiza’s fortress, and if they were attacked then the Muslim line would crumble from within. Muhammad got wind of the intrigue, however, and skillfully used an undercover agent to cause dissension among the besiegers. He then sent a few soldiers to cover their newly exposed rear, which was now facing another enemy.

It took a fierce sandstorm to break the ranks of the Arab forces, and after they had retreated in disarray, the Muslims attacked the traitors. After a hard-fought battle, the Banu Quraiza agreed to surrender on the condition that their fate be judged by the chief of the Aws tribe, with whom they had good relations. After the Banu Quraiza’s warriors were taken into custody, the Aws chief asked the clan leaders what their punishment should be for betrayal according to the Torah. The answer was capital punishment, of course, and the warriors were then executed by the verdict of their own religion. (The women, children, and noncombatants remained unharmed.)

As can be expected, the Qur’an grew increasingly harsh in its tone as all the aforementioned events
unfolded. However, the Qur’an still maintained that all people were equal in God’s sight and that it was only in the strength of their faith that they could be judged. Muhammad kept his end of the treaty at all times, and many Jews converted to Islam of their own free will. He never forced any conversions nor did he act in an unjust manner. One of his wives, Safiya, was also a Jewish Muslim; although some people grumbled and accused her of being duplicitous, Muhammad publicly defended her honor and silenced the detractors.

The expulsion of the three organized Jewish tribes was due to their own duplicity and treachery. Western writers have recognized this reality and have not spent much time weaving a false web. There were still many Jews living in the city of Medina afterward, and religious toleration was the order of the day. The only burden Islamic law laid upon non-Muslims is what is known as the Jizyah. This is a tax that non-Muslims must pay to the government as compensation for not being drafted into the army in times of need. (All Muslim men are eligible for the draft, and non-Muslims are forbidden to join the army in an Islamic state.) Even as Muslims pay Zakah, non-Muslims must pay their fair share as well.

**Jews in the Muslim Empire**

The history of Islam from Muhammad’s time until the advent of the twentieth century is one of tolerance toward Jews and Judaism. Even as Jews were persecuted in Europe during the Middle Ages, they always enjoyed political and religious freedom in Islamic societies. The greatest example of that is found in the period known as the Golden Age in Spain. From the eighth century until the fifteenth century, Muslims ruled nearly all of Spain and a small sliver of France. During that time, Jewish citizens of the empire had rights nearly equal to their rights in America today. Jewish historians refer to the time their people lived in Muslim-ruled Spain as the Golden Age of Judaism.

Jews were also prominent in the courts of Baghdad, Cairo, Istanbul, and elsewhere, being palace physicians, finance officers, and even viziers, or government ministers. The Islamic Millet, or Sectional system, operated to the benefit of religious minorities by setting up an official board of people from every religion who ruled over their co-religionists according to their own religious laws. (Non-Muslims are exempt from following Islamic Law.)

**Just the Facts**

Maimonides (1135–1204), who is considered one of the greatest scholars of Judaism, lived and worked freely in Muslim Spain.

**Just the Facts**

Islam does not teach its followers to discriminate against Jews. When a Jewish funeral procession was passing by him in Medina, Muhammad stood up in respect for the deceased.
Important synagogues dot the major cities of the Middle East and, save for the modern Arab-Israeli conflict, relations between Jews and Muslims have been quite friendly for over a thousand years.

As you can see, Islam is not anti-Jewish. It recognizes the legitimacy of the Jewish prophets and merely points to what it considers the collective failure of the Jewish people to live up to God's revelations. In this regard, Islam is no different than Christianity, which believes exactly the same thing. Jesus is quoted in the Christian New Testament as calling Jewish religious leaders "Whited Sepulchers," "a generation of vipers," and many other strong epithets to emphasize how he felt they had warped God's true teachings for personal gain.

Islam teaches that the true message of the Jewish prophets found its fulfillment in the person of Muhammad and that he is the most like Abraham in his life and example. It is unfortunate that political strife has interrupted the dialogue between Islam and Judaism but that may change in the future if the conflict in Palestine finds a successful resolution. All of the demagoguery and inflammatory rhetoric on both sides is not due to religion, but to each side feeling that it has been wronged.

The Least You Need to Know

➤ Islam does not teach its followers to be anti-Semitic. The intractable Arab-Israeli conflict which has festered since 1948 is a political condition that is often unfairly cloaked in religious rhetoric.

➤ Islam accepts all the major Jewish prophets, including Moses, David, Solomon, and Job.

➤ Many Jewish teachings are compatible with Islam, such as monotheism, kosher standards, angels, and prophets.

➤ The Qur'an contains over a hundred verses that discuss Judaism, Jews, and issues related to the ancient Israelites.

➤ Jews lived peacefully in the Muslim world for over a thousand years and were never persecuted as they often were in Europe.
In This Chapter

➤ Learn about the historical ups and downs of Muslim-Christian relations
➤ Discover Jesus and Mary through the lens of Islam
➤ Take a look at Muhammad’s experiences with Christians
➤ Know what the Islamic position is on all the major Christian doctrines

The two largest religions in the world today are Islam and Christianity. They also happen to be historically separated by only 600 years. Given that both religions began with a charismatic leader, it is not surprising that their relations would be equally charged with emotion, fervor, and sometimes conflict. Islam accepts the founder of Christianity, Jesus Christ, as a true prophet from God, while denying that he is a god or God Himself. The Qur’an even devotes whole passages in commenting on the Christian religion. Christianity, which came before Islam, has not yet accepted the validity of Muhammad’s message and consequently Christians know little of this rival faith.

The situation is changing, however, with the growth of more-diverse multicultural societies in the West. With more Muslims than ever either moving to the West or converting from among the Western population, people here have had to take a closer look into their neighbor’s beliefs. The growth of interfaith dialogue, long the province
of Jews and Christians, has recently expanded to include Muslims as regular participants. In this chapter, I will explain the long and fractious history of relations between these two world giants and show the efforts that both traditions are making toward living together in harmony and mutual tolerance.

**Setting the Stage**

The history of Muslim-Christian relations has followed a thorny pattern of shifting political realities. Both religions, being missionary oriented, have been the big boys on the block, fighting in every arena for land, dominance, converts, and influence. Whereas Muslims and Jews got off to a rocky start but then settled into a tolerant relationship (until very recently), Muslims actually had good relations with Christians in the early days of Islam. The Qur’an even looks fondly upon them and predicts a certain amount of mutual goodwill:

“You will find that the closest to you in love are those who call themselves Christians because there are priests and monks among them who do not behave arrogantly.” (Qur’an 5:82)

It was only after the initial spirit of tolerance abated on both sides that centuries of conflict ensued (culminating with the era of Colonialism when Christian European powers completely dismantled Islamic civilization). The so-called Islamic Resurgence that is much maligned in the West today is really nothing more than the Islamic world trying to right itself after the last knockout punch it received. Islam can recover because it has a definite explanation of what happened and a sense of certainty to propel it forward again. Muslims, when their nations were being dominated by direct European rule, never felt that their religion was to blame or that Christianity was superior. Instead of blaming God for their malaise, they turned inward and began blaming themselves and their own shortcomings.

Muslims consider Islam to be a perfect way of life, no matter what political situation they are in, so the urge to tell others about their beliefs is alive and well. Indeed, to this day, the war for converts between Christianity and Islam is a daily struggle, with more people converting to Islam from Christianity than the other way around. What gives Islam a certain measure of insulation that protects its followers from accepting Christian dogma? The answer lies in the explanation of Christianity given in the Qur’an itself. Just as the Qur’an contains a full discussion of Judaism and its merits and drawbacks, it also has a complete analysis of Christianity. So while the average Christian will be completely in the dark about Islam, the Muslim is already well versed in both faiths. Talk about a home-court advantage!

**Muhammad and the Monk**

Muhammad grew up in the city of Mecca in Arabia. Only a handful of people who claimed to be Christians lived there among the thousands of Arab idolaters, and there
was no organized church or place of worship. As many writers have lamented, the Christians of Arabia were not known as paragons of virtue, nor were there any centers of Christian learning. The main centers of Christianity were far to the north in the Byzantine Roman Empire or in Egypt. Arabia was a land virtually untouched by the Gospel.

What were Muhammad’s first contacts with Christians? As I discussed before, he rejected idol-worship from an early age and grew up as a poor orphan in the care of relatives. When Muhammad was about 12 years old, however, he had his first foreign adventure. He accompanied his uncle on a business trip to Syria, an event that in those days was like a rite of passage for young men. Caravans made up of dozens of horses and camels snaked their way through northern Arabia and into Syria, heading for the great trading bazaars where everything from Chinese silk to Germanic metalwork could be had.

Along the way to Syria lived a Christian monk named Bahira. His usual habit was to watch the roads during the day, and when he saw this particular caravan coming from the Arabian road, he noticed some strange portents. Clouds seemed to be following overhead, shading the travelers. He sent a boy to invite the weary merchants to his monastery. The young Muhammad was also brought to the dinner prepared for the men, though at first he had been left to tend the camels.

Bahira was fascinated by the boy and, after interviewing him, predicted privately to the boy’s uncle, Abu Talib, that his nephew would be a prophet one day. The practical uncle dismissed the idea, and the next day the caravan went on its way. After a few days, when the trading was done, the group returned to Mecca, where Muhammad continued his normal routine of tending his uncle’s flocks of sheep in the scruffy hills around the city.

An Interesting Proposal

When Muhammad turned 25 years old, he received an offer of employment from a 40-year-old Meccan widow named Khadijah. She wanted the young man to lead her next caravan to Syria. He agreed and the trip was very successful financially. This was Muhammad’s second and final business trip to Syria. Khadijah was impressed by Muhammad and soon offered her hand in marriage to him. He accepted and for the next 15 years lived the life of a quiet family man.

But years later, as he neared his fortieth birthday, Muhammad grew restless and wanted to connect with his spiritual side. He would often retreat to a mountain cave.

According to Muhammad, “Every Prophet sent by God has been a shepherd. Moses was a shepherd, David tended animals, and before I became a Prophet, I also was a shepherd.”
to meditate. One night, while meditating in his usual spot, he was visited by the angel Gabriel, who announced to him that he was chosen to be the last prophet of God. Understandably, Muhammad was shaken, and he ran home and hid under his bed sheets. The next day his concerned wife took him to meet her old, blind cousin, Waraqah. He was a Christian and knew how to read and write. Waraqah told Muhammad that the angel who had come to him was the same one who had come to Moses. He then said that Muhammad was going to be a prophet and would be opposed by his people. A few months later Waraqah passed away.

These two people, Bahira and Waraqah, represent all of the contacts Muhammad had with Christians for the first 40 years of his life. Christian evangelists have often charged that Muhammad was instructed by gnostic scholars in the ways of religion and that he simply took it from there and made up his own faith. This simplistic view, however, is unsustainable when one considers the depth of Islam and the fact that Muhammad had only the most limited contacts with Christians.

Muhammad had no further interaction with Christians until he and his followers moved to Medina after 13 years in Mecca. A few Christians lived in Medina, and farther to the north were Christian Arab tribes. Muhammad spent a great deal of time setting up dialogues with these people and succeeded in converting several visiting delegations of Christians to Islam. Not all Christians who came converted, though, but Muhammad still showed them great respect. He even allowed a group of Christians to use the main mosque of Medina for their Sunday worship services.

During the time that Muhammad lived in Medina, there were no conflicts between the Muslims and Christians. As he did with the Jews, Muhammad made a treaty of peace with the closest Christian community. These were the Christians of Najran, a small area in central Arabia. In that treaty, both sides agreed to respect the rights and beliefs of the other. Muhammad never fought any battles with any Christian Arab tribe while he was in Medina. There would eventually be a war with the Byzantine Romans to the north, but it would be a war for defensible borders and not a fight over religion.

In the Qur'an, the term for a Christian is Nasara (lit. helper), which is loosely related to the word Nazarene. This is a reference to the childhood home of Jesus in Palestine. It also is the name for the Disciples of Jesus used in the Qur'an.

The original name of Medina was Yathrib. When Muhammad moved there, people started calling Yathrib “the City of the Prophet,” or Medinat un Nabi. It quickly became known as Medina, or city, for short.
Christianity and Jesus in the Qur’an

The Qur’an describes the state of Christianity and its doctrines as they were in the seventh century, long before the Protestant Revolution. You may be pleasantly surprised to note that beyond disagreement with a few particular Christian concepts, the Qur’an accepts and promulgates many teachings that are accepted in worldwide Christianity. What must be remembered here, as we take a survey of what Islam says about Christianity, is that Muhammad never went to a School of Divinity, he never read the Bible, and he never had access to any books or traveling evangelists. In fact, he couldn’t even read!

Just how does Islam explain Christianity and what it stands for? You will find that Christianity is given as much coverage in the Qur’an as Judaism. In fact, the first nine chapters of the Qur’an contain hundreds of verses related to these two topics. Perhaps the best place to start is with Islam’s concept of Jesus and where he came from. Jesus holds a particularly high place in Islam, and he is honored in many verses in the Qur’an. For example, we read, “And We made Jesus, the son of Mary, and his mother a sign for mankind.” (Qur’an 23:50) Let’s see how the Qur’an narrates his life.

The Islamic view of Christianity begins before the birth of Jesus. According to the Qur’an, the Jews of Roman-ruled Palestine had reduced their religion to mere rituals that had little effect on people’s moral lives. They also were following practices that had no sanction from their ancient prophets. In these difficult times, a recently widowed woman prayed to God and offered her unborn child to God’s service. She had in mind that her son would become a rabbi. God heard her prayer, but she gave birth to a girl!

Jewish law forbade female rabbis, so the mother was perplexed. The Qur’an notes her surprise and mentions that there is blessing in children of any gender. Because of her status as a widow, her male relatives were forced to draw straws to see who would have to support the orphaned girl, whom her mother named Mary, or Maryam. Zechariah drew the small straw and was charged with her upbringing. This is an amazing turn of events because, unbeknownst to Mary’s mother, Zechariah was a prophet of God.

As the girl grew older, Zechariah taught her about God, religion, faith, and Jewish law—all subjects that girls normally didn’t learn about. She grew into such an obedient and pleasant girl that her old uncle began to wish for a child of his own. But he was advanced in years and his wife was old and barren. He took a chance and prayed to God, and his prayer was answered. His wife became pregnant and gave birth to a son they named Yahiya, or John.

The Islamic name for John the Baptist is Yahiya, which means life. The significance is that God created a life in a womb that could bear none.
John and his cousin, Mary, were to have different paths. John later became a prophet (John the Baptist) and began preaching to the Jews about the coming Messiah, while Mary continued with her studies well into her late teens. Realizing that all the hustle and bustle of her family and the town was distracting her, Mary packed her bags and journeyed east into the wilderness to be alone. She set up a small tent and continued her meditations and studies. One day while she was studying and praying, the angel Gabriel came to her and announced:

“O Mary! God gives you the good news of a word from Him. You will be given a son: his name will be the Messiah, Jesus, the Son of Mary. He will be noble in this world and in the Hereafter. He will be among those who are closest to God.” (Qur’an 3:45–46)

The frightened girl gave the famous reply, “My Lord, how can I have a son when no man has touched me?” The angel answered, “So it will be. The Lord creates what He wills. He need only say, ‘Be’ and it is.” Soon Mary became pregnant, and after the baby was born she returned to her people.

When her relatives saw her returning after a year or more of self-imposed exile, and carrying a baby as well, they became enraged and started accusing her of infidelity. They called her a loose woman and crowded around her menacingly. Mary froze and couldn’t find the words to speak in her defense, so God caused the baby Jesus to speak. He told the relatives that he was a special miracle from God and would become a prophet. The people backed off and left Mary alone from then on. (There is no Joseph in the Islamic version of Jesus’ life.)

Jesus is mentioned in the Qur’an as a dutiful boy who always obeyed his mother. When he reached manhood, his mission of prophethood began. He attempted to teach his people, the Jews, about true faith in God. He taught that the corpus of Jewish law was filled with unnecessary rules, though some of it was valid. He wasn’t teaching a new religion; he was mostly trying to reform the old one. But no matter where he went, he had a hard time getting people to listen. This is when he called for disciples to follow him. He recruited a dedicated cadre of people who assisted him in his mission. The Qur’an neither mentions how many he found nor their names. The immediate effect, however, was that many new converts to Jesus’ way were gained.

**Just the Facts**

Chapter 19 of the Qur’an is entitled “Maryam,” in honor of the mother of Jesus.

**Ask the Imam**

Muslims accept the virgin birth but do not say it is a sign of divinity. Rather Islam teaches that God created Jesus with a mere command as a miracle for people to ponder.
Jesus was granted several miracles to get the people's attention. Among these were the curing of blindness, healing of lepers, revival of the dead, and knowledge of surplus goods that people tried to hide in their homes and not use in charity. But even his disciples doubted him on one occasion and asked for a miracle to be performed in front of them. They were hungry after many days of hard missionary work and asked Jesus to make a table full of food appear. Jesus complied with their wish, though he warned that anyone who disbelieved after that would be hopelessly lost. Chapter 5 of the Qur'an—Al Ma'idah, or “The Table Spread”—takes its name from this incident.

The Qur'an records that fierce opposition to Jesus came from the leaders of the Jewish community. They called him an impostor and contrived a plot against him. After they succeeded in having him arrested, they tried to get him executed. Here is where the story gets interesting: The Qur'an claims that Jesus was not killed or crucified, but that it was made to appear so to them. Certain early Christian sects also believed Jesus escaped death. Islam is uncompromising on this issue. God saved Jesus and took him to be in Paradise until the hour would come to complete his mission in the end-times.

So from the point of view of Islam, the Christian doctrine that Jesus is God is moot, because Jesus didn’t die anyway, and certainly not for the sins of humanity. Who was crucified on that fateful day? If anyone was executed, it may have been the man who betrayed Jesus. If he looked sort of like Jesus, in the confusion the Caucasian Romans may have grabbed him and killed him, thinking all Semites looked alike. In any case, Islam says the method of deception is unimportant. What matters is that people thought that Jesus died, when he didn’t.

**Original Sin and All That**

Islam gives a rebuttal to every major Christian doctrine. Many of these I have discussed before. The Qur’an recognizes that Christianity has many different sects, each with slightly different teachings, and

---

**Ask the Imam**

Muslims believe that Jesus predicted the coming of Muhammad. The New Testament of the Bible quotes Jesus as saying the Comforter will come after him and will guide people into all truth. The Qur’an calls itself the completion of all religion. Jesus could not have been referring to the Holy Spirit because according to the Bible, the Spirit was already at work in the world. A thorough reading of John 16:7–14 provides strong indications that a man is being referenced, not the Holy Spirit.

**It Is Written**

“O Jesus! I will take you and raise you to Myself and clear you [of the falsehoods] of those who blaspheme. I will make those who follow you superior to those who reject faith until the Day of Resurrection, then you will all return to Me and I will judge between you in the matters wherein you differ.” (Qur’an 3:55)
thus addresses many issues without regard to the uniqueness of each Christian
group—“The [Christians] have divided their religion into sects between them.”
(Qur’an 21:93) Here is a summarized version of what Islam says about each cardinal
teaching of Christianity:

➤ **Original sin**  Islam says Adam and Eve were forgiven by God after eating from
the tree and passed on no taint of sin to their descendants.

➤ **Atonement**  God doesn’t need to sacrifice Himself to atone for the sins of
mankind because He can forgive anything He wants, anytime He wants to.

➤ **Trinity**  Islam says that God is not divided into parts. The Nicene Creed is un-
acceptable to Muslims.

➤ **Marriage prohibition**  The Catholic Church forbids priests to marry, but the
Qur’an calls this an invented practice.

➤ **Monasteries and convents**  The Qur’an says God never authorized this
lifestyle.

➤ **Confession**  Islam requires people to ask God for forgiveness directly. No man
can act as a mediary or facilitator.

➤ **The Holy Spirit**  Islam says that there is no Holy Spirit other than the angel
Gabriel who has that nickname. Speaking in tongues is not known or accepted
in Islam.

➤ **A Begotten Son**  The concept of God having
children or being born on Earth is completely
rejected in Islam.

➤ **Salvation and redemption**  Islam says our
sincere faith and virtuous actions get us into
heaven, not just a one-time conversion mo-
ment.

➤ **Mary as Mother of God**  The Qur’an addresses
this issue by pointing out that expanding the
trinity to a quartet is as foolish as the three-in-
one god idea to begin with.

➤ **The Bible**  Muslims hold that it does not con-
tain the authentic writings of the prophets and
that it is full of errors and contradictions.

Will there be Christians and Jews in Paradise?
According to Islam the answer is yes. The Qur’an
states that any follower of those religions who
“believes in God and the Last Day and does what is
right will have nothing to fear or regret.” Does this mean that Islam accepts Christianity and Judaism as valid paths to salvation? Yes and no.

The Islamic principle is that you will be judged by what you knew. If a person only knew about Christianity or Judaism or whatever and never heard of Islam, then God will take that into account on Judgment Day and judge the person fairly by it. If a person finds out about Islam, then it becomes incumbent upon him or her to accept it and leave behind the former religion. This is because Islam is considered to be God’s last and, therefore, most complete message to the world.

**Interfaith Dialogue**

The Qur’an is very enthusiastic about interfaith dialogue. Muhammad himself often engaged in this practice with Jews, Christians, and idolaters. The Qur’an even encourages Muslims to invite people to such meetings by saying, “Come! Let us gather together our sons and your sons, our women and your women, ourselves and yourselves: then let us earnestly pray and invoke the displeasure of God on those who are deceitful!” (Qur’an 3:61)

The history of interfaith contacts has often been intimately tied to the political circumstances of the day. For most of Muslim history the dialogue was between parties of equal strength, that is until 1918 (the end of the First World War). Prior to that year there still remained a unified Muslim Empire consisting of an appreciable amount of territory. With the dismantling of the Ottoman Empire, however, interfaith dialogue has taken on the tone of conquered and conquerors. The five nations that have done the most harm to the Muslim world—Britain, France, Italy, the Netherlands, and Russia—suppressed the teaching and practice of Islam and went to great lengths to set up missionary schools and other forms of institutional Christianity in the lands they controlled.

Muslim civilization, on the contrary, from its earliest years has always encouraged the equal participation of non-Muslims in religious debate and inquiry and has never attempted to suppress the religious rights of others. Although one can always find aberrations, Muslims have respected freedom of conscience in others. Succeeding Islamic Empires have even paid for the construction and upkeep of churches and synagogues, considering the maintenance of religion for all citizens in an Islamic state to be a duty of the government!

With this diversity of religion in the classical Muslim world, one finds that a great amount of dialoguing went on. Upon closer scrutiny we find that the great Muslim caliph, Harun ar Rashid, for example, who ruled in Baghdad in the late eighth

---

**Ask the Imam**

Muslims do not accept Saint Paul as an authentic interpreter of the teachings of Jesus. He is never mentioned in any Islamic source.
Part 4 ➤ Islam and Other Religions

> century, kept a staff of scholars representing Muslims, Jews, Christians, Hindus, and Buddhists who routinely held regular debate sessions on each other's religions. He even sent a delegation to Charlemagne (along with an elephant as a gift) and opened the lines of communication between Europe and the Middle East.

The Crusades also presented ample opportunities for dialogue. Although the initial onslaught of the European invasion of Palestine was violent and merciless, as the Crusaders settled on their conquered fiefs all along the Mediterranean, daily life and trade brought them into contact with Muslim ideas and values. The whole concept of chivalry, for example, was adopted by European knights from Muslim warriors. Prior to this time few rules existed in Europe about fair play and gentlemanly conduct in battle. King Richard the Lion-Heart once met in a truce with Saladin, the great Muslim hero, and, over a game of chess, they talked about issues between their religions.

The Activist Popes

Perhaps no one has been more instrumental in reviving interfaith dialogue in modern times than Popes Paul VI and John Paul II. It was the defining statements enshrined in the Second Vatican Council of 1962–1965 that opened the door for Christians to have open fellowship with Muslims. This council declared that Christians should accept and respect Muslims as followers of God and of the example of Abraham. The major document of church policy, the *Lumen Gentium*, had this to say:

> “The Plan of salvation also includes those who acknowledge the Creator, among whom are, in the first place, the Muslims. These profess to hold the faith of Abraham, and together with us they adore the one, merciful God, judge of humankind on the Last Day.” (*Lumen Gentium*, 16)

Following these and other extremely conciliatory statements, Pope Paul VI embarked on a short tour of the Muslim world and engaged Islamic scholars in ecumenical dialogue in places as diverse as Jordan and Uganda. But it was the efforts of Pope John Paul II that opened the doors to full-blown regular dialogue. Not only has he been an extremely prolific traveler among Muslims, but he has also apologized to Muslims for the conduct of Christians during the Crusades. He made history as the first pontiff to visit a mosque in Syria and has allowed the construction of a small mosque in Vatican City. His vision has given rise to a spirit of Muslim-Christian toleration that has not been seen for over a thousand years.
Protestant sects have also gotten into the act. Most notably the Presbyterians and Lutherans have begun to include Muslims in their national interfaith conferences. A decade ago the organization known as the National Council of Christians and Jews took steps to draw Muslim representatives into their regular meetings in several cities around the United States. As a participant in several of these sessions, I can attest to the great spirit of ecumenicity and fellowship that exists there.

This vast progress in multifaith tolerance and understanding is hampered only by the efforts of several fundamentalist Christian groups who still hold medieval attitudes toward Muslims. They equate Muhammad with the anti-Christ or attempt to spread misinformation about Islam to slander its teachings. Many Christian bookstores are filled with books written by people whose only object is to denigrate and insult Islam. Several Muslim Saint Francis of Assisi traveled to Egypt and met with the Muslim ruler Al-Malik Al-Kamil in 1219. They had an amicable dialogue.

Just the Facts

Great Christian theologians such as Thomas Aquinas and Albert the Great were heavily influenced by the writings of three Muslim philosophers: Al-Farabi, Ibn Sina (Avicenna), and Ibn Rushd (Averroes).
organizations have been set up to promote authentic Islamic teachings to counter this slanderous movement and thus far have succeeded in a limited but important fashion.

The history of Muslim-Christian-Jewish dialogue is a rich tapestry with many colorful threads of thought. In the coming years such activities should become more public, and greater tolerance among the people of all three religions in the West can only benefit our societies. As the Second Vatican Council wrote:

“Over the centuries, many quarrels and dissensions have arisen between Christians and Muslims. The Sacred Council now pleads with all to forget the past, and urges that a sincere effort be made to achieve mutual understanding: for the benefit of all, let them together preserve and promote peace, liberty, social justice and moral values.” (Nostra Aetate, 3)

Build More Churches!

An Islamic government is charged with supporting all religions equally. It is a twist on the American ideal of separation of church and state, which forbids government from having any role in religion. In contrast, Islam says the state must support all religions! The Islamic government is forbidden to seize the churches, synagogues, or temples of any group, nor can the government meddle in the appointment of religious leaders by each group. The treaty Muhammad made with a local Christian community is very clear: No bishop can be removed from his office and no church can be confiscated.

From the time of Muhammad through to the last Muslim Empire of the Ottomans, Muslim rulers have been particularly concerned with the welfare of their non-Muslim subjects and their religious needs. For example, in the year 1076, the Muslim ruler of Bejaya, in present-day Algeria, wrote to Pope Gregory VII of the desire of the Christians in his land for a certain priest to be promoted to bishop. The pope was so overjoyed at this expression of religious respect that he wrote a beautiful letter in response, which concluded with the words: “We pray with heart and mouth that, after a long sojourn in this life, the same God may guide you to the bosom of happiness of the holy patriarch Abraham.”

Many Americans in particular would be surprised to find out that a large portion of the current American constitution is compatible with the Islamic political vision. Concepts such as elected officials, congress, a
judiciary, civil and criminal laws, equal political rights for women, and the rights and duties of citizens find their echoes in real-life applications in the history of Muslim civilization. Has Muslim history had its share of despots and kings? Sure it has, but so has the Christian world. What is to be judged are the principles and not how faithfully they are applied.

The Least You Need to Know

- Islam accepts the virgin birth of Jesus and his role as Messiah to the Jews. The Qur’an, however, denies that he is God or the Son of God, rather considering him to be a prophet.

- Muslims do not believe that Jesus was crucified nor that the Romans killed him in Jerusalem. Muslims hold that God answered Jesus’ prayer and removed him from the physical world to await the end-times and a triumphant return to Earth.

- Christianity and Islam have had many centuries of interfaith dialogue interspersed with wars and periods of mutual fear and mistrust.

- European Christians completely occupied the Muslim world during the era of Colonialism and targeted Islam for suppression. The Islamic resurgence today is merely an attempt by Muslims all over the world to regain their religion.

- The secular governments of most Muslim countries oppose the meaningful practice of Islam by their populace.
Part 5

Regulating Life Within the Laws of Islam

Muslims consider Islam to be a complete way of life. It touches upon every aspect of our personal, familial, and social lives. The foundation of Islamic guidance comes from two main sources: the Qur'an and the sayings of Muhammad. How did both of these come into existence, and how do Muslims use them to guide their lives? In this part, I will explore both sources in detail so you can understand why Muslims do what they do.
Every religious tradition has, as its foundation, a body of knowledge from which each successive generation can draw the fundamentals of their faith. Christians have their Bible and the works of countless theologians stretching over a thousand years. Judaism, Hinduism, and Buddhism have similarly ancient sources combining both scripture and a process of doctrinal development by their luminaries. Islam, on the other hand, is derived from only two main sources, both of which passed through one man and were completed in less than 25 years.

The Qur’an, which is considered to be the literal Word of God, forms the basis of Islamic teachings. The hadiths, or sayings of the Prophet, are considered a commentary on how to apply the Qur’an to daily life. The companions of the Prophet, those people who knew him and learned directly from him, are taken as a further source for elucidation and interpretation. Finally, throughout the centuries many great scholars have applied themselves to codifying, investigating, simplifying, and explaining the
details of Islam for the common person. They did not introduce any new precepts or practices *per se*, however, because Islam has a strong tradition against making new additions. Thus, Islam holds a unique place among the religions of the world in that it is the only faith whose doctrines were not created centuries after the death of its founder.

**A Closer Look at the Qur’an**

*Iqra*. This command, meaning “Read,” was the first word revealed of the Qur’an to Muhammad in the year 610 C.E. He was sitting in a mountain cave, just outside the city of Mecca, thinking about the meaning of things, when a brilliant flash of light overcame him. A hidden voice commanded him to *read*. Its tone was both frightening and compelling. But Muhammad was an illiterate. He never learned how to read, so he meekly answered, “I can’t read.”

Suddenly, he felt himself being squeezed so that the very breath seemed to rush out of him. When he could bear it no longer, the commanding voice repeated once more, “*Read.*” Confused about what to do, Muhammad protested, “But I can’t read!” The same crushing feeling overwhelmed him, and he could hardly stand it when the pressure was released and the voice ordered a third time, “*Read.*” Muhammad, not wanting another bout with the pain, answered, “What should I read?”

The voice began to recite melodious-sounding words: “Read in the Name of your Lord Who created humans from a clinging [zygote]. Read for your Lord is the Most Generous. He taught people by the pen what they didn’t know before.” (Qur’an 96:1–5) Muhammad ran home scared and begged his wife, Khadijah, to comfort him. But the revelation was no apparition or evil omen, as he had thought. Khadijah told him that God would never let harm come to him on account of his honesty and generosity. She didn’t know how right she was.

For the next 23 years he would receive revelations from God, carried by the archangel Gabriel. These revelations constitute the Qur’an, a name that literally means the Reading or the Recital. The Qur’an was given orally to Muhammad, and he would ask people to write down the verses as he dictated them. The Qur’an was, therefore, not revealed all at once. In fact, it grew larger over time until the last month of Muhammad’s life when it took its final form of 114 chapters called *surahs*, each *surah* of varying length. The *surahs* comprise over 6,600 verses called *ayahs* that cover a wide variety of subjects. Sometimes whole *surahs* were revealed together; other times groups of *ayahs* would come, and Muhammad would tell people in which *surah* to include them. (Muslims believe that he made the arrangement of all chapters and verses under the direction of the archangel Gabriel.)
The revelations usually concerned issues at hand. When Muhammad was in Mecca, where his new followers were struggling to develop a strong foundation for their faith, the content revolved around monotheism, virtuous living, and the eventual triumph of Islam, even though it was a persecuted religion. Later in Medina, when Islam had become settled into the life of the city, laws and social dictates were the core of the message. Sometimes non-Muslims would challenge Muhammad to talk about arcane subjects that they knew he wouldn’t know anything about, and suddenly a revelation would come explaining the matter. For example, a group of people in Medina asked him about Joseph and his adventures in Egypt, trying to stump him. An entire chapter of over a hundred verses (called Surah Yusuf) was revealed right there in answer.

Muhammad described four ways in which he received revelations from God. The first was through dreams at night, when the verses of the Qur’an were implanted in his mind. The second was through instantaneous revelations in his heart during the day. The third way, which he said was the hardest to bear, was foreshadowed by a loud ringing sound in his ears and then the verses would flow. The last way involved the archangel Gabriel appearing as a man, sometimes visible to other people and sometimes not, who would then instruct Muhammad in what to say. God never appeared to Muhammad, for Islam says that God is too exalted to show Himself all the time.

**Style and Content**

One of the many features of the Qur’an that Muslims consider miraculous is its style. Muhammad was not known to be a man of poetry before the Qur’an began to flow from his lips. He also never participated in the oral poetry contests that were a mainstay of life throughout Arabia. Yet this same man suddenly began to recite what is still considered today to be the greatest book in the Arabic language. The use of lucidly phrased metaphors, the flow of the text, and the engaging syntax are held up as the highest standard for Arabic lexicographers, and no other book is so highly esteemed from a grammarian’s standpoint.

How is the Qur’an’s unique style expressed? To answer this question, we need to look at two areas:
presentation and content. The Qur'an employs a variety of literary mechanisms, from straight line-by-line or metered rhyming to flowing prose and passionate essays. Through a skilled mixture of the different techniques, the listener is taken on a rapturous ride through feelings, thoughts, emotions, and dreams. The opening verses of Chapter 36 of the Qur'an provide an example. In this surah, entitled *Ya Seen*, we read the opening verses in transliteration. The underlined words show the repetition of sounds:


---

A standard English translation showing the Arabic text, commentary, and meaning.
If you noticed the transition from one rhyme to another, you can see how the Qur'an can continually engage the ear of its listeners with something fresh and new. For this reason, Muslims never consider a translation of the Qur'an as equal to the Arabic text. The Qur'an itself makes a note of this unique style and its purpose when it declares that it is a book that is easy to remember. In longer passages you will find quite a lot of transition in style over the course of many different topics. (Although some Western scholars have criticized this literary technique, it is in fact one of the strengths of the Qur'an, distinguishing it from all other Holy Books.) When the Qur'an is recited out loud by a skilled reader, its beauty can move listeners to tears. (Qur'an reciting contests are held every year all over the Muslim world with the most important ones being in Malaysia and Saudi Arabia.)

The second miraculous aspect of the Qur'an concerns its content. The Qur'an covers a variety of subjects, including religious doctrine, law, social values, morality, history, prophets and their struggles, philosophy, and science. Without containing a single unified narrative on any of those subjects, the Qur'an skillfully weaves components of each into self-contained chapters that reference one and then the other to provide coherent essays appealing to a variety of listeners.

Muhammad never went to school. During his life, he never read a book, nor was he ever tutored or engaged in learning of any kind. Then suddenly, when he turned 40 years old, the epitome of eloquence flows from his tongue? This is quite inexplicable. Only a century ago, Western scholars of Islam were claiming that Muhammad had epilepsy (which is not true) and that the Qur'an came during seizures. Do epileptics conjure rapturous poems and essays in such states? Other Westerners have charged that Muhammad made up the Qur'an, though they can't explain how. But as Dr. Maurice Bucaille observed, in refuting those who have suggested that Muhammad wrote the Qur'an himself, “How could a man, from being illiterate, become the most important author, in terms of literary merits, in the whole of Arabic literature?” Muslims would say that it is no less than direct revelation from God.

Just the Facts
One of the most adept poets of the Arabs, Tufayl ibn Amr Ad-Dawsi, wanted to investigate what he had heard about Muhammad and the Qur'an, so he went to Mecca and asked Muhammad to recite some of it to him. After listening to it he exclaimed, “I swear by God, I have never heard such beautiful words before.”

Ask the Imam
Before touching the Qur'an, a Muslim must make sure that he or she is in a ritually pure state. This is accomplished by washing the hands, face, and feet with water. There is no prohibition against women reading and handling the Holy Book as there is in some other religions.
Meccan and Medinan Revelations

The verses of the Qur'an are divided into two main categories based on the period of the Prophet's mission in which they were revealed. The first 13 years of prophethood were spent in Mecca, a hostile environment for the Muslims in which the reigning idolaters made life miserable for the new religion and its followers. The second period began with the Hijrah, or migration to Medina, when Islam became the dominant force in city politics and thus was no longer directly under fire.

Meccan revelations, as they are called, center on two main themes: confronting backward Arab tribal customs and pointing out the foolishness of idolatry. Some of the customs that the Qur'an spoke out against are as follows:

- Burying unwanted baby girls alive (infanticide)
- Believing in superstition and practicing witchcraft
- Men inheriting their widowed mothers as wives of their own
- Blindly following tradition for its own sake

The campaign against idolatry was especially urgent because the Qur'anic revelations were making it increasingly clear that the shrine of Abraham, the Ka'bah, was no place to store 360 tribal idols. Mecca was so decadent that idolaters often circled the Ka'bah naked, paying homage to their idols. The Qur'an mentioned specifically three gods that the Arabs worshipped and called such practices idiocy. Instead of praying to lesser gods for daily benefits and luck, Islam asserted, why not pray to the only true God, Allah?

Understandably, the Meccans didn't take kindly to Muhammad's preaching and teaching, and they began to harass the Muslims daily. Muhammad was often punched and shoved in the streets. Once he was almost strangled to death by an irate Meccan near the Ka'bah. Other Muslims were brutally tortured, and a few were murdered. (The first martyr of Islam was a woman who refused to go back to idol worship.) Consequently, Meccan revelations also contain the stories of past prophets who suffered hardships; this was a way to show Muhammad and his followers that others also endured rough times, but God's help eventually saved them.

Medinan revelations, or those delivered to Muhammad after he and his followers escaped Mecca, were concerned with how to build an Islamic society. The values and manners of Islam and the particulars of Islamic Law grew in importance and application. Verses regulating inheritance, marriage and divorce, the conduct of statecraft, civil laws, and criminal punishments made an appearance. An extensive collection
of verses on relations with Jews and Christians was given as well. It was also during this period that alcoholic beverages were made illegal. But by this time Muslims were so staunch in their faith that they had no problem in smashing their wine vessels in the streets. This is one *Prohibition* that didn’t fail.

### The Compilation

The Qur’an was an oral message given to Muhammad through the archangel Gabriel. Muhammad himself couldn’t write, so he asked his literate followers to be his secretaries. Even in the earliest days of Mecca, the Qur’an was being recorded. Paper was unknown in Arabia at that time, so the materials used consisted of Egyptian parchment, leather scrolls, and the shoulder blades of camels (which were sort of like large slates). During the Medinan period, the entire collection of written *surahs* was kept in a large leather bag in the possession of the Prophet. At one time the Prophet had over 20 secretaries writing down his words.

There was no need to put everything together in book form because the tradition established by the Prophet was for people to memorize as much of the Qur’an by heart as possible. By the time of the Prophet’s death, hundreds of people had memorized the entire book in its properly arranged order. Nearly everyone else knew at least significant portions by heart. And with the Prophet’s emphasis on literacy, more people than ever before were learning how to read and write, so written pages of Qur’anic verse began to circulate far and wide.

During the rule of the first Muslim caliph, Abu Bakr, a rebellion arose in southern Arabia, and during one battle over 70 of the most prominent memorizers were killed. Umar ibn al Khattab, one of the top companions of Muhammad, prevailed upon Abu Bakr to prepare the Qur’an in a single book form so that its proper order and reading would never be lost. This was done under the meticulous supervision of the Prophet’s chief secretary, Zayd bin Thabit, who was able to utilize newly introduced paper products from China.

Later on, during the rule of the third Muslim caliph, Usman ibn Affan, non-Arab converts began arguing about the proper way to pronounce the verses of the Qur’an. They even began writing personal copies incorporating their own variant spellings and pronunciations of words. The problem became so serious that some of the old-time companions of the Prophet thought the Qur’an might be lost in a sea of competing versions. Usman acted decisively and ordered that the official edition, prepared in the time of his predecessor, Abu Bakr, be duplicated and one copy of it sent to every major Muslim city. From there,
scribes could make further copies, so all controversies and disagreements would be laid to rest. All the faulty copies people had made themselves were to be burned so that only the authentic edition would circulate.

A facsimile of a page from the world’s oldest surviving Qur’an, prepared by the order of Caliph Usman circa 655 C.E.

Two copies of those Usmani Qur’ans, as they are called, exist to this day in museums in Turkey and Tashkent. They have exactly the same text as any Arabic Qur’an today. To those who have suggested that the Qur’an we have today is not completely in line with the one Muhammad recited, the reply is simple: All of the people who were involved in recording the Qur’an both during and after Muhammad’s time were memorizers of the book. In addition, there were hundreds of other such people who would have noticed any alterations in the text. Among Muhammad’s thousands of surviving companions, there was never any controversy on this issue.
Major Themes of the Qur’an

The Qur’an has three major themes:

1. The absolute authority of God
2. The accountability of humans for their deeds
3. The impermanence of this life

Each theme is expressed in a forceful way using parables, examples, references to past peoples or prophets, and logic.

Fully one third of the verses of the Qur’an relate to issues concerning the next life and what people will find after death. Another third of the verses deal with prophets, interfaith issues, and the human experience, while the final third cover subjects ranging from law to personal and social obligations. All of these different themes appear at different places throughout the whole scripture.

The Teachings of the Prophet

“O You who believe,” the Qur’an exhorts, “obey Allah and obey the Messenger.” In another verse we read, “You have a beautiful pattern to follow in the Messenger of Allah.” These are just two of the many ayahs, or verses, that tell Muslims to follow the teachings of the Prophet Muhammad. But isn’t the Qur’an one such teaching? The Islamic answer is no. The Qur’an is God’s literal Word merely transmitted through the mouthpiece of Muhammad. The Prophet’s teachings are something else entirely. This is why the Shahadah, or Islamic Declaration of Faith, has two parts—in order to remind people of this.

Muhammad’s life example, called His Sunnah, or Way, represents his own interpretation of how to live by the dictates of the Qur’an. One often-used example concerns the five daily prayers of Islam. The Qur’an tells Muslims simply to pray at fixed times, but it doesn’t tell them how to pray. It mentions nothing about reciting surahs, bowing at the waist, saying certain phrases, and so on. These the Prophet taught in his own words. The archangel Gabriel, Muslims believe, was providing Muhammad with guidance on this and all other issues, but the knowledge was filtered through Muhammad’s speech, experiences, and actions. Thus the Sunnah of Muhammad is considered to be the second most important source of Islam.

It Is Written

Muhammad, during his last major public address, said, “I’m leaving you with two things. If you hold fast to them you will never go astray. They are the Book of Allah and my Sunnah.”
How Are Hadiths Different from the Qur’an?

The Qur’an contains verses that have their own style. From rhymes to prose, there is a certain way that the information is presented and certain types of grammar constructions. Muhammad’s own sayings, or hadiths, which form the basis of the Sunnah, are what he said on a daily basis in the course of normal life. When he spoke to people of his own volition, he neither rhymed nor recited in a melodious voice. Here is an example of the difference in style. The first selection is a verse from the Qur’an. The second two selections are well-known hadiths of the Prophet, taken from the collection of the ninth-century scholar Imam Bukhari.

Qur’an:

“O You who believe, shall I lead you to a bargain that will save you from a painful doom? It is that you believe in Allah and His Messenger and then strive in His cause with your wealth and your persons. That is best for you if you only knew.” (61:10–11)

Hadiths:

“The older a person gets the more his desire for two things increases: wealth and longevity.” (Bukhari)

“Learning is a duty on every Muslim, male and female.” (Bukhari)

As you can see, the Qur’an contains a distinctly religious tone while the hadiths are more like statements or pronouncements such as an orator might make or a teacher might say to his or her students.

Who Recorded the Hadiths?

During the Meccan period and early Medinan period, Muhammad used to forbid his followers to write down his personal sayings for fear that people would mix them up with the Qur’an. Near the end of his life, however, when the sanctity of the Qur’an was secure and lots of people knew the entire Qur’an by heart, he relaxed this prohibition. Many of his followers began to write down what they had learned from him on a variety of topics. Others merely passed down his sayings orally to their children and grandchildren.

Some of these first books of hadiths have survived until the present day. As Islam spread throughout the world from Morocco to China, however, many of the people who knew the oral hadith tradition became scattered. Scholars who wanted to collect these elusive sayings and preserve them for later generations began...
traveling all over the Muslim Empire looking for people who had these hadiths or who had learned them from others.

Because there are always dishonest people and forgetful ones, these scholars developed a system for sifting through the collected data to determine whether a hadith was authentic or fabricated. This process involved a grueling investigation into the genealogy of the person giving the hadith, focusing on the moral character of the narrator and whom he or she had heard it from, and so on. If any discrepancy was found, the hadith would be labeled as not fully reliable or even false. All of this information is recorded as a chain going back to the original person who heard the hadith from the Prophet.

Another area of criteria concerned the harmony between the hadith and the Qur’anic text. Muhammad predicted that many people would attribute false sayings to him in the future, so he gave the instruction that any hadith that contradicts the Qur’an does not come from him; therefore, it should be rejected. These were just two of the methods employed by the early hadith scholars in ensuring the accuracy of the prophetic traditions. The major work was completed within 200 years of the Prophet’s death.

The major hadith scholars, whose works are named after them, are Imam Bukhari, Imam Muslim, At-Tirmidhi, Ibn Majah, Abu Dawood, and An-Nisa’i. All of these collections are available widely. The hadiths are classified by topic and cover everything from how to perform the five pillars and how to treat neighbors to what to do in war, how to treat your family, what to do if you want to go on a journey, and so on.

**Hadith Literature: A Snapshot**

Here is an example of a hadith with the full chain of narrators going back to the Prophet. This hadith comes from the collection of Imam Bukhari and is classified as proven (Sahih). (The voluminous biographical material on each narrator is omitted here.)

On the authority of Abu Al Nauman, who said he heard it from Said ibn Zayd, who heard it from ‘Ali

**Just the Facts**

Imam Bukhari (d. 870), the most famous collector of hadiths, gathered over 600,000 hadiths but included only 2,602 in his official book because the rest he could not prove with sufficient certainty that the Prophet said them.

**Ask the Imam**

Imam Bukhari heard there was a man in a far-off land who had a unique hadith. The Imam traveled for weeks to reach the man’s city and asked where this person could be found. When the Imam approached the man’s house, he saw him trying to coax his donkey to move by pretending he had food in his hand. The Imam concluded that the man was a liar and left without ever speaking to him.
ibn Zayd, who said he heard it from Jabir ibn ‘Abdullah: the Prophet said, “Whoever has three daughters, cares and provides for them, and shows them mercy, will enter paradise.”

The Companions of the Prophet

A companion of the Prophet is classified as anyone who heard, saw, or spent time with the Prophet Muhammad. These people, who are called the *sahaba*, are considered to be authorities on Islam because they learned about Islam directly from the source. In terms of numbers, there were over a hundred thousand *sahaba*, though if you count only the ones who spent meaningful time with the Prophet you’re actually looking at only a few hundred noteworthy men and women.

There is a frequently quoted saying of Muhammad in which he said that his companions were like guiding stars: Whichever one is followed, a person will be rightly guided. Muhammad’s companions are considered the best generation in Islamic history, with each succeeding generation being a little less noble than the one before it. The *sahaba* were truly amazing people from a certain standpoint. Most of them were converts to Islam who were transformed from a variety of lifestyles into the unified tradition of Islam. They encompassed all races and social standings but came together in mutual communion as brothers and sisters in faith. Each had his or her own talents, and Muhammad was able to utilize the abilities of each to the advantage of the community as a whole.

Early Meccan Converts

There are certain *sahaba* who stand out because of the hardships they had to endure. Among these are the earliest Meccan converts to Islam. They converted when conversion could mean being ridiculed, shunned by their own families, or even killed. The following list introduces some of the best-known *sahaba*:

- **Khadijah bint Khuwaylid**  
  Muhammad’s wife who was the first convert to Islam.
- **Abu Bakr As-Siddeeq**  
  Muhammad’s best friend and the first caliph of Islam.
- **Umar ibn al Khattab**  
  A convert who later became the second caliph.
- **Sumayyah bint Khubbat**  
  An early convert who was tortured to death by the Meccans. She was the first martyr of Islam.
➤ Bilal ibn Rab’ah A black slave who suffered terrible torture at the hands of his idolatrous master. Abu Bakr bought his freedom and later Bilal became the first muezzin, or prayer caller, in Islam.

Prominent Women

Many people would be surprised to learn that women played very prominent roles in the rise of Islam. From the first night when Khadijah consoled her husband after his first revelation, through to the end of the Prophet's life, women were supporting Islam as fiercely as men. For women, Islam provided a way out of the stifling Arab customs of the day. From female infanticide to unrestricted violence, women before Islam had a very hard time. Islam brought them equal status, rights, and a voice in the community that they had never had before. I will be discussing more about this in Chapter 20, “Looking at Women in Islam.”

Some of the most prominent women, other than those already mentioned, include:

➤ Umm Salamah She had to endure immense pressure from her family, even losing the custody of her child for a time. She never faltered and eventually escaped to Medina.

➤ Umm Ammarah During a fierce battle in which the Meccans attacked the Muslims from behind, she stood over the wounded Prophet and fought off a crowd of attacking men with arrows, a spear, and finally a sword and shield.

➤ A’ishah The daughter of Abu Bakr and a wife of the Prophet. She was a leader of women and a teacher to both men and women.

➤ Barakah She was an African woman who was Muhammad's caretaker when he was a boy. After Muhammad attained prophethood, she carried secret messages, at great danger to herself, between the hidden Muslim meeting places around Mecca.

The ‘Ulema: Scholars of the Faith

The body of Islamic knowledge is quite extensive. Areas of study can include Arabic grammar, the Qur’an, the hadiths, Islamic Law, biographies of the sahaba, philosophy, interfaith dialogue, the life history of Muhammad, and political and economic theory. Most people don’t have the time to delve very deeply into these subjects, so religious scholars fill the gaps in knowledge. The difference between Islam and other religious traditions, however, is that Muslim scholars (the ‘Ulema) are not charged with formulating new doctrines. Rather, they organize and interpret the data given in the Qur’an and the hadiths.

The only areas in which new additions to Islamic Law can be made are those involving an unexpected issue that confronts the Muslim community. For example, how does Islam view test tube babies or cryogenic freezing or even organ transplantation?
Islamic scholars, who often work independently of each other under little to no regulation, consult a descending order of sources to arrive at an answer that is within the general spirit of Islam. This is called the science of **Fiqh**, or deducing legal positions. The four sources consulted are …

- The Qur’an.
- The hadiths.
- The consensus of the *sahaba* (*‘Ijma*).
- Independent reasoning (*Qiyas*).

In the last source, the scholar himself or herself tries to come up with an answer from his or her own logic and ability to reason. Sometimes scholars have to get very creative to provide answers for the community. The word *Ijtehad* is the name for this process of coming up with definitive rulings that rely on a lot of independent thought. It is through this process that the corpus of Islamic Law is a living, breathing institution that can adapt to any age or circumstance. Recent legal rulings, called *fatwas*, have declared that it is allowed to say the call to prayer over a loudspeaker, to perform prayers in a spacecraft, to donate organs, and to trade stocks that are not connected with vice.

### Early Theologians

Not everyone is qualified to issue fatwas or engage in *Ijtehad*. Although no central hierarchy exists among Muslim scholars, such as in the Catholic Church with its ecclesiastical structure, there are certain recognized qualifications for being accepted as a religious authority in Islam. A person has to study in an accepted Islamic university or with a graduate who has been given permission to teach higher studies. Such independent teachers are often called *shaykhs*, an old Arabic term that means chief or leader. People who complete programs of study, which usually last about five years, are given a certificate called an *‘Ijazah*, the equivalent of what we would call a Master's degree in Islamic studies.

Some of the most famous *sahaba* of the past and their students are still remembered by Muslims. Names like *Hassan al Basri* and *A’ishah bint Abi Bakr* are spoken of with reverence. It was during this early generation that the teachings of Islam were systematized and made more comprehensible to the masses. All of the major Islamic sciences from *Fiqh* to Arabic lexicography were initiated within the first two centuries of the Islamic expansion. The foundation of this knowledge still defines traditional Islamic education today.
Chapter 18 ➤ Exploring the Sources of Islam

The Five Imams

The science of Fiqh was initiated by a variety of concerned scholars in the first centuries of Islam. They often worked together at first but then formulated their legal processes of Ijtehad independently. Each scholar attracted numbers of students who carried on the work after their founder’s passing. These growing legal traditions attempted to explain the teachings and application of Islam to the masses.

This service was necessary because many verses of the Qur’an can be interpreted in different ways. In addition, some of the hadiths are vague or even confusing for the average person to understand. Because people see things differently, each of these schools of thought, or madh-habs, varied slightly in its findings. When talking about issues of Ijtehad where no clear-cut Islamic answer is available, the amount of disagreement can increase. For example, the Qur’an declares that Muslims are allowed to eat “flesh from the sea.” Some scholars thought this meant only fish, while others included clams, crustaceans, and anything else that lives under the water. Although the madh-habs agree on over 80 percent of the issues related to Islamic beliefs and practices, it’s in the peripheral issues that disagreement and controversy sometimes ensue.

Each of these schools of thought began to be known by the name of its founder. The five that have survived to this day are ...

➤ The Hanafi.
➤ The Shafi.
➤ The Maliki.
➤ The Hanbali.
➤ The Ja’fari.

Muslims everywhere generally adhere to one of these five schools of thought, taking all of their questions about how to follow Islam to the scholars and manuals produced by each. Most Muslim countries have areas of concentration in which the majority of the people follow one or the other. The modus operandi that has prevailed for centuries between the adherents of each legal tradition has been that all are valid legal paths to being a good Muslim, so no one should criticize another’s madh-hab. Muslims commonly identify themselves by the legal tradition they follow.

Activist Scholars

Islamic scholars have played a key role in protecting and promoting Islam. It was they who often put their own lives at risk in confronting the excesses of the political rulers. When external enemies threatened the Muslim world, the scholars called upon the people to defend themselves. During the era of Colonialism, men such as Muhammad Abdu, Jamal Uddin Afghani, and Uthman Dan Fodio explained to the community why they had been conquered by non-Muslims and what they could do about it.
Given the complete absence of an Islamic political structure uniting Muslims throughout the world, as is called for in the Qur’an, scholars have today replaced the sultans, caliphs, and khans of the past as the protectors of Islam. This practice can lead to abuse, of course, and one dangerous trend today is the growth of the “instant shaykh.” People who have little Islamic knowledge suddenly set themselves up as authority figures and attract gullible followers. Muslims routinely discuss this issue and look for ways to curtail the ambitions of people who don’t have the patience to undergo a traditional course of study.

There are many prominent (and authentic) Islamic scholars in the West today. They provide guidance to Muslims who are trying to negotiate life in a non-Muslim society that is often seen as hostile to religious values. Some of the more well known are Jamal Bedawi, Siraj Wahhaj, Ahmad Sakr, Jamal Zarabozo, Ruqqaiyah Waris Maqsood, and Muzzamil Siddiqi.

In the last decade numerous Islamic colleges have been set up, from California to Maine, and they are now graduating scholars who were born in the West and educated in the East. Both Houses of the United States Congress have had opening invocations performed by Islamic scholars, and the White House is now the frequent scene of visits from Muslim leaders. The U.S. Military has been certifying Islamic chaplains for years in association with several important American Islamic institutions. A new chapter has opened in the world of Islam, and its first page begins with the new generation of Muslim ‘ulema from North America.

---

**The Least You Need to Know**

- Muslims consider the Qur’an to be the literal Word of God dictated to Muhammad by the archangel Gabriel.
- The sayings of the Prophet are considered secondary in status to the Qur’an. The details of how to practice Islam are given in the hadiths.
- The companions of the Prophet are those who carried the message of Islam forward both before and after Muhammad’s death. Muslims revere them as examples of strong faith.
- Islam is interpreted for everyday Muslims by scholars. A scholar in Islam is similar in status to a theologian in Christianity and Judaism, with the exception that a scholar does not create doctrines.
- Muslim scholars are considered to be the authorities on Islam but are not considered holy in the same way a priest or rabbi is. Women can become scholars in Islam as well.
Islam is not just a religious or spiritual discipline. It also provides guidance for every aspect of a person’s life both at home and out in society. The very basis of a healthy community, after reforming one’s own self, is the family. “Save yourselves and your families,” declares the Qur’an, and this theme encompasses a large part of a Muslim’s life. Islam holds that the best places to be are in the home or in the mosque; when out in the world at large, one had better avoid the many snares and traps of Shaytan.

But Islam is not a dowdy religion, consigning its followers to just praying, fasting, and staying out of trouble. It is also a community experience, and wholesome activities to celebrate life are not only encouraged but religiously mandated. People should come out to mingle and build stronger bonds among themselves. For this reason Islam promotes public ceremonies to mark the passage of life-changing events. There are also
two annual holidays for people to come together in joy and merriment. In this chapter I will show you the familial and social aspects of Islam.

**Islam and the Family**

Islam has a definite view of family life. The Qur’an describes the relationship between a husband and a wife as “two garments that protect each other.” Both have equal status as adults, and neither is encouraged to lord it over the other. With that said, Islam also assigns the husband the role of the head of the family. It doesn’t mean that the husband is to be the dictator of the family, though, but rather the caretaker of everyone’s safety and well-being.

As the Qur’an itself explains: “Men are the appointed protectors and maintainers of women because Allah has given them more responsibility than them.” (Qur’an 4:34) Never are men called smarter, more deserving, or more capable than women. They are simply given the responsibility to work so that women have a greater freedom to make choices that will ensure they don’t need to sacrifice their family life for the sake of supporting themselves. Looked at from a certain angle, God has eternally doomed men to work for women!

Muslims take Muhammad’s experiences with his extended household as examples of how interfamilial relationships can be conducted. Muhammad’s marriage, to Khadijah, lasted for over 20 years, and he had no other wife during this time. Khadijah is held up as the ideal wife—caring, supportive, and compassionate. With her prowess in economic affairs, she helped to fund the Prophet’s activities. A year after her death, Muhammad’s companions encouraged him to marry again, so he married an older widow who had no support. He would later take more wives, widows mostly, for the same charitable and kindly reasons. Ample opportunity existed for people to see how a prophet coexisted with his family.

**The Ties That Bind**

Islam envisions a society in which people are connected on many levels. Families are united, and divorce is rare. Communities are made up of settled people, and everyone attends the mosque regularly. As such, the ties of neighbors are continually strengthened. If one household is in need, others step forward to assist. Crime is rare, and the citizens are literate and thoughtful. Has such a utopian vision ever existed? Actually, for a large chunk of Islamic history, many communities functioning around the world have come close to this ideal.
When Muslims look at modern society with all of its problems, they sometimes get the urge to become insular. Issues such as abortion, teen pregnancy, rampant promiscuity, dating, drug addiction, and alcoholism were virtually unknown in the traditional Muslim world until recently. One of the reasons for the growth of Islamic parochial schools in North America is the alarming trends that seem to be tearing apart American society. Do Muslims claim that Islam has the answers to these problems? Yes, but in the meantime, few Muslims are willing to allow their families to assimilate into the more negative aspects of modern culture.

**The Ideal Muslim Home**

In an Islamic home the father is a responsible man who works hard for his family. He is neither arrogant nor cruel and shows tender kindness to his family. Toward his wife, he is loving, and he caters to her sexual needs through caressing and tenderness. These symbols of intimate affection were described by the Prophet as the *ambassadors*, which must come before intimate relations. He is never alone with another woman, even at work, and he consults his family on all major decisions. He does not physically or emotionally abuse his wife because he knows the Prophet Muhammad never hit a woman in his whole life. The children are obedient and respect their father completely. Their greatest shame is to cause their father to become angry.

The wife is cooperative with her husband in all things that require a team effort. She is not a slave, a servant, or a second-class citizen. The Qur’an describes the relationship between a man and wife as that of helpers to each other. The Prophet Muhammad said that mothers deserve three times the respect as that given to fathers, and this is on account of the sacrifices women make for their families. With that said, the wife understands the grave responsibility upon her husband’s shoulders, for on Judgment Day the father will bear the blame for any failures to protect his family.

She doesn’t refuse his sexual advances so as not to alienate him, and she doesn’t have any friends that he dislikes. She upholds his reputation and doesn’t spill his secrets in public. Though she may work if she wishes, her money is her own. She would never sacrifice her children’s moral, physical and emotional needs, however, solely for the sake of personal goals. She doesn’t wear much makeup in public or dress specifically to attract other men’s eyes, and she looks forward to Paradise, which is promised to those women who are sincere helpmates to their husbands.

*It Is Written*

According to Muhammad, “Indeed, Allah has made it forbidden for you to disobey mothers.”

235
Spare the Rod

How should a child be raised according to Islam? The answer is best expressed in the words of the Prophet Muhammad who said that when children are under age 7, we should be easy with them. From the ages of 7 to 14, we should be strict with them, and after 14 we should be their friend. This three-stage developmental process takes into account every level of intellectual and emotional capacity. Small children don’t always understand what they’re doing, so punishment must be withheld as much as possible. Teenagers are prone to trouble, so a firm hand is in order; after puberty, Islam considers a person an adult.

It is the responsibility of the parents to rear their children properly and to teach them manners, religious obligations, and worldly knowledge. Abu Bakr, a famous companion of the Prophet, once noted that the child who is taught to be good at an early age has an easier time being virtuous later on in life. Another famous Muslim ‘Ali ibn Abi Talib once counseled, “Raise your children differently from how you were raised because they are meant for a different time than you.”

The Prophet Muhammad, whose Sunnah is considered the ideal model for all Muslims, used to hug and kiss his children and grandchildren and always made time to play with them. He also did not complain about what they did. Anas bin Malik, who as a boy came to serve the aged Prophet, later remarked, “I served the Prophet for 10 years and never once did he say, ‘Why did you do this?’ or ‘Why did you do that?’”

Welcome to My Mosque

The mosque, or masjid, is the focal point of the Islamic community. It is open for the five daily prayers, and Muslims routinely congregate there for prayer, meditation, and reflection. In the Prophet’s day, the main mosque of Medina was used for community meetings, planning sessions, and even as a homeless shelter for the poor people who embraced Islam and needed a place to stay for the night.

In North America today, the mosque still retains many of its traditional functions. Community dinners are usually a monthly occurrence. Weddings and funeral prayers are often performed there as well. A new innovation that is common mostly to mosques in the Western world is the addition of a weekend school for the children of the congregation’s members. On
Saturdays or Sundays, children attend the school to learn about the fundamentals of their religion and to socialize with other children of similar backgrounds.

There are currently over 2,000 mosques spread all across Canada, the United States, and Mexico. Most have congregations numbering less than a thousand, but a few serve several thousand people annually. Most mosques are operated by an elected board of directors whose terms are limited. The Imam, or prayer leader, is usually responsible for weekly services and daily activities.

**What Happens in a Mosque?**

The main activities one finds in a mosque are prayer and teaching. The most attended prayer, of course, is the Friday sermon called *Salat ul-Jumu’ah*, or the prayer of gathering. It is an obligation on all Muslim men over the age of puberty to attend. Women are allowed and encouraged to attend as well, though there is no sin recorded for them if they pray at home. This is a mercy owing to the fact that many women have child-rearing responsibilities, such as breast-feeding and the like.

There are hyper-spiritual Muslims who are known as *Sufis*. They sometimes sit in large circles in mosques and chant Islamic phrases and the names of God in unison. Other Muslims simply go to the mosque to read and study the Qur’an in a quiet atmosphere. Loud shouting and calling out are frowned upon, and men are encouraged to apply scented cologne when they arrive. (Women are asked to wear more-muted perfumes that do not surround them in an envelope of scents so as not to attract undue male interest.)

When the time for prayer arrives, the *muazzin* gives a shortened version of the prayer call and people arrange themselves in straight rows behind the Imam. Men line up in the front rows, followed by rows of children, and finally the women line up behind. There is no gender discrimination here, as was explained earlier in Chapter 11, “Understanding Muslim Prayers.” With all the bowing and prostrating that goes on, it is best that the sexes are not mixed together.

**No Shoes Allowed!**

Shoes are not allowed in the main prayer area of a mosque. This tradition has its roots in ancient customs of which Judaism and Christianity used to partake. The main hall where the actual prayers are performed is called the *musallah*, or prayer place. Non-Muslim women are not required to wear head scarves before entering the mosque, but some mosques have a policy asking visitors to don a scarf for reasons of modesty.

*Just the Facts*

Although un-Islamic backward cultural practices in some Muslim countries result in women being discouraged from attending public religious services, Muhammad said, “Do not prevent the female servants of Allah from going to the mosque.”
Friday, the Day of Gathering

On Fridays, Muslims all over the world attend a half-hour service in which they listen to a two-part speech and then follow it with a group prayer. The service is held in the early afternoon, and many Muslims in North America are forced to ask their employers for an extralong lunch break on Fridays. This is because *Salat ul-Jumu‘ah*, as it is called, is classified as a religious duty upon men. The Qur’an states:

“O you who believe! When the call for prayer is made on Friday, hasten to the remembrance of Allah and cease your business. That is better for you if you but knew.” (Qur’an 62:9)

Friday is not considered like a Sabbath day or a day of rest. Muslims are asked to stop working and come together as a community for less than an hour, and then they can go back about their business. It’s really quite interesting that in Muslim countries where there are large Christian populations, the governments usually designate Friday and Sunday as weekend days, with Saturday being a workday.

Friday is also significant for Muslims because of the following saying of the Prophet Muhammad:

“The best day on which the sun rises is Friday. On it Adam was created, on it he was expelled [from Paradise], on it his contrition was accepted, on it he died, and on it the Last Hour will take place. On Friday every animal is on the lookout from dawn to sunrise in fear of the Last Hour, but not jinn and men, and it contains a time at which no Muslim prays and asks anything from Allah but He will give it to him.”

The Features of a Masjid

Every *masjid*, or mosque, has the following features:

1. A *musallah*, or main prayer hall
2. A minaret from which the *muazzin* makes the call to prayer five times a day
3. An area for people to do *wudu*, or ritual washing for prayer
4. A small inward curved niche in the front wall indicating the direction of Mecca
5. A *minbar*, or raised pulpit with several steps leading to a small platform
6. Usually, some type of dome as part of the traditional architecture, but a dome isn’t required
7. Separate prayer areas for men and women marked off in some way

Many mosques also incorporate a community hall and classrooms for weekend religious schooling.
What Is an Imam?

An Imam is a person who leads the prayer in the mosque. It is a term sometimes applied to the leader of the community, as well. Basically, an Imam serves a function similar to that of a priest or rabbi. He conducts religious services, performs marriages and funerals, gives counseling, and teaches adult and children’s classes. An Imam gains his position by first completing a course of study in a recognized Islamic college. Then he is hired by the mosque’s board of directors and retained on salary.

Imams are not considered holy men, nor are they ordained in official ceremonies. Their status is based on their learning and piety and nothing more. There is no concept of a priesthood or hereditary class of godly folk in Islam. Any man can become an Imam if he chooses to pursue this career path. Women can also be Imams, though only of women congregants. Generally, women bypass this stage and become full-fledged scholars, or ‘Ulema, and serve the community through providing religious guidance. Islam does not prohibit women from teaching men, as the Bible does.

It Is Written

According to Muhammad, “On every Friday the angels take their stand at every gate of every mosque to write the names of the people who enter chronologically and when the Imam sits [on the pulpit and is ready to begin] they fold up their scrolls and get ready to listen to the sermon.”
Ceremonies for Life

Islam provides a way for people to mark the passage of time with rites and ceremonies. No one would deny that significant events require special recognition, and neither does Islam. The traditions for marriages, births, and funerals were all taught by Prophet Muhammad and personally conducted by him for the community on numerous occasions. This section introduces the three ceremonies that Islam recognizes.

Nikah: Marriage in Islam

*Nikah* is the word for marriage in Islam. It is considered a civil contract between a man and a woman for the purpose of forming a family and engaging in marital relations that are allowed and wholesome. It is not considered a religious sacrament. The Prophet encouraged people to get married as soon as they were financially able so that the “raging hormone syndrome” that drives people to date and become promiscuous can be avoided. Ideally, young men and women should get married any time between the completion of puberty and the age of 25.

There is no dating allowed in Islam, so how do prospective partners meet? This question often comes up in public presentations of Islam. It may surprise you to learn that dating was unknown in America just a hundred years ago. Prior to the modern anything-goes era, people used to be paired up by relatives and matchmakers and through contact at social functions or in school. Islam has a similar mechanism for getting people together.

Islam allows prospective mates to meet in chaperoned circumstances. Never are two unmarried people to be alone together. Every woman who is seeking a husband is required to have what is known as a *wali*, or guardian, who will act on her behalf and for her benefit. Basically, the *wali* has the job of telling men to give it up if the woman decides against further contact with them. The *wali* also sees to it that unscrupulous men are kept at bay.

Meetings in chaperoned settings or in public can go on for as long as both sides like, so they can get to know each other better. If they decide to end the explorations, there is no shame on either party. If they decide to go forward and get married, then a public announcement of engagement is made and a formal wedding date is set. There is no concept in Islam of living together first or having intimate relations as a way of testing the worth of a match.

The woman then sets a dowry for the man to give that is called a *mahr*, or marriage gift. She can ask for...
as much or as little as she desires, whether it be money, a house, or even merely a ring. If the amount is very high, she may give her bridegroom a timetable to pay it off after marriage. This monetary gift to the woman is sort of like an insurance policy for her, giving her some financial muscle just in case the marriage doesn’t last long.

When the day of the wedding ceremony arrives, people gather either in a big hall or in a mosque. The pair of soon-to-be newlyweds sits in the front, facing the Imam, who is seated as well. The Imam asks the wali if the woman has agreed to the wedding, and then he asks the man if he agrees. The amount of the mahr is publicly announced.

Next, the Imam asks each party to exchange and sign a wedding contract. This document spells out the rights, duties, concerns, and obligations that each side wants the other to obey. When this is done, the Imam reads the sermon of marriage, which begins by invoking God and then extols the merits of a loving relationship. Following this, the opening verses of Chapter 4 of the Qur’an are read. The subject matter is God’s creation of men and women and how they are supposed to join together in marriage. The Imam announces the marriage complete, and the joyous gathering erupts in a flurry of congratulations and hugging of the newlyweds. There is a reception afterward, called a walima, in which the wedding party celebrates with food, fun, and gift giving.

**Aqiqah: Welcoming Baby**

The arrival of a new baby brings joy to any family. Islam has a way to cement that joy in a ritual called the Aqiqah, or Welcoming Consecration, which is held seven days after birth. When a baby is first delivered, the father or mother whispers the Islamic call to prayer in the newborn’s ear, welcoming the baby into the life of the world where the responsibility to respond to Allah’s call is greatest. A bit of mashed date is then lovingly fed to the baby by custom, and a beautiful supplication for its good fortune in life is made.

Next, the selection of a name is made that reflects the values of Islam. The name can be overtly religious in nature, such as ‘Abdullah (Servant of God), or it can be more mundane, like Asma (Names) or Jameelah (beautiful). Many Muslims name their boys after prophets or famous companions, while girls are often named after members of the Prophet’s household or terms derived from the Qur’an that call goodness to mind.

---

"We have given a duty to every person concerning his parents. His mother carries him in her womb while suffering weakness upon weakness and then weans him for two years. That’s why We commanded people: ‘Give thanks to Me and to your parents, and remember that back to Me is your final goal.’" (Qur’an 31:14)
Circumcision of male babies usually happens within the first few days after birth. It is not considered a religious sacrament in Islam. Rather, it has a more practical function related to good hygiene and cleanliness. Female circumcision, contrary to popular imagination, is not at all encouraged or required in Islam, nor is there any benefit in doing so from a religious standpoint. The practice is virtually unknown in most of the Muslim world except in parts of Africa where it is a pre-Islamic tribal custom. In that case, local Christian natives engage in the practice as well. Muslim organizations have been in the forefront trying to abolish this practice, though long-standing local customs are difficult to change.

On the seventh day after birth the actual Aqiqah ceremony takes place. Families gather for a special dinner. A sheep or goat is ritually sacrificed (usually at a butcher shop), and the meat is cooked and served to the guests. A portion is also donated to the poor. The baby’s hair is shaved off, and its weight in silver is given in charity. People congratulate the parents on their newborn and give gifts for the baby.

Janazah: Muslim Funerary Rites

The Muslim funeral procedure is conducted with a unique frame of mind. Islam teaches that death is merely a doorway into the third stage of life, our time in the grave until Judgment Day. Consequently, the traditional condolence to the bereaved is, “To God we belong and to Him we return.” While sincere crying and sorrow are allowed for the mourners, loud wailing and the tearing of clothes is forbidden.

The body is usually brought to a mosque for the special funeral prayer, known as the Janazah, but it can be performed anywhere. The people line up in rows, with the coffin on a stand in front of them. They begin the prayer in the usual fashion; however, there is no bowing or prostration during this ritual. The entire procedure is conducted standing up. It takes about five minutes to perform, and the words that the mourners recite silently to themselves center on asking God to forgive the deceased.

The rule in Islam is to bury the body as soon as possible. Long drawn-out wakes and showings are not a part of Islamic tradition. The body, which was washed with water and then wrapped in white sheets, is carefully raised over the shoulders. A funeral procession to the graveyard is conducted, and the body is laid to rest in the grave while verses of the Qur’an are read. Wooden coffins are allowed, but steel ones are frowned upon. It is best to have no container at all so that the Earth can reclaim our physical bodies as quickly as possible. It is customary for people to bring gifts of food and to visit the survivors for several days after the funeral. Tombstones that rise above the ground are forbidden, though many Muslims disregard this rule.
Completing the Qur’an

There is a very common unofficial ceremony practiced throughout most of the Muslim world called Khatmi-Qur’an, or Sealing the Qur’an. This is a celebration to mark a child’s completion of their first full reading of the Qur’anic text in Arabic. It usually takes up to two years under the guidance of a teacher for children to master the proper pronunciation and to read the text clearly from the first verse to the last. Most children complete the Qur’an between the ages of four and seven. This celebration is called an Ameen Ceremony in Southeast Asia.

Islamic Holidays

There are two main holidays in Islam. Each comes after an important Islamic ritual and is supposed to enforce upon the celebrant the meaning and joy of what was just accomplished. The first holiday comes after the end of Ramadan, and the second after the Hajj is completed.

Ramadan and ‘Eid ul Fitr

The after-Ramadan celebration known as the ‘Eid ul Fitr (Festival of the Fast Breaking) is the most popular holiday in Islam. For obvious reasons, being released from monthlong dawn-to-dusk fasting can make people quite happy. The first day of the ‘Eid begins in the mosque with a special morning prayer service, which consists of a short congregational prayer followed by a two-part sermon reminding people of the lessons they should remember from Ramadan for the rest of the year. The ‘Eid festivities officially last for three days, and Muslims hold parties on each of the days. In some places carnivals are held. Special ‘Eid sweets are prepared, and children are given gifts.

After the Hajj: ‘Eid ul Adha

The second official holiday in Islam is known as ‘Eid ul Adha, or Festival of the Sacrifice. It comes at the end of the Hajj ritual in Mecca. There are no special ceremonies held in the rest of the Muslim world, so this holiday is usually more muted in tone. The lesson of the Hajj is about sacrificing what we love for God’s sake, and sermons in the mosques usually relate to this theme. The special prayer service and three-day celebration are carried out in the same fashion as for the other ‘Eid.

Just the Facts

Muslims in Iran celebrate the Persian festival of the New Year. This is a pre-Islamic custom that commemorates ancient Persian rulers and their accomplishments.
Other Holidays of Note

There are only two official holidays in Islam based on the clear pronouncement of Muhammad. However, Muslims have adopted other holidays and celebrate them in different regions. Here are two of them:

➤ **Maulid un Nabi**  the birthday of the Prophet. Although birthdays are not celebrated in Islamic tradition, Muslims in the early centuries of Islam began commemorating the Prophet’s birth, which falls in the Islamic month of *Rabiul Awwal*. People sing songs and chant and hold conferences and give speeches extolling his life and virtues. Over half of the world’s Muslims participate in such festivities.

➤ **‘Eid ul Ghadir**  a festival peculiar to a sect of Muslims known as the *Shi’a*. It commemorates what they say was Muhammad’s supposed announcement that his nephew, ‘Ali ibn Abi Talib, would be his immediate successor. Sunni Muslims dispute this claim.

Halal and Haram: What Can a Muslim Do?

Islam classifies all actions by their merit or sin. The rule in the *Shari’ah*, or Islamic Law, is that everything is allowed except what is expressly forbidden. Allowed activities for a Muslim are called *halal*, while prohibited ones are labeled *haram*. In keeping with the Islamic spirit of planning for all eventualities, there are two other main categories by which actions can be judged. These are things permissible, though not encouraged; and things disliked, though not sinful. In this section I will explain many of these types of deeds and what Islam says about the performance of each.

The Muslim Kosher Standard

Food is one of the most important elements of our daily lives. Islam is concerned with both what we eat and how much we consume. Some types of food are *haram*, and thus Muslims, like observant Jews, must watch what we eat. Although the Muslim *halal* food standard is not nearly as strict as the Jewish kosher requirement, it is, nonetheless, quite rigorous. The main features of Muslim dietary restrictions are as follows:

➤ A Muslim can eat anything that is not forbidden.
➤ Animals must be ritually slaughtered by either the Muslim *zabiha* or the Jewish kosher standard.
➤ Pork products are forbidden.
➤ Animals with fangs are forbidden.
➤ Seafood is generally allowed.
➤ Intoxicants are forbidden.
➤ Ingredients derived from animals such as gelatin and enzymes must be zabiha or kosher.
➤ Blood and carrion are forbidden.

**Islam Forbids Intoxicants**

Islam is famous for forbidding its followers all alcoholic beverages. Wine, beer, whisky, and the like are off-limits. There is a reason for this, and the evidence is all around us in our families, communities, and nation. Drunkenness leads to violence, ill health, recklessness, family breakup, and despair. Drunk driving is one of the leading causes of death today, and a large portion of domestic violence, rape, and crime is due to the scourge of alcohol. But it doesn’t stop there. Islam takes a stand on drug abuse as well.

Once a companion asked the Prophet if people were allowed to chew a certain narcotic leaf found in southern Arabia. Muhammad asked about its effects on people, and when he was told them he declared that anything that intoxicates the mind is haram for a Muslim. Consequently, Islamic scholars are unanimous in declaring mind-altering drugs prohibited.

To go even further, Muhammad explained that anyone who buys, transports, sells, carries, serves, or stores intoxicants is equally as guilty as the consumer and is cursed by God. Even glasses specifically made for alcohol such as wineglasses and brandy bottles are illegal. Muslims are the only people in the world who can proudly state that prohibition does work if you change the hearts of the people first.

**Gambling**

Islam forbids all forms of gambling and games of chance, equating them with being a trick from Shaytan to keep people’s minds off God. Any winnings are considered funds gotten unfairly, while any losses are held to be foolish setbacks that should have been avoided. Lotto, betting, poker, and all other forms of gambling are labeled as sins. Other types of activities such as games of skill are allowed. So go for that ring toss at the carnival in confidence, but avoid the slot machine at all costs!

*It Is Written*

“They ask you about drinking and gambling. Tell them: ‘There is both harm and benefit in them, but the harm is greater than the benefit.’” (Qur’an 2:219)
Music and Islam

There is quite a lot of debate in the Muslim world today about the permissibility of music and singing in Islam. Given the rise of pop music in the last several decades, almost to the status of a religion among teenagers, you can well imagine the conversation in most Muslim homes at night. (“Why can’t I go to that concert, Mom?”) The reason that music is a concern at all in Islam has to do with its effects on people. When a person is caught up in a song, he or she is oblivious to most everything else. Songs also teach, and the lessons may not be the most proper ones to learn.

The Prophet Muhammad forbade public dancing and the solo performances of women singers. He also declared certain types of instruments off-limits, such as flutes and stringed pieces, equating them with having the ability to make people forget God and to get lost in the passions of the flesh. He predicted that in the end-times female singers would be popular, and people would be more into music than religion. The problem with female singers is that some male listeners might begin to lust after them. This creates disharmony in the home as men begin to compare their wives with the flashy singer, and their eyes may start to wander. Women can become influenced to emulate the singer as well, and soon you have a maddening circle of adultery and promiscuity that is out of control. Few people would deny that certain singers become raunchier (and less clothed) year after year. The music business sometimes seems to border on being a purveyor of sex and pornography. Islam tries to nip it all in the bud.

Drums and other percussion instruments are allowed, and group singers, especially children, are encouraged. Traveling songs, poetry, celebration music, and the like are all allowed. The basic rule is that music should not be suggestive, immoral, or lewd. If it meets a wholesome standard, as defined in Islamic morality, then sing as much as you like!

Animal Rights and Islam

God created animals and other living things for the benefit of humanity. But this does not mean that we have been granted license to do as we please. The Holy Qur’an teaches that every animal has its own communal life and its own way to worship God, and thus our dealings with them must be on that footing. We have been created with a greater intellect than animals and so have a special responsibility to be fair, just, and kind to all other living things. The Blessed Prophet Muhammad once said that every injustice will be paid back on the Day of Judgment; even if one goat hits another with its horns, it will be taken account of. Therefore, in our use of animals for our own survival we must do justice.
God gave us the free use of the plants and animals of this Earth. He said, “Eat and drink of the good things of the earth.” He also said, “It is God Who has provided you with livestock of every kind. You can ride some and others you eat ....” (Qur’an 40:79) But we must balance our use of animals and plants with our primary role as caretakers on the Earth. For example, we are not allowed to harm animals or plants for no reason. The Blessed Prophet forbade people from capturing baby birds, burning anthills, and whipping animals cruelly. All the people he stopped from doing these things were just having “fun.” Well, as the Prophet pointed out, it wasn’t fun for the animals. Muhammad said, “If someone kills a sparrow for sport, the sparrow will cry out on the Day of Judgment, ‘O Lord! That person killed me in vain! He did not kill me for any useful purpose.’” So hunting for sport is forbidden in Islam.

If we use animals for our work, we must feed them and not overwork them. If we eat animals, we are supposed to slaughter them according to humane rules that prevent all cruelty and suffering; and if we have them as pets, we are to feed them and care for them properly. The Prophet once told a story in which he noted that a woman who starved her pet cat to death would be tormented by that cat on Judgment Day by way of revenge. We thus have a responsibility to all living creatures around us, and even though many non-Muslims assert that animals have no rights, Islam says otherwise.

**Monetary Restrictions**

Islam regulates economic affairs with the same thoroughness as other areas of life. Free trade, fair competition, contractual rights, and compassionate capitalism are the hallmarks of Islamically based finance. The main features that guide Muslim financial life are listed as follows:

- Muslims are forbidden to engage in interest-based borrowing or lending. This is because interest brings a hardship on the borrower and gives the lender easy gains that were not earned.
- Muslims are required to make written contracts for any and all business dealings.
- Muslims are exhorted to be honest in all financial exchanges. God will punish dishonest business people.

*It Is Written*

“He is the One Who sends the winds as heralds announcing His Mercy and sends down pure water from the sky, so that with it We may give life to a dead land, and quench the thirst of countless animals and humans that We have created. We distribute this water among them so that they may glorify Us, yet most people refuse to do anything except show ingratitude.” (Qur’an 25:48–50)
Stock trading is allowed in companies that do not deal in forbidden substances or interest. Futures contracts are forbidden because no one can foresee what conditions will be like tomorrow and to lock someone into such a contract is unfair.

Muslims are allowed to be business partners with non-Muslims.

The Least You Need to Know

- Men are the head of the family in the Islamic family structure, but the wife has the status of an equal adult who must be consulted in family affairs.
- The mosque is considered a sort of all-purpose community center where people can worship, hold meetings, and discuss community affairs.
- The birth of a baby is celebrated in a special ceremony called an Aqiqah. It is customary to give gifts for the baby on that day.
- Muslims have a kosherlike standard that restricts what they can eat and consume.
- Islam forbids gambling, alcohol, drugs, and suggestive music.
Women have always had to struggle for equality and acceptance in male-dominated societies. Sometimes local or national customs are to blame for women’s woes, while other times religion is responsible. Every nation has had to deal with this issue, and some have been more successful at finding equitable solutions than others. Over the last hundred years, women in Europe and America have been able to garner such rights as inheritance and voting privileges, but women in much of the rest of the world seem to have lagged behind.

The perception in the world today is that Muslim women have the fewest rights and liberties of all. This view is strengthened by decrees from many Islamic groups and Muslim governments that forbid women to work, go to school, or even drive a car. But are these restrictions rooted in religion or in long-held local customs that predate Islam? In fact, the real story of women in Islam is one of progressive liberation and elevation of status. It was for this reason that women were the staunchest supporters of Muhammad’s mission. If women today are not enjoying the full rights bestowed upon
them by Islam, it is not the fault of the religion, but of chauvinistic men who use religion selectively to maintain their dominance.

**Does Islam Teach Inequality?**

There is a perception in the minds of many that Islam teaches that women are second-class citizens. People often point to the many backward customs prevalent in the Muslim world as proof that religion is to blame for this sorry situation. Women who have escaped this stifling lifestyle are held up by women’s rights groups as paragons of bravery who stood up to their culture and were liberated. A recent episode of the *Oprah Winfrey Show* centered on one such woman, a princess from Bahrain who wanted to marry an American Marine. She had to leave her country to do it because her family forbade her marrying a non-Muslim. Unfortunately, the show’s unintended side effect was to make it look like the Muslim world was the new *Iron Curtain* that women had to escape from!

**Beyond Stereotypes**

The stereotyping doesn’t stop there! The popular family show *Seventh Heaven* recently ran an episode in which the plight of women in Afghanistan played a central role. Several emotional tirades about the alleged barbarism and cruelty followed one after another. The subtle message was clear: Islam is bad for women. Perhaps the most damaging film of all has been *Not Without My Daughter*, in which Sally Fields plays an American woman whose husband goes berserk on a trip to his native Iran. The violence and abuse, interspersed with prominent images of mosques and Muslim clerics, gave many Muslims the impression that this film was designed specifically to attack Islam.

Even as the Nazis made all Jews seem sinister, even as American cowboys were seen as heroes battling the savage Indians, and even as blacks are often portrayed falsely in the media as criminals, Muslims believe that the religion of Islam is getting a bum rap with regard to the role and status of women. High-profile cases are held up as the norm, and the status of women in Muslim countries is blamed on religion when the real culprit is poverty and lack of education for both men and women. (In fact, most Muslim women lead oppression-free lives!) Islam does not teach that women are inferior to men, nor does it call upon its followers to suppress them. What is the evidence to support this counterclaim?

**It Is Written**

According to Muhammad, “Women are the twin halves of men.” In other words, neither is complete without the other.
The Holy Qur’an lays out the case for women’s equality in several ways:

“O people! Reverence your Lord Who created you from a single soul and created of like nature its mate and from those two He scattered countless men and women. Reverence Allah through Whom you demand your mutual [rights] and [reverence] the wombs [of mothers that bore you] for Allah ever watches over you.” (Qur’an 4:1)

For centuries, European Christians debated whether or not women had souls or even if they went to heaven. Islam never engaged in such nonsense. The Qur’an, quite contrary to pre-Islamic Arab beliefs, called women the equals of men in all aspects of religion:

“For believing men and women, for devout men and women, for truthful men and women, for patient men and women, for humble men and women, for charitable men and women … for them has Allah prepared forgiveness and a great reward.” (Qur’an 33:35)

Muhammad himself established the equal suffrage rights of women by including them in the oath-taking practice, which was the equivalent of voting in Arab society. Islam has never taught that women should be denied a political voice, and in those Muslim countries that are not ruled by kings (which is forbidden in the Qur’an, by the way) one finds that women vote freely. Iran, which is often held up as the epitome of chauvinism, actually has more elected women in government than the United States!

Islam does not teach that women are inferior in religion or in political rights. The only caveat, as was noted in Chapter 19, “Living Islam,” is that men are called upon to be the protectors and primary providers of the family. This doesn’t mean that women are weak or incapable of defending themselves, for Islamic history is full of strong and martial women. Rather, it elevates women by freeing them from a lot of drudgery that God has said men are primarily responsible for. According to Islam, women are not even obligated to do the housework! (Any work they do is considered a charity on their part.) The Prophet Muhammad worked around the house as much as any other member of his family. Men are the undeclared servants of women, in an ideal Islamic sense.

**Ask the Imam**

Islamic Law considers women to be equal with men in all respects. Men and women have the same religious and moral duties, and the economic rights of women are identical to men. Husbands do not acquire the property of their wives upon marriage. Women have full right to vote in Islam and can hold positions of authority over men.
The Struggle for Equal Rights

In most Muslim countries, few people have any rights, men or women. Remember that the Islamic civilization was virtually wiped out during the era of Colonialism, and thus what is left is a confused jumble of customs, religious ideas, imported governmental structures, political turmoil, and poverty. The very fact that most Muslim countries are under the sway of dictators, presidents for life, kings, and other tin-pot leaders is an indication of just how serious the problem is.

In most places, the struggle for women's equality is carried out under a backdrop of governmental oppression of the men. Whether it's Syria, Algeria, or Tunisia, the average citizen has to be mindful of secret police, arbitrary arrest, torture and imprisonment, cronyism, and bribery as a fact of life. In such conditions, it may be easier to understand a backlash against the advancement of women in society. The men may feel they are losing control of another sphere of life. This is, of course, no excuse to justify unrestricted male dominance; it is merely a way to try and make sense of the struggle women have to go through.

Remember that the women's rights movement in America encountered such stiff opposition that it took over a hundred years for meaningful equal-protection laws to be enacted in the late twentieth century. Early pioneers like Susan B. Anthony and Cady Stanton were ridiculed by American men as rebellious, scandalous, and downright anti-Christian. Although several important rights were eventually achieved, many women would argue that the status of their gender still has a ways to go.

How can the lot of women in the Muslim world be improved? Education coupled with political reform is the key. Contrary to what may be immediately assumed, a more thorough religious education for men and women in which the rights of women in Islam is given prominent coverage is the best course of action. To be very frank, there is quite a lot of misinformation and faulty ideas about Islam in the Muslim world. The status of women is just one of those areas where great improvement is necessary. On the second issue, political reform, based on an Islamic model, would guarantee the safety and security of the population at large in a similar way that the American Constitution protects the rights of the average American. Despite the occurrence of the high-profile Iranian Revolution of 1979, the proper implementation of Islam in a nation is not rooted in chaos or barbarism.

Islam does not encourage the oppression of women. In fact, the teachings of Muhammad call upon men to respect the rights of women. Islamic Law contains hundreds of laws for the protection of women's rights. Among these are the following:

Just the Facts

Many Christian leaders of the past advocated the inferior status of women. The Apostle Paul called for women to keep silent in the presence of men and forbid them to be teachers of men. Martin Luther equated girls with being weeds!
Chapter 20 ➤ Looking at Women in Islam

➤ A woman’s property cannot be seized by her husband.
➤ Women cannot be denied the right to an education.
➤ Ruining a woman’s reputation is a criminal act.
➤ Forced marriage is prohibited.
➤ Women can file legal suits in court and provide sole testimony.
➤ Women can initiate divorce.
➤ Women get automatic custody of young children after divorce.
➤ Alimony and palimony are mandatory.
➤ Women can enter into contracts without interference.
➤ Spousal abuse is a punishable offense.
➤ Women receive equal pay for equal work.
➤ Women can vote and stand for office.

The list goes on further and covers so many areas that it rivals current Western laws regarding women’s status and rights. So from the Islamic standpoint, the liberation of women is not accomplished by rejecting their religion but by actually implementing it. Replacing the current regimes in Muslim countries with Islamic governments that will rule according to the Qur’an is also essential. This is how Muslims look at the issue among themselves.

True liberation for women cannot be achieved by rejecting religious or moral dictates, Islam asserts. Wearing skimpy clothing, becoming promiscuous, and abusing addictive substances as much as men do does not make one equal nor is it healthy. Many Muslim women have taken on this issue and have asserted that it is the modern Western woman who needs liberating from the sexual control of men. In America and elsewhere, women are presented as sexual objects with no value beyond their physical attributes. Popular movies, music, books, and advertising messages force women to compete with each other in dressing up to vie for the attention of men. Rape, pornography, wife abuse, and other forms of violence against women have been called epidemic in official U.S. government reports. Islam, these Muslim women say, would end all of that. So the way to help women in both the Eastern and the Western worlds, Muslims humbly offer, is to apply the principles of Islam in society.

Just the Facts

Every year thousands of women in North America and Europe convert to Islam, equating it with liberation in the true sense of the word. Author Carol Anway, whose own daughter converted, wrote a book called Daughters of Another Path in which she chronicled the journey to Islam of women from many different backgrounds.
Myths About Muslim Women

Perhaps no other issue has influenced people’s imagination more so than the status of women in Islam. In the Middle Ages, when Europeans were engaged in warfare with Muslims in Palestine, the focus was on painting a picture of Muslims as minions of the Devil. But with the powerful Ottoman Empire holding sway over much of southeastern Europe from the fifteenth century until 1918, many Westerners began changing their views and instead focused on the exotic excesses of Ottoman court life.

Europeans began to view the typical Muslim family as a licentious man lording over a harem of beautiful, nubile women. Many French, Italian, and British painters created fanciful images that fueled this notion and gave rise to the myth of the harem. The word *harem* itself does not mean in any way a pleasure room full of compliant women. It literally means *forbidden space* and is the term Muslims used for that area of the house where male visitors were not allowed to go. In the same way that it is considered bad etiquette to walk into the bedroom of another person’s house while you are a guest for dinner, Islam also has an etiquette regarding private areas of the home.

A typical harem scene as envisioned by John Frederick Lewis, a nineteenth-century European painter.

(Courtesy of the Laing Art Gallery)
Chapter 20 ➤ Looking at Women in Islam

The harem of any house was the area where women could be assured of privacy, where they could lay aside their head scarves and relax without feeling the pressure of men around. The bawdy mythology, unfortunately, comes from the un-Islamic practices of some Muslim rulers who would collect women as concubines and cordon off whole areas of their palaces as pleasure gardens. These are the harems that Europeans have taken as representative of the normal state of Muslim women. (The Ottoman sultans were the guiltiest purveyors of this practice.) Islam does not foster or condone this type of situation, and except for a few high-profile cases, this practice has been virtually unknown in the Muslim world.

How are Muslim women viewed today? Surprisingly, the myth of the harem is no longer in vogue among Westerners. Instead, it has been replaced by an equally damaging myth, that of the Muslim woman as a victim of fanatic religious zealots. This stereotype has taken off in recent years due to three main factors:

1. The issue of arranged marriage.
2. The Taliban’s decrees about women in Afghanistan.
3. Cultural oddities in some Muslim lands.

We’ll examine each in turn.

Arranged Marriages

Many women are wary of marriage because of the danger of being stuck with a bad man. The prevailing wisdom in our time is that dating helps people to make more informed choices by letting them see another person intimately before taking the vow of marriage. The concept of an arranged marriage, then, would seem like the antithesis of this approach. “How can you love somebody you don’t even know?” is the big question.

It may surprise many to learn that arranged marriages are not an Islamic requirement. There is no teaching in the Qur’an or in the hadiths that calls for this practice. It is, rather, a cultural phenomenon that exists in many Muslim countries even as it exists in most of the non-Muslim world from Zimbabwe to China. In fact, it is really the institution of dating that is the new practice which much of the world is struggling to accept. Islam merely regulates the conduct of people who want to form an arranged marriage. The three main points to know about Islam and arranged marriages are

Ask the Imam

Muslim men and women are taught not to look at the opposite sex with a lustful gaze. Even as the Bible records Jesus as describing it as adultery committed in the heart, Prophet Muhammad said, “A (lustful) gaze is a poisoned arrow from Shaytan.” Adultery, premarital sex, dating, even being alone with someone from the opposite sex you are not married or related to is forbidden in Islam.
Islam does not require it.

A woman cannot be forced into a marriage she doesn’t want to have.

The arranged pair can have an extended engagement and break it off if either party wishes to.

Are women sometimes forced into arranged marriages? Yes, but this abuse goes against the teachings of Islam. In a story about the Prophet Muhammad, a woman who had been married against her will went to the Prophet and complained about it; he annulled the marriage on the spot. If people fail to follow their religion, it is not the fault of the religion. The Bible forbids people to get drunk, yet alcoholism is one of the most serious national challenges facing Christian countries everywhere. So before people blame Islam for something that appears oppressive, they must learn what the religion teaches about it and then condemn the hypocrites who fail to follow their professed beliefs.

Arranged marriages work for most people, and they help to take some of the pressure off those who are looking for a mate without a lot of heartache and hassle. The growth of dating services and matchmakers in the West over the last few years is merely a throwback to the best elements of the arranged marriage system. The companions of the Prophet demonstrated many different ways of finding a mate. Some married for love, others were matched by friends, and still others agreed to arranged marriages brokered by relatives.

The Taliban and Women

Turning to the Taliban, the student-founded group that brought a certain kind of order to warlord-plagued Afghanistan, there are two problem areas with regard to women’s rights. The first involves some accounts by the Western press that distorted the motives of the rulers. The second concerns the misrepresentation of the actual conditions that exist in Afghanistan.

To begin then, some news reports have given the impression that the Taliban are at war with women. Specifically, after taking power, the Taliban banned most women from working and from going to school, and required that they wear large robes called *burqas*.

Most Muslims around the world were as outraged over these pronouncements as non-Muslims. But we were made to cringe even further when some Western media linked these pronouncements with Islam. Hearkening back to the days of the Iranian

---

**Just the Facts**

Recent studies have shown that arranged marriages actually last longer than those that result from dating or living together first. If the facts are to be believed, the divorce rate, which now stands at 50 percent in the United States, has shot up dramatically since the advent of the Sexual Revolution.
Revolution in the late 1970s, they made it seem as if Islam equaled women’s oppression. But none of the Taliban’s decrees concerning women is rooted in authentic Islamic Law. The Taliban leadership admitted as much when their representative in the United States remarked, “We are following Afghan customs that go back thousands of years.” They are a product of their national experience, and their policies show that their culture takes precedence over their religion.

Which brings us to the facts of life in Afghanistan. It was actually the Soviet invasion of Afghanistan in 1979 that turned this peaceful nation upside down. While there, the Soviets laid waste to most of the countryside and committed some of the worst atrocities against simple villagers that the world has ever seen. War has shaped every generation there since. When Ronald Reagan began covert American support for the mujahideen, the Afghan rebels, he inadvertently helped in the creation of a new political reality in the country.

After nearly 10 years of all-out war, the victorious mujahideen finally drove out the Soviets. But instead of laying down their arms and building a new society, these groups began fighting amongst themselves, further exacerbating the poverty of the nation. Individual warlords carved out their own private fiefs, and banditry and chaos were the order of the day throughout much of the 1990s. Enter the Taliban in 1996. They were a group of students from refugee religious schools who wanted to change things. They organized and recruited other Afghans who were sick of the suffering, and eventually the Taliban steamrolled over most of the warlords.

They inherited a country where people were starving, cities were in ruins, and the economy was of Stone Age proportions. Women were just as poor and desperate as the men were. Their idea for reform was that first husbands and fathers had to become stable with steady work and then women could take their place in society as well. Unfortunately, their logic backfired, and the lot of women worsened while that of men failed to improve. Islam does not condone their miscalculations or methods. They simply implemented policies as they saw fit. In their devastated land probably nothing they could have done would have worked. As of this writing, Afghanistan is under a United Nations embargo (furthering the suffering of the people) because the international fugitive Osama bin Laden has his base in the country. A famine threatening five million people has blanketed the nation’s countryside also. Under such circumstances, can any reform work for men or women?

**Ask the Imam**

The Taliban are not considered politically legitimate in most of the Muslim world. As of this writing, only two Muslim nations have recognized their governmental authority in Afghanistan.
Anomalies in the Muslim World

Practicing Muslims often discuss the primitive (un-Islamic) cultural values prevalent in certain parts of the Muslim world. To be fair, most Muslim women in the world are not oppressed or held back. In fact, women in such places as Malaysia, Tanzania, and Bosnia are highly educated and mobile. It is the utter inexplicability of strange cultural values, however, that people tend to take the most interest in.

The first anomaly I will examine is the so-called honor killings that sometimes occur in Palestine, Jordan, and other nearby places. The logic is that if a girl brings dishonor on the family by either dating or being promiscuous, then a family member must kill her to protect the family's reputation. There is no sanction in Islam for such a horrible practice, and Muslim scholars in those countries have issued fatwas against it. But people cling to culture more strongly than to religious dictates.

The second anomaly is that of female circumcision. This practice is mainly found in a few isolated regions of Africa and is not sanctioned by Islam. It is a pre-Islamic cultural relic that Christians, Muslims, and animists engage in equally. When the issue first came up among women's rights groups in the West, their initial response was to blame Islam. When the Prophet Muhammad heard about this practice, he tried to diminish its effects by restricting its application. Female circumcision is absolutely not endorsed in Islam.

Women’s Rights in Islam

The Qur’an says: “Women shall have rights similar to those of men.” There are, however, some specific issues of difference that are often misinterpreted in the West. People have charged that in Islam a woman’s testimony is only half of a man’s, that women are cheated out of half of their inheritance, that the Qur’an allows wife-beating, that men can divorce on a whim and have four wives, and that Islam promotes unfair segregation.

These charges are usually bandied about to prove that Islam is an unfriendly and chauvinistic religion toward women. When each is looked at in context and with accuracy, not false hype, then even these objections melt away. Let’s examine each of them separately.

Are Women “Half” of Men?

The charge that a woman’s testimony is only half of a man’s arises from a Qur’anic verse (2:282) that talks about business contracts. A woman is asked to have a friend come along when she negotiates a business contract. Later on, should the other party to the contract try to cheat her, her friend can remind her about the details in a court situation. Does this sound all that bad? In seventh-century Arabia, men routinely
cheated women and this Islamic rule leveled the playing field. Even today, such advice is still valid. A witness who will see to it that fairness is maintained is a good idea. In this and all other testimony, a woman’s word is accepted as equal to that of a man. The second witness for business contracts is merely a safeguard for the woman.

**Why Only Half an Inheritance?**

The Qur’an is very specific about who gets what after a person dies. In fact, the verses that deal with this topic (4:11–12) are so detailed that it takes a lawyer to apply the formulas for all of the heirs. One of the dictates is that a female will inherit a share that is only half that of the man’s. This seems unfair on the face of it, but remember the role of men in an Islamic family. The man has to support the family as a matter of religious obligation while the woman is not obligated to spend a dime.

When a man marries, he has to pay to the woman a dowry that can be as much as she wishes. The man is supposed to pay mandatory alimony and palimony, but the woman cannot be forced to share her fortune with her divorced husband. A man also has to support his unmarried sisters and his mother if his father dies.

**Does Islam Allow Wife Abuse?**

Domestic violence is one of the most important issues for women. In the West, this scourge has been called the invisible crime because of its widespread but underreported nature. Men in every society and every culture can become abusers. It is not promoted in any religion on earth, yet Islam is sometimes falsely charged with allowing it because of one misrepresented verse in the Qur’an:

“As to those women from whom you fear defiant sinfulness, first admonish them, then refuse to share your bed with them, and then, if necessary, slap them. Then if they obey you, take no further actions against them and do not make excuses to punish them.” (Qur’an 4:34)

Islam never gives any man the right to strike his wife for any reason except the one listed in this verse, namely, the wife is engaging in some type of evil activity such as drinking alcohol, abusing the children, or other really bad behavior. Given that most
women are not of this nature, physically punishing a wife should never arise in 99 percent of all Islamic marriages. Now, let’s take a closer look at this verse. If you will notice, two steps for reform and correction are mentioned first: talking with the woman; and if that doesn’t work, the man sleeping on the couch to express his displeasure. Islamic scholars have ruled that these two steps could be carried out indefinitely.

But what if a woman is so bad that she refuses to listen and doesn’t care if her husband is not sleeping with her (and she is still engaged in the sinful activity). The last recourse is for the husband to slap her. Now this is where Islam gets interesting. Muhammad, who was brushing his teeth at the time, was asked by a man, “What should we slap them with?” He answered, “With this.” And he held up his toothbrush. Look at that! Muhammad interpreted this verse in such a way as to make the physical punishment laughable. (Some Islamic scholars have ruled that a handkerchief can be substituted.)

So actually, if you look at the verse in context, and use the mandatory interpretation of the Prophet, there is never any reason for a man to hit his wife in any way that would harm her. Are there Muslim men who disregard this teaching and abuse their wives, and for no reason? Yes, and when Muhammad heard about some men like that in his time he said, “Those men who beat their wives are not the best among you.” On another occasion he remarked that it was insane for a man to beat his wife and then try to sleep with her later. The golden rule, aptly stated by Muhammad, is: “The best among you are those who are best to their families, and I am the best to my family.” He never laid a hand on a woman in anger.

To restate, Islam does not allow a man to beat his wife; it merely provides a way for the man to symbolically express his displeasure when his wife is committing a grave sin that threatens the stability of the family. Divorce may be the man’s next step.

**Polygamy in Islam**

The Qur’an allows a man to marry up to four wives. Before Islam there was no limit in Arabia to the number of wives a man could have. The Qur’an restricted this to a maximum of four. But at the same time the Qur’an gives a rule to any man considering multiple marriages: If you can’t treat each wife fairly, then marry only one (4:4). This disqualifies most men immediately. In practice, 99.99 percent of the marriages in the Muslim world are with a single woman. What could be the reason for this seemingly licentious privilege for men?

Islam is a faith that boasts a solution to every problem. If one is not immediately recognized, then the
scholars can do *ijtehad* and come up with an Islamically inspired answer. *Polygyny*, which is commonly mislabeled as “polygamy,” is the practice of having multiple wives or female partners. It is an often misunderstood solution to certain unique problems. (Both Judaism and Christianity allowed men to have multiple wives, though this practice has fallen out of favor since the Middle Ages.)

What do you do if there is a shortage of men, say, because of war? Only a limited number of women would find husbands. What about the rest? Multiple marriage is better than having unattached women become the secret mistresses of married men. What about men who have a hard time being monogamous, a situation we find in the modern Western world today, where cheating and multiple girlfriends make marriage an endangered institution? What if a woman is barren? Should she be divorced and cast aside in favor of a fertile wife? What about those women who want careers and don’t necessarily want a full-time man to look after?

Polygyny is the answer to all of these problems. It actually works in women’s favor by tying the man to each wife so much so that he is more aware of his responsibilities, trying to earn enough to support his extended family. Of course, polygyny is not for every woman, and there are those who will not have any part in it. (It is illegal in the United States and even some Muslim groups attempt to discourage the practice.) Islam says that’s fine, too. For other women it is a way to get a part-time husband rather than having no husband at all. Is this allowance ever abused? Yes, but as I explained before, people have shortcomings that the religion should not be blamed for.

## Divorce in Islam

Islam envisions marriage as the bedrock of a healthy society. But it also recognizes that two people may not be compatible. The Qur’an calls for men and women to make every effort to resolve their marital differences, and it even makes suggestions for mediators. However, if the discord is too great an obstacle, then divorce is the best option so that people can move on with their lives. Muhammad said, “The most hateful thing that God has created and allowed is divorce.” It is not a step to be taken lightly because it affects children and the community in many negative ways. Islam provides a way for the man to initiate divorce and, contrary to popular opinion, there is a method for female-initiated divorce as well.
Talaq: Male-Initiated Divorce

The procedure for divorce in Islam is relatively easy. If two people have resolved to end their marriage, then why should there be a long drawn-out and bitter fight in court? The male-initiated divorce is called *talaq*, or divorce. The man must pronounce to his wife three times the word “*Talaq!*” and then the first phase of the divorce procedure begins. From this point, all sexual relations must stop for a period of three menstrual cycles to see if the woman is pregnant. (If she is, they may try harder to reconcile.) During that time, the Qur'an forbids the man to force the woman out of the house or to emotionally abuse her. He still has to pay all the bills as well.

If the couple has sexual relations at any time during this waiting period, then the divorce pronouncement is null and void. If the time expires and they wish to remain married, the man needs to propose and another wedding must take place all over again. To emphasize to the man that divorce is no light matter, this system of *talaq* pronouncement and a waiting period can be done no more than three times. If the man initiates the *talaq* for the third time, he is forbidden to remarry her unless she has been married and divorced by another first. So the male-initiated divorce has a built-in cooling-off period with a maximum number of times that *talaq* can be done. All of this serves to make people think twice, literally, before they act.

Khul’: Female-Initiated Divorce

Women are not forever bound to men they want to leave. Islam provides a way for women to initiate divorce called *Khul’*. Basically, a woman can file papers with an Islamic court or a recognized scholar, asking to divorce her husband. Although she doesn’t need the permission of her husband, she does need a compelling reason. She must agree to give up all or part of her dowry in compensation to the soon-to-be divorced husband, the amount being determined by the importance of her reason for wanting to leave the marriage. Men are encouraged in the Qur’an, however, not to take any of it back on account of once having had a relationship with their now former wife. The waiting period of three menstrual cycles applies as well, after which the divorce is final.

Alimony and Palimony in Islam

Islam requires that a man pay both alimony and palimony. He must support his children in all aspects while they are under the care of his divorced wife. The mother gets automatic custody of her children, but fathers also have rights in Islam. When sons reach the age of seven or daughters pass their puberty, the father can ask that custody be reverted to him. Thus, the mother has the children when they need her the most and the father can also take his turn to raise them when they need the parenting style only fathers can provide.
Islam and the Dress Code

Islam has a unique dress code. Images of veiled women and turbaned men in flowing robes permeate Western conceptions of Muslims. Fashions in the Islamic world actually vary from place to place. Arabs dress differently from Pakistanis, who in turn dress differently from Muslim Philippinos. There are certain requirements that Islam places on both men and women in dress, and I will explore them here.

On Veils and Turbans

Men have the following dress requirements that can be expressed in a variety of fashionable ways:

➤ No tight clothes allowed.
➤ Men must allow a beard to grow if they can do it. (There is no sin or stigma on men who cannot grow a beard.)
➤ A turban or a kind of hat called a *kufi* is proper attire.
➤ The area from the knees to the navel must be covered in public at all times.
➤ Long pants or a loose gown and a shirt are considered an appropriate outfit.

*The hijab, or head scarf, is a requirement for Muslim women to wear in the presence of men they are not married or related to.*
Women have a slightly different dress requirement. The idea is that women are so alluring to men that males may judge them only by their looks or may try to accost them sexually. To protect women from this type of abuse and degradation, Islam asks them to cover their hair and wear loose-fitting clothes so that their full beauty is concealed. (Of course, the Qur’an tells men and women to lower their gaze and not to ogle each other.) Women do not need to wear their veil and loose clothes at home or when only women or the family members are present. Proper dress for Muslim females includes

- A veil to cover the hair (called a hijab).
- Loose-fitting clothes.
- Long pants or a dress to the ankles and a shirt, gown or blouse that covers to the wrists.
- Excessive makeup and perfume are frowned upon.

There are some customs that different Muslim women follow that are not required in Islam. These include wearing a veil over the face (niqab), wearing an all-enveloping robe called a burqa, and wearing socks and gloves. These women seek a greater level of piety and thus try to conceal from male view as much of their bodies as possible.

**Purdah and Islam**

Some Muslim cultures practice a form of female seclusion called purdah. This word originates from the Persian language and describes the system whereby women are not allowed to leave their homes except for the direst emergencies. This is not an Islamic custom but was picked up by some Muslims who settled in Iran and India where it was an established pre-Islamic tradition. Many people in the West have the misconception that this practice is widespread. The fact is that most Muslim women in the world are not locked away in their homes. Purdah is practiced mostly in the Indian subcontinent.
The Least You Need to Know

➤ Islam views women as equal partners with men in life as well as in religion. Islam does not teach that women are inferior to men.

➤ There are many misperceptions about the status of women in Islam that are fueled by a few high-profile cases. The vast majority of Muslim women live normal lives and face normal challenges.

➤ Poverty and illiteracy in general are the root cause for the plight of women in some developing nations, not religion.

➤ A Muslim man can marry up to four wives only if he can treat each equally. The norm is monogamy in the Muslim world.

➤ Islam does not allow wife beating. If abuse occurs in some Muslim homes, it is due to the same reasons that cause men to abuse their wives in the West.

➤ Islamic Law relieves women of all financial responsibility for the family and instead places the entire burden on the man.

➤ There is a definite procedure for divorce in Islam that can be initiated by the husband or wife. It includes a cooling-off period so that there is a chance for reconciliation.
Part 6

The History of Islam

History textbooks often mention the rise of Islam in a summarized fashion, as if it wasn’t as important as the Vikings, the pharaohs, or the Reformation. Very little space is given for describing the land of Arabia before Muhammad’s advent, for analyzing the events of his life, or for describing what happened after his passing. Muhammad changed the course of human history forever. Just who was he, and what did he accomplish and how?

After Muhammad’s passing, Islam produced a world-class civilization that many feel was more vibrant, long-lived, and vivacious than the Western world today. Great dynasties arose and fell in the Muslim heartlands, and the landscape from Morocco to China was dotted with fabulous cities containing many of the modern conveniences that we take for granted today. While there were setbacks, Islam always seemed able to absorb any challenges that came before it. In this part, I will provide a survey of Muslim history from the time just before Muhammad up until events that are affecting Islam to this very day.
Throughout the course of this book I have made many references to the Prophet Muhammad and his role as the central personality in Islam. Who was he, and how did he come to have enough courage to complete a mission that oftentimes seemed doomed to failure? In this chapter, I will finally take a thorough look at the life of Muhammad, from the conditions of the society he was born into until his migration from Mecca to Medina. It is interesting to note that this one man, who has done so much to change the course of human history, was actually a thrice-orphaned child who grew up tending sheep. As you learn more about his early life, you will gain a greater appreciation for the simple directness that Islam is famous for.

**Arabia: The Birthplace of Islam**

Arabia—the name conjures up images of sand dunes and exotic sights and scents. This mental picture is not far from the reality that has guided much of this peninsula's history. While it is true that vast deserts fill most of the land between the Red Sea and
the Indian Ocean, there are also scattered fertile valleys, oases, and sleepy coastal cities. Arabia is by far a land of many contrasts. Think of Arizona or New Mexico, and you’ll have a pretty good idea of the nature of the land there.

Mecca was a main stop on the East-West trade route. It owed its financial existence to the spending habits of the frequent travelers who passed through its otherwise barren valley. Religion was another form of big business, with hundreds of idols being worshipped inside the Ka’bah. To the Meccans, religion equaled money, so the more gods the merrier.

Arab culture in the sixth century centered on the concept of the tribe. A tribe was a collection of loosely related individuals headed by a leader called a shaykh. Subclans existed within the tribe, but internal differences were suppressed for the greater good of the whole. Wherever you were, your tribe was your nation.

Meet Muhammad’s Parents

Abdullah was a handsome young man of the Hashim clan, a subgroup of the dominant Quraish tribe of Mecca. He had been married to a young woman named Aminah for only about six months when he decided to join a caravan heading for Syria, where he hoped to make a quick fortune in the lucrative trade fairs of Damascus. By this time, his wife was pregnant and she tearfully bade her husband farewell. Little did she know that on his return journey, Abdullah would catch a fever and die in Yathrib, a city far to the north.

A few weeks later, Aminah confided in her servant, an African girl named Barakah, that she had had a dream in which a voice told her to name her unborn child “Muhammad.” This was an odd name and had never before been used among the Arabs. It meant highly praised. The baby was born in about the year 570. News of the tragic death of the father reached Mecca just before the baby’s birth, and the sorrowful grandfather, ‘Abdel Muttalib, comforted the newly widowed young wife by saying, “He will be like a little Abdullah to us.”

Thank God I’m a Country Boy!

The custom in those days was for city mothers to send their babies to foster mothers from the countryside for a few years so that the infants would grow up in a challenging environment. Every year women would come from the hinterlands and go door-to-door offering their services. No one went to Aminah’s door because they knew she was a widow and couldn’t pay much. At the same time, there was a frail-looking
foster mother named Halima, who couldn’t seem to find a baby to take. ‘Abdel Muttalib brought the pair together, and the baby Muhammad was taken to be raised by the tribe of Sa’ad.

Muhammad spent several years with the tribe—longer than was customary because of fears about a plague in Mecca—learning the life of a nomadic herder and picking up good manners from the rough but simple folk. When he was five years old, he was finally returned to the grateful Aminah, and his manners and good grammar impressed many. His mother wanted to show him off to her distant relatives in Yathrib and to visit her husband’s grave, so she took him and Barakah on the 10-day journey northward. She spent two weeks there weeping over her husband’s grave while Muhammad played with his cousins.

On the return trip, about halfway to Mecca, Aminah fell ill with fever and as she lay dying in her tent, she made Barakah promise to always look after Muhammad. The tearful servant and child buried the departed noble mother soon afterward, and the pair returned to ‘Abdel Muttalib’s home. A couple of years later, this loving grandfather would also reach the end of life. But before he died, he asked his son, Abu Talib, to look after Muhammad as if the boy were his own. Thus, Muhammad and Barakah went to live in his uncle’s poor household. Muhammad had been orphaned three times before the age of 10.

**War and Trade in Mecca**

Abu Talib put Muhammad to work tending his sheep in the hills above the city. For most of his teen years this was Muhammad’s only occupation. He was not able to carouse with the other boys his age in the city, who spent their youth drinking, visiting prostitutes, and fighting. The only excitement in Muhammad’s young life came when the Quraish tribe fought a battle against a rival tribe. Muhammad, along with the other boys his age, had the dangerous job of retrieving any enemy arrows that fell on the battlefield. Muhammad didn’t actually engage in any fighting himself.

**Muhammad: Citizen of Mecca**

Muhammad grew into a well-respected young man, and by his early twenties he had developed a reputation for honesty and integrity. He even had two nicknames: “the truthful” and “the trustworthy.” Having been inadvertently sheltered for most of his youth from urban values, he was known to be more mature than other young men his age.

Muhammad remained a poor man with limited opportunities until a lucky break came. A wealthy widowed woman named Khadijah was looking for a man to lead her caravan to Syria and conduct business on her behalf. Muhammad’s uncle got him the job, and he was so successful and honest that when he returned, Khadijah soon fell in love with him and asked him to marry her. He was 25, and she was 40. He agreed
to the match, and the couple would eventually have four daughters and two sons. (The sons would both die in infancy.)

After 15 years of blissful married life, however, Muhammad became restless. He never participated in idolatry because his established frame of reference (owing to his occupation as a shepherd) was the vastness of nature. He saw right through the gods made of sticks and animal heads. He wanted to know where he could find the answer to the mystery of life. This is the time when he began retreating to a lonely mountain cave that he had found earlier as a young man tending his uncle’s flocks. There he could think without interruption.

A Prophet Is Chosen

In Chapter 18, “Exploring the Sources of Islam,” I related the entire episode about the angel who came to Muhammad and revealed the first verses of the Qur’an. It was quite a spiritual experience, and as Muhammad ran home from the cave he looked up and saw the angel’s face, filling the space between the Earth and the sky.

“Muhammad, you are the messenger of Allah,” the angel said, “and I am Gabriel.” When Muhammad burst in through the front door, he frantically called to his wife, “Cover me! Cover me!”

While her husband shivered feverishly through the night, Khadijah went to consult her old Christian cousin, Waraqa. When the aged blind man heard what had happened, he told her that if Muhammad’s story was really true, then that was the same angel who had talked to Moses. Meanwhile, the angel came again to Muhammad, this time in his dreams: “You who are wrapped up, get up and warn people! Glorify your Lord and keep your clothes pure! Avoid the idols. Don’t give in charity expecting anything in return. For your Lord’s sake be patient.” (Qur’an 74:1–7)

When Khadijah returned home, she found her husband sitting up in bed. She asked him to rest further, but he replied, “Khadijah, the time for resting is over. Gabriel has asked me to warn people and to call them to Allah and His service. But whom shall I call, and who will listen?” Khadijah thought for a moment, and then told him she would be the first to listen. Thus, a woman became the first convert to Islam.

What Was Islam Asking of the Meccans?

Islam was teaching monotheism in a society that depended on idolatry for its financial health. Tourism, connected with the attraction of a Ka’bah filled with idols, fueled the local economy and gave a measure of authority to the dominant tribe of Quraish, which had custody of the holy sanctuary. But the change that Islam was asking of people ran far deeper than mere theology.

The Arabs did not believe in an afterlife or in a Day of Judgment, and the Qur’anic revelation was proposing both. In addition, the concept of accountability for one’s own actions before God was unnerving in a society where literally anything goes.
“What!” the Qur’an records the idolaters as saying, “When we’re dust and bones we’re going to be raised up again? That would be a lousy re-creation.” The Qur’an answered, “Yes, indeed, your ancestors and everyone who came after!” (Qur’an 56:48–49)

The moral and ethical codes of Islam emphasized honesty, charity, mercy, respect for others’ rights, and an elevated conception of the female gender. Muhammad was even pronouncing that animals had rights and could not be beaten or overworked. Perhaps the straw that broke the camel’s back, however, was Islam’s attack on blind tribal loyalty. The community of believers was a more important bond than who your relatives were. All of these ideas began to upset the Meccan leadership as more and more people began converting to this new religion.

**How Was Islam Received in Mecca?**

When Muhammad began to preach his message publicly, the Meccans didn’t know how to respond at first. Muhammad was a member of the Hashimite clan, a poor but respected arm of the Quraish tribe. Many people were converting, and some of them were relatives of powerful people. After a few months of hoping the problem would go away by itself, however, the Meccan leaders decided to respond.

Their first tactic was to try to bribe Muhammad, offering him money, a beautiful girl of his choosing, a free visit to a witchdoctor to cure him of his “demonic visions,” or even a prominent seat in the tribal council of Mecca, but he refused all offers. Next, they called upon the venerable Abu Talib to convince his nephew to stop his newfound occupation. Muhammad gave this famous reply in answer to his uncle’s entreaties, “Uncle, by God, if they put the sun in my right hand and the moon in my left, and asked me to give up my mission, I wouldn’t do it until either Allah made His way succeed or I died trying.”

The angry Meccans began to harass any Muslims who came near the Ka’bah to pray. Thugs would attack those Converts who had few family connections, bullying and beating them in the streets; and the citizenry would turn a blind eye. Slaves who accepted Islam were tortured by their masters more mercilessly than ever before. One woman burned her slave’s forehead with a hot poker, and another slave owner staked out his slave in the hot desert sand and rolled heavy stones on his chest.

The poets of the city began weaving slanderous prose and reciting it in the marketplace. When Muhammad went out to greet incoming caravans to call them to Islam, these poets would follow behind, shouting, “Here is a madman. Don’t listen to him.” Because Muhammad and his followers were
verbally abused wherever they went, many people who wanted to convert to Islam were forced to keep their choice a secret. (Three of Muhammad’s daughters were divorced by their idolatrous husbands and sent home in disgrace.)

After two years, the Meccans decided to expel Muhammad’s entire clan to a barren valley a few miles outside the city. Hundreds of men, women, and children were rounded up by armed Meccan warriors and marched into a steep-walled valley with nothing but the clothes on their backs. This was the Muslim “Trail of Tears.” Muhammad and the people of his clan were forced to live there for three long years with only limited food supplies that were smuggled in from sympathetic Meccans. The deprivation was so bad that Muhammad’s beloved wife, Khadijah, fell ill and died. The virtual prisoners were released only after some visiting Arab delegations shamed the Meccans into lifting their cruel policy.

**The African Migrations**

Muhammad forbade his followers to fight back, even though he himself had to endure people throwing garbage at him and putting thorns in front of his door. Any resistance on the part of the Muslims would have been seized upon by the Meccans as an excuse to wipe out the Muslims in one blow. Muhammad was, nevertheless, heartbroken to see such insane violence directed against his followers, so he prayed for guidance and made a plan of escape (at least for a few of his followers). He would send the most vulnerable members of his community across the Red Sea into the Christian kingdom of Abyssinia. One group of a dozen made it safely and without notice. Soon thereafter Muhammad sent a larger group of about 80 men and women. Such a large departure wasn’t without notice, however; and the Meccans, concerned that Muhammad was trying to open up a new base of strength, sent two of their most skilled ambassadors to petition the Abyssinian king to return the refugees as criminals.

The wise king brought the representatives of the Muslims before him and asked to know more about Islam. The Muslim leader, Ja’far, explained the details of the faith. After a heated exchange with the Meccan ambassadors involving the Muslim conception of Jesus, the king decided to allow the Muslims to stay in his country.

**Muhammad’s Night Journey and Ascension**

After 11 years in Mecca the Muslims numbered over 200 men, women, and children. Daily, Muhammad and his followers endured violence at the hands of the Meccans,
and it seemed that the situation would never improve. But one morning, Muhammad emerged from a relative’s house, in which he had spent the night, and made a public announcement so dramatic that some new converts to Islam threatened to renounce their faith. Muhammad said that he had been taken to Jerusalem, had ascended from there into Heaven, and then had returned to Mecca—all in the same night!

How did Muhammad explain all of this? He said that after he had finished his late-night prayer, the angel Gabriel came to him accompanied by a fantastic horselike creature called the Buraq, whose every stride took it to the furthest extent of its eyesight. Muhammad mounted the Buraq, and they reached Jerusalem within a few minutes. The spirits of the past prophets appeared, and Muhammad led them all in prayer. Then Muhammad re-mounted the Buraq, and Gabriel ascended with him into the next realm and through the seven layers of Heaven.

Muhammad was able to see Paradise and all of its delights, and he was greeted by some of the prophets that dwelled within. He was taken to the furthest edge of the seventh Heaven beyond which Allah manifests His power. They could go only as far as the edge, and Muhammad reported seeing lights and sounds and sweeping streams of energy that he couldn’t describe in words. When the tour was over, Gabriel took Muhammad back to Jerusalem and then back to Mecca.

The Meccans, of course, took this as proof that Muhammad really was crazy. That morning, the streets were abuzz with what Muhammad was proclaiming. Some Muslims rushed to Abu Bakr to get his opinion on the matter. Without hearing anything from the Prophet yet, Abu Bakr exclaimed, “By God! If Muhammad himself said it, then it’s true. He tells us that the Word of God comes to him anytime of the day or night, and we believe him. Isn’t that a greater miracle than what we’re doubting here today?”

Abu Bakr then joined the throngs in front of Muhammad and asked him questions about Jerusalem, the kinds of buildings, the main features, and other peculiarities, because Abu Bakr had himself stayed there once. Muhammad answered the questions accurately, and this caused even more confusion because everyone knew he had never been there before. Then Muhammad told of a caravan he had passed on the road back to Mecca. He described it in detail, and a few hours later it arrived. The idolaters backed off their claims of insanity and resumed their old line of attack that Muhammad was gaining converts by means of sorcery.
This event is considered noteworthy by Muslims and is celebrated every year with religious speeches, parties, and gatherings. The journey to Mecca is called the Isra’, and the ascension to heaven is called the Me’raj. Today the famed Dome of the Rock stands over the place where Muhammad made his journey into the next realm.

The Great Escape!

Meccan attacks continued, and Muhammad himself was no longer safe from their brutality. His uncle and protector, Abu Talib, passed away, removing the last facade of family support. Muhammad had to do something to save his beleaguered followers and himself. After unsuccessfully petitioning the leaders of the nearby city of Ta’if to accept him and his people, Muhammad chanced to run into a group of people visiting from Yathrib. He explained Islam to them over a campfire outside the city, and they accepted it! Two years later a larger group of 70 people, representing the Auws and Khazraj tribes, pledged their belief in Islam, all in secrecy at night lest the Meccans find out. Before leaving, they invited Muhammad to rule their civil-war-prone city. A way of escape had opened up and not a moment too soon!
By the year 622, the Meccans, after 13 years of enduring a movement that challenged every facet of their tribal way of life, decided to end Islam once and for all. They intended to murder Muhammad and wove a carefully contrived plot in which a group of young men, one from every major tribe, would sneak into his house at night and all would stab him (so that Muhammad’s clan would be powerless to take revenge on anyone).

Muhammad got wind of this devious scheme and ordered his followers to pack their bags and leave for Yathrib in small groups over several days so as not to attract any undue attention. When nearly every one of the Muslims had escaped, Muhammad and Abu Bakr made their exit as well. The Quraish set a huge bounty on Muhammad’s head. Soon, Meccan warriors were combing the countryside. After eluding their pursuers, Muhammad finally made a triumphant entry into Yathrib, which soon took the name of Medina.

The Least You Need to Know

➤ Arabia was one of the many crossroads of civilization. Caravan routes linking Asia with Europe traversed much of that desert land.

➤ Muhammad had developed a reputation for honesty and trustworthiness in his youth and earned nicknames to that effect.

➤ The Arabs of Mecca opposed Muhammad’s preaching and persecuted his followers.

➤ Muslims believe that Muhammad was given a tour of Heaven by the archangel Gabriel. This is the famous ascension of Muhammad from Jerusalem.
Islam was a persecuted religion in its earliest years. At any moment it could have been eliminated because the Muslims in Mecca were a scattered and vulnerable lot. Conditions became so unbearable that Muhammad had to send some of his followers to Africa to escape the wrath of the Meccans, and Muhammad himself had to flee for his life to Medina. But even as the Muslims regrouped in Medina, the Meccans initiated armed attacks against them to keep them under pressure.

Over the next several years, the Meccans would mount three invasions of the north that almost succeeded in vanquishing the fledgling religious movement. But the Muslims, though vastly outnumbered in every battle, had an unshakable faith in their beliefs. The Meccans had no such motivating factor, only blind hatred. Muhammad led his community through these and other crises and continued to organize his followers and train them in the ways of Islam. By the time he passed away, the movement he started was poised and ready to challenge the superpowers of the world.
The First Islamic State

Muhammad and Abu Bakr entered Medina to great fanfare. Everyone, Arab and Jew alike, lined the streets to see this man of Mecca who claimed to be a prophet. As he wound his way through the streets, shouts of “Come stay in my house!” echoed from many lips. Muhammad, however, knowing that to disappoint anyone on his first day would be unwise, dismounted his camel and announced he would stay wherever the camel stopped. It wandered for a few minutes, paused briefly in front of one man’s house, and then moved on until it sat down in a vacant lot near the city center. Muhammad would lodge in the lucky man’s home where the camel had paused while the great mosque of Medina would be built.

Before construction started, however, there was a serious problem to attend to. The Muslims who had fled Mecca came with little more than the clothes on their backs. Muhammad mobilized the good-natured converts in Medina to the benefit of the hundreds of destitute Meccan refugees. He asked the people of Medina to “adopt” their brothers from Mecca and share half their goods with them. Every family adopted one of the newcomers, and the immediate problem of poverty was alleviated.

It took seven months of hard labor to build the mosque and an attached apartment for the Prophet. But after it was finished, the simple brick building with a palm leaf roof provided a focal point for the Muslim community. It was there that Muhammad would conduct meetings and accept new converts from surrounding tribes. The mosque became a kind of community center, city hall, classroom, prayer area, and homeless shelter for the steady stream of destitute new Muslims who needed a place to sleep at night.

Muhammad wrote a city charter, guaranteeing the rights of all citizens, and he also had his secretaries draft treaties of friendship with the local Jewish tribes and with other communities in central Arabia. Within Medina, the people of two main Arab tribes were rapidly converting, and Muslims were preaching and teaching Islamic brotherhood on a constant basis. New verses of the Qur'an were continually being revealed, with new social rules, civil and criminal laws, and doctrines to live by. This was the first Islamic state, and it is to this time that Muslims today hearken when they talk of reestablishing Islam as a political system.

The Desperate Times

The Meccans greatly feared the growth of Muslim power in Medina. The main caravan route to Syria passed through that city, and they thought that Muhammad might try to interfere with their trade. (After all the Meccans had done to him, it was only
natural to fear retaliation.) In time, the Meccans carried out a sort of guerilla warfare against the Muslims. Small groups of Meccan warriors would frequently attack the outskirts of Medina, as well as any travelers and farmers in the area. This forced Muhammad to organize regular patrols, and frequent clashes in the hills became common.

**The Battle of Badr**

A particularly large caravan was returning to Mecca from Syria. It was laden with trade goods, and the people of Mecca anticipated it eagerly. The master of the caravan, Abu Sufyan, became afraid that the Muslims of Medina might try to intercept it in revenge for the raids that the Meccans had been making. He sent a message ahead with a fast rider telling his Meccan compatriots to come to his aid if need be.

The Meccans, who were looking for any opportunity to galvanize their populace against the Muslims, decided to raise an army and attack Medina. They recruited a thousand warriors who were well equipped with horses, camels, armor, and supplies. Abu Sufyan had said in his message that he was going to stop at an oasis called Badr, so that’s where the Meccan army decided to march first.

Back in Medina, Muhammad found out about the caravan and the massive threat. He managed to cobble together a dedicated, though poorly equipped, force of 313 men. The Muslims, thinking that the Badr oasis would be the likely location for the caravan to go, made their way there in all haste. After a couple of days of hard marching, they arrived at the wells first. Muhammad ordered his men to fill in the wells with sand and to take up positions on a small ridge.

Abu Sufyan decided to avoid the wells altogether and was safely on his way back to Mecca, but the Meccan army disregarded his written pleas to retreat. The thirsty horde arrived at Badr only to find the water blocked and a force of men ahead of them standing under a black flag. The idolaters, seeing that they vastly outnumbered the Muslims, engaged them in a fierce battle. The Muslim ranks never wavered, however, and they turned back the tide, forcing the Meccans to retreat in disarray.

The Muslims won a splendid victory and suffered only minimal losses, while the defeated Meccans returned home in shame. They lost several of their top leaders, and nearly 100 men were killed or taken prisoner. Under Muhammad’s orders, captured soldiers were given their freedom if they each taught 10 Muslims to read. The Qur’an explained that this tremendous victory was due to God’s favor and the staunch determination of the true believers.

**Just the Facts**

The Battle of Badr took place in the month of Ramadan in the year 624. The Muslims were observing their dawn-to-dusk fast yet despite their thirst and vastly smaller force, they prevailed over the Meccan idolaters.
The Battle of Uhud

The Meccans were not at all content with their defeat. Their poets recited verses lamenting the Muslim victory and called for revenge. A year later the Meccans managed to organize an even larger army consisting of 3,000 men and set out to challenge the Muslims once again. Their destination was a small mountain called Uhud, which stood just outside of Medina.

When Muhammad was informed about the devastating force that was about to challenge his community, he called a council of war and asked for his companions’ opinions about what to do. The consensus was to go out and meet them in battle, rather than fight them within the city. Accordingly, Muhammad organized a force of 1,000 men and marched them to the far side of Mount Uhud.

When the Meccan forces arrived on the field of battle, a treacherous commander on the Muslim side pulled out and took 300 of his men with him. He was what was known as a hypocrite: someone who pretended to accept Islam in Medina just to appear trendy but who secretly worked against it whenever possible. The disheartened Muslims now had only 700 troops to meet 3,000. Muhammad, thinking quickly, placed 50 archers on a side pass to prevent any Meccan cavalry from launching a rear assault and placed the main body of his forces into a defensive position.

The onslaught of the Meccans was swift and fierce, but the Muslim lines held. At one point, Muhammad ordered a charge and the Meccans began to flee in confusion. It began to look as if the Muslims would achieve another stunning victory, but the archers on the hill, seeing their chance at participating in the war begin to diminish with every yard the Meccans retreated, left their posts and ran down into the battlefield to join the fight. This was the worst mistake they could have ever made.

The commander of the Meccan cavalry, Khalid ibn Walid, saw his chance, and he raced his mounted warriors behind Uhud and through the pass and attacked the surprised Muslims from behind. The Meccan infantry, seeing the new development, arrested their retreat and attacked anew; thus, the Muslim forces were caught in the middle. In the confusion, dozens of Muslims were killed and the Prophet was knocked down and slightly wounded.

The Muslims hastily retreated up toward the steep mountainside and took up positions there as the elated Meccans combed the battlefield, looking for dead and wounded Muslims to mutilate and torture. The Meccans withdrew later that day, and the Muslims returned to Medina, chastened that some of their number had disobeyed orders, causing the battle to be lost.

Just the Facts

The hypocrites of Medina were people who pretended to be Muslims. They gave such trouble to Muhammad and the real Muslims that the Qur’an devotes dozens of verses to their description and their negative effects on the Muslim community.
**The Battle of the Ditch**

As you learned in Chapter 16, “Jews in Islam,” the Muslims and Jews of Medina eventually engaged in civil war. The two Jewish tribes of Banu Qaynuqa and Banu Nadir both broke their treaties in turn and were consequently expelled from the city. The last Jewish tribe, the Banu Quraiza, still lived peacefully with the Muslims.

Representatives of the Banu Nadir tribe, which was now settled in a city named Khaybar, traveled to Mecca and roused them to end Islam once and for all. Under their guidance, the Meccans became allies with numerous tribes all throughout Arabia, and a force of over 10,000 warriors was assembled—the largest Arabia had ever seen! This massive horde converged upon Medina with the goal of destroying Islam and enslaving any Muslims who might survive its brutal assault.

The Muslims had precious little time to organize a defense. A Persian convert named Salman al Farsi suggested that a wide and deep trench could be dug all along the exposed front section of the city, while the walls in the rear of the city could be blocked and fortified. The Prophet and his companions agreed to this plan, and the trench was finished just before the enemy arrived.

For almost a month the frustrated Meccans tried to breach the trench, but their men were beaten back every time under a furious rain of arrows. The cavalry was, of course, useless because the chasm was too wide to jump. The Muslims inside the city were running low on food, but their spirits were high. The Banu Nadir, however, succeeded in getting the Banu Quraiza to join the alliance. They held the rear flank of the city and could attack the Muslims from behind.

The Meccans’ strategy was to initiate an all-out assault from the front and rear of the city, and it would have succeeded except for the fact that Muhammad used a double agent to sow doubts in the minds of the alliance’s leaders. He was able to make the Banu Quraiza hesitate and to split the Meccans from their Bedouin allies with false rumors and reports. A fierce desert sandstorm blew over the plains the next night, and the alliance broke apart. The once proud coalition dissolved and quit the siege.

**The Conquest of Mecca**

The Muslim victory over the Meccans and their allies elevated their status among the tribes of Arabia. Numerous tribal chiefs were converting, and it seemed as if the Muslims would become strong enough to rival Mecca. But the following year, during
the annual pilgrimage season in Arabia, Muhammad organized a group of 1,400 pilgrims to march to Mecca for religious rites. They were virtually unarmed!

When the Meccans found out about the Muslim pilgrims, they were alarmed. They sent their cavalry to prevent the Muslims from entering the city, but the Muslims took a different route and set up camp just outside Mecca. The stunned idolaters sent representatives to Muhammad, and the two sides hammered out a 10-year-long peace treaty called the Treaty of Hudaibiyah. Both sides agreed to halt any hostilities and to rein in their allies. Although the Meccans stipulated that the Muslims could only begin making pilgrimages the following year, the Muslims returned to Medina with a new sense of security.

But the peace treaty was to be short-lived. A tribe allied to the Meccans attacked a tribe allied to the Muslims and massacred a large number of their people. This violated the treaty, and Abu Sufyan, the Meccan caravan leader, rushed to Medina to plead for another chance. Muhammad refused to see him. A couple of weeks later, a force of over 10,000 Muslims marched upon Mecca. They arrived at night and made camp all around the hills above the city. Muhammad ordered each group of soldiers to light several campfires so that it would look as if their already overwhelming numbers were much greater.

The Meccans surrendered peacefully that night, and the next morning Muhammad led the victorious Muslims in a triumphal march into the city. When his soldiers took up positions throughout the city, he led a column toward the Ka’bah and found a large throng of Meccans standing there. These were the people who had tortured him and his followers for years. By any standard of justice he could have had them punished. They called out to him, “What are you going to do with us?” He replied, “You are all forgiven today. Go back to your homes. You are all free.”

Muhammad showed the utmost mercy, and Mecca was taken without a fight. The next task was to remove the idols from the Ka’bah, and the Muslims joyfully executed this task, turning the venerated gods of the Arabs into a pile of rubble in the street. Muhammad spent a few weeks in Mecca and organized its administration, after which he returned to Medina, the recognized seat of the Islamic State.

Confronting the Superpowers

The Byzantine Roman Empire and the Persian Empire were the two superpowers of the day. Muhammad had sent letters to the emperors of both countries; the Byzantines seemed undecided about Islam, but the Persians declared their hostile intentions. Nevertheless, it was the Byzantines who first threatened the Muslims. Their emperor, Heraclius, ordered his troops to menace the allies of the Muslims in
northern Arabia. To counter this threat, Muhammad marched an army all the way to the borders of Syria. Mysteriously, the Byzantines backed down and withdrew their army.

**Taking Another Look at Muhammad’s Marriages**

Some Western scholars have charged that Muhammad was licentious on account of the many marriages he contracted. Popular myth has maligned the Prophet and cast a shadow over an otherwise universally accepted great leader. But what was the nature of these marriages, and do they demonstrate a weakness for pleasure? Let’s examine this issue more closely.

When Muhammad married Khadijah in Mecca, he was 25 years old and she was 40. He lived with her monogamously for almost a quarter of a century (23 years). He didn’t take another wife until after she died, and he was over 50 years old. If he was licentious, the time to have married multiple women would have been in his youth, not when he was an old man charged with the endless duties of being a prophet. (He used to spend most of his days in meetings and a portion of every night in the mosque praying.)

He remarried only at the insistence of his companions, and his new wife was an overweight widow. His next marriage was to the daughter of his friend Abu Bakr. Contrary to what is commonly assumed, this girl, named A’ishah, was not 9 years old when the marriage took place. When the engagement was announced, she was 12 (in those days puberty came around that time), and the actual marriage didn’t take place until she was over 16. Neither she nor her parents had any objection to the marriage, and she, herself, always expressed her love and affection for the Prophet even into the many decades that she outlived him. (A’ishah became one of the most important early scholars of Islam.)

All the rest of Muhammad’s marriages occurred in Medina and were spread out over 10 years. After the three wives already mentioned, he married 11 other women. With the exception of one divorcée, all of them were widows or freed captives of war. Muhammad asked their consent before marrying each, and they readily agreed. Muhammad divided his time with each equally and helped with the housework in each wife’s apartment. Again, if he was addicted to sex, he would have married all young women. Instead, they were mostly old and/or widowed.

Each wife had a special status in the community. They were known as the Mothers of the Believers and people deferred to them as members of the Prophet’s family. After the Prophet passed away, his nine surviving wives took up the task of being teachers and social activists. Many Muslims today name their daughters after the Prophet’s wives.
The Passing of a Prophet

Muhammad conducted one final pilgrimage to Mecca when he was nearing 63 years of age. He delivered a famous address, known as his Farewell Speech, and then retired to Medina where he tried to conduct his duties as best he could. By this time, however, he was frail and weak, owing to age and an unsuccessful poisoning attempt directed against him years before by a woman belonging to the Banu Nadir. Finally, after suffering through several days of an intense fever, Muhammad raised his eyes to Heaven and called out, “Better the next world on high.” With his head resting in his beloved A’ishah’s lap, Muhammad passed away. The date was the 8th of June in the year 632. He was buried in the place where he breathed his last. Today the famous green dome of the Prophet’s Mosque in Medina marks the spot where his grave lies.

His life and mission touched upon the hearts of a people who were living in superstition and idolatry. The teachings he promoted uplifted the status of women, gave rights to the poor, regulated the moral and social life of his followers, and provided a path to salvation for millions. Michael Hart, in his book *The One Hundred Most Influential People*, ranked Muhammad as the most important person who ever affected our world because of his example, success, and enduring message. He was able to successfully fuse the tenets of religion and politics on a level no one has been able to do since. Writers from Washington Irving to Mahatma Gandhi have praised him for his sincerity and noble character. Such was Muhammad, the Messenger of Allah:

“Philosopher, orator, apostle, legislator, warrior, conqueror of ideas, restorer of rational dogmas, of a cult without images; the founder of twenty terrestrial empires and of one spiritual empire, that is Muhammad. As regards all standards by which human greatness may be measured, we may well ask, is there a man greater than he?” (Lamartine, Historie De La Turquie, vol. II, pp. 276–277, 1854)

The Least You Need to Know

- The Muslims were attacked three times by the idolaters of Mecca, and each time they survived.
- Muhammad made a treaty with the Meccans, but they broke it. The Muslims then marched to Mecca in force, and the city surrendered without a fight.
- Muhammad forgave all the people who had persecuted him and let them go free after his conquest of Mecca.
- Muhammad was born in the year 570 in Mecca and died in the year 632. He is buried in Medina.
The Muslim community had to deal with a temporary crisis of faith after the death of Prophet Muhammad. For 23 years Muhammad had guided his followers, teaching them a completely new tradition and acting as their spiritual, legal, and moral focal point. What would become of Islam without him? Drawing upon the Qur’an, the answer became clear: “Muhammad is no more than a Messenger.” “Many were the Messengers who passed away before him. If he dies or is killed, will you turn and run?” (Qur’an 3:144)

The Muslims not only didn’t give up their faith, they quickly elected a leader and quelled several internal uprisings as well as confronted dangerous external threats. The first four rulers of the Muslim world were so faithful to Islamic precepts that the
period of their rule is known affectionately as the *Khulafa ar Rashidah*, or the Period of the Rightly Guided Caliphs. However, within the space of 30 years the political structure came under such pressure that the egalitarian democratic system of elections gave way to a hereditary monarchy that forever changed the Islamic political tradition until the fall of the Ottomans in 1918. How did this happen and what were the major events that transpired?

**Islam on Government**

The government of the Prophet Muhammad was unique in that he was the sole authority due to his position as the spokesman of God’s will. He appointed governors in many cities and territories throughout Arabia and gave them tremendous leeway in how they carried out their duties. His only stipulation was that they abide by the Qur’an and his *Sunnah*. The people of any locality, if they felt their governor was unjust or slack in his religious character, could petition the Prophet, who would investigate and appoint a new governor if necessary.

Non-Muslims had equal legal status as free citizens, and their religious liberties were respected. By the decree of the Prophet, further backed up by the Qur’an, forced conversion was forbidden, and any non-Muslim who felt wronged by a Muslim could be assured of a fair hearing. The most prominent companions of Muhammad formed the core of the informal administration, and their sincere belief in the truth of Islam emboldened them to work tirelessly at the many tasks at hand. No real structure of government existed beyond that, and as long as Muhammad was there, none was needed.

One practice that Muhammad established early on was a regular schedule of public meetings with the community members to get their advice on political actions, alliances, governors, and other mundane affairs. These meetings were held in the Mosque of Medina for the most part, and they presented a chance for all members to speak their minds on the issues that faced the community. Muhammad never silenced anyone nor took action against those who expressed differing opinions. Moreover, he often concurred with the majority consensus. This was the *Shura*, or Tradition of Consultation, which forms the basis of the representative political structure in Islam.

After Muhammad passed away and was buried, one such Shura was called to determine what the Muslims should do next. The main issue on the table was, of course, who should lead the community now that the Prophet was gone. (It was understood that this new leader would not be a prophet and would assume only a political role.) Muhammad himself had given numerous instructions to his companions on the functions...
and responsibilities of the future head of state. The top position would be an elected post, and the tenure of that leader would last as long as he abided by the tenets of Islam. Thus, an Islamic government consists of a *khalifa*, or caliph, and a representative council that can override the caliph if he oversteps his bounds.

**The Caliphate of Abu Bakr As-Sadeeq**

The meeting to choose a caliph, or successor to the Prophet’s political function, got under way quickly and was attended by all of the prominent companions of Muhammad, except for those in other cities who could not arrive in time. The Medinan converts proposed that one of their number should be elected as the leader, but after heated debate it was decided that Abu Bakr, who was from Mecca, was the most qualified to lead. He had been Muhammad’s closest friend and had been given the job of leading the prayers in the main mosque when the Prophet lay ill. Abu Bakr stood before the citizens of Medina and gave an acceptance speech, which included the following:

“O people, I have been chosen to be your leader, even though I’m no better than any of you. If I do right, help me. If I do wrong, correct me.” (Rafi Ahmed Fidai, *Concise History of Muslim World*, page 68)

Not everyone who had become a Muslim in Arabia was sincere. Some Arab tribes, especially those far away from the area of Mecca and Medina, accepted Islam only because it seemed to be the trend. This fact became immediately clear when several of these tribes rebelled and declared that they would no longer pay their *zakah* and do other Islamic duties. To make matters worse, Arab Bedouins began raiding Medina and creating all sorts of trouble for the Muslims.

Abu Bakr had few troops left in Medina, since he had just sent a large army to Syria to guard against the Byzantines and their allies, who were menacing some tribes allied to the Muslim state. That large army was under the command of a teenager named Usamah bin Zayd, whom the Prophet himself had appointed for that task. Even with most of the army deployed in Syria, Abu Bakr was still able to gather a small force to defend Medina against the increasing Bedouin attacks.

After securing the capital, he ordered his small but tough army to subdue the Arab rebellions in the hinterlands. Before beginning the battle, however, the Muslim generals invited the rebels to return to Islam, and many tribes gave in without a fight. Still, a few unruly groups were hungry for a war and engaged the Muslim forces. But in battle after
battle, the Muslims were victorious over the rebellious Bedouins and made them sign treaties of peace. This series of minor wars was known as the Wars of the Riddah and lasted only about a year.

The two great empires of the day were the Byzantines and the Persians. The Prophet had sent letters to the rulers of both lands inviting them to Islam, and they had both refused, even to the point of starting to fight against Muslim communities in northern Arabia. The Persians were supplying arms and money to the rebellious Bedouins in an attempt to bring about the defeat of Islam. In the interests of self-defense, the Muslims felt compelled to go on the offensive.

One Muslim leader, who lived near the border of Persian-controlled Iraq, came to Medina to ask for protection for his people from constant Persian threats and attacks. Abu Bakr sent an army of 8,000 men in the year 633 to engage the Persians in battle. With a series of stunning victories, the outnumbered Muslims captured huge areas of the western Persian Empire. Within one year, most of the lands of southern Iraq were firmly in the control of the Muslims.

On another front, Muslims in southern Palestine were under constant danger of attack from the Byzantines. Abu Bakr ordered the army to shift into Syria to meet the new threat. After a few important battles, the Muslims drove out the Byzantines and secured the entire northern frontier of Palestine. In one battle, a group of Muslim women, who were acting as the medical corp for the Muslim army, were surrounded and attacked by the Byzantines. The women picked up their tent poles and used them as spears to fight the raiding enemy soldiers. The short swords of the Byzantines proved worthless against the women’s long poles. The women held the enemy away and killed many of them.

Umar ibn al Khattab and Persia’s Defeat

Two years and three months had passed with Abu Bakr as caliph, but he was very old and eventually fell ill. Just before he passed away, he called a council of the most important companions of the Prophet and discussed with them who should rule after him. He suggested that Umar ibn al Khattab should lead the Ummah, or community and everyone agreed that he was the best choice. A few days later Umar was confirmed in a public vote as the new caliph.

Umar had no time to rest. Pressure from the Persian army on the Iraqi front was increasing, and action was called for. A new army was sent from Medina to a place near the Euphrates River called Qadisiyyah. The people who lived in the area threw in
their lot with the Muslims and rebelled against their Persian overlords who had always treated them harshly. After a fierce battle, the badly outnumbered Muslims defeated the Persian army and took control of almost all of the land west of the Euphrates River.

Meanwhile, in the West, the Muslim forces facing the Byzantines in Syria were winning battle after battle. In almost every case, the Muslim army had only to surround a city, cut off its supplies, and ask the people to surrender, promising them that they would not be harmed. Nearly every city in Syria fell to the Muslims this way, and almost no actual fighting occurred.

After the Muslims took the huge city of Damascus, the Byzantine emperor, in far away Turkey, decided to organize an army of 250,000 men to fight the Muslims. At a place called Yarmuk, in the year 637, an army of 40,000 Muslims defeated the Byzantines and forced them to retreat. In that same year Jerusalem surrendered to the Muslims, and Umar himself came to accept the surrender of the city. Palestine, Syria, Egypt, and Iraq were in Muslim hands for good.

Umar helped to further organize the national Muslim government. The expanding Muslim world was divided into eight provinces, each ruled by a governor appointed by the caliph. He also reorganized the system of tax collection and the treasury. He ruled as caliph for 10 years until a Persian assassin stabbed and killed him. As he lay dying from his knife wound, he appointed a committee of important Muslims to choose a new caliph within three days of his death. After a few days of debate, the choice fell upon Uthman ibn Affan, who was a trusted companion of the Prophet.

**Uthman ibn Affan and the Great Conspiracy**

Uthman became the leader at a time when Muslims were making strides on all fronts. To add to this progress, Uthman ordered the building of the first Muslim navy. He also made sure that an official copy of the Qur’an was available in every main Muslim
city. Everything seemed to be going well for the Muslims, but some new problems began to arise. Uthman was not as strict as Umar and was hesitant about confronting corruption. People loved the gentle character of Uthman, but when it became known that some of the Muslim governors in the provinces were corrupt, people began to complain that Uthman wasn’t taking strong enough action against them.

Part of the problem was that the Muslim administrators in the new territories relied heavily on the system of local government that the Persians and Byzantines used. The Muslims were still not skilled at governing large cities and lands, so they often left in place whatever city workers and tax collectors they found there. Financial abuse and mismanagement were rampant, and oversight was lacking. Uthman removed some of the inept governors, but others, such as those in Syria and Egypt, became so powerful that they sometimes simply ignored the caliph’s written orders. A third problem was that these most powerful governors were from the same family as Uthman, and many people accused him of playing favorites. Opposition soon spread throughout the empire.

A group of people came to Medina from the different provinces to complain about their governors. Uthman listened to them and promised that he would take action. As they were returning to their own province by caravan, a non-Muslim saboteur planted on a man a fake letter ordering all the people who complained about their governors to be killed when they returned home. He signed the letter “Uthman.” When the people in the caravan found this letter, they believed that Uthman intended to murder them.

Accordingly, they returned to Medina, surrounded Uthman’s house, and demanded he come out. When they showed him the letter they had found, Uthman said the letter was a forgery and that he didn’t have anything to do with it. The mob refused to believe him and killed him. To make matters worse, they wouldn’t flee the city and instead stayed to publicly press their case. The Muslims in Medina were shocked and in grief. Uthman was loved by all for his gentleness and kindness, and now he had been cruelly murdered.

**Ali ibn Abi Talib**

Ali was selected as the next caliph of the Muslims by a vote of the people in the main mosque in Medina. Soon, people from all over Arabia came to give him their pledge. But the immediate problem that faced him was the same one that had faced Uthman: what to do about the rebellious governors in Iraq, Egypt, and Syria. In addition to this, a large number of Muslims began demanding immediate punishment for the killers of Uthman.

Ali was in a difficult situation. He decided to delay his investigation into the murder until the situation could be better understood and addressed. This was in keeping with his cautious nature. He was always against hasty decisions made through enflamed emotions. But some people took this delay the wrong way and thought that
Ali was refusing to bring the killers to justice. When A’ishah, the widow of the Prophet, heard about this, she joined with a group of like-minded people who decided to take drastic action against the caliph to force him to punish the killers.

Meanwhile, Ali was taking action to address the political problems before him. He sent written messages to all the recalcitrant governors, asking them to step down from their posts. Some of the governors went voluntarily, but a few of them, most importantly, Mu’awiyah of Syria, refused to even read the letter.

The Battle of the Camel

A’ishah and her fellow disgruntled group members traveled to the new Muslim city of Basrah to raise an army to confront Ali. They found some of the killers of Uthman in that city and executed them. Then they defeated Ali’s supporters there. They soon gathered a huge army that was large enough to march against Medina itself. When news of this reached Ali, he organized an army of his own and marched to Basrah to stop A’ishah and her supporters. He didn’t want A’ishah, or anyone else, to take the law into their own hands. Accompanying Ali’s army was Abdullah ibn Sabah, a treacherous man who had been behind the forged letter that resulted in Uthman’s death. When Ali asked Abdullah and his men to leave, knowing that they were suspicious characters, the provocateur thought of a daring plan. As you will see, it would be the cause of a great disaster.

The two armies met outside of Basrah in the year 656. Ali and A’ishah met face-to-face between the two armies and negotiated a peace agreement. After they returned to their camps, Abdullah ibn Sabah made his move. Before anyone could stop them, a few of his men, who were hiding behind the front lines of both armies, charged out, swinging their swords and pretending that the battle had begun. In the confusion, the men of both armies rushed to fight each other, thinking that they had been ordered to do so.

Thousands of Muslims were engaged in battle against each other, and the slaughter was fierce. Upon seeing the fighting begin, however, A’ishah became alarmed and tried to stop it. She mounted her camel and rode out into the melee trying to tell her men to hold, but her own army thought she had come to encourage them to fight even harder, so the battle went on for hours.
When Ali saw that A’ishah’s presence was making the situation even hotter, he ordered some of his soldiers to rush her position and cut down her camel so that none of her men would be able to see her. After Ali’s men had carried out the order, they escorted her off the battlefield. Ali’s army defeated the rebels and peace was restored. The affair was known as the Battle of the Camel, after A’ishah’s daring ride into the battlefield. She returned to Medina in sorrow and resumed her activities as a teacher.

The Struggle for Power

To save Medina from any more political trouble, Ali moved the capital of the Islamic empire to the new Muslim city of Kufah, near the border with Iraq. With the immediate trouble solved, Ali again turned his attention to the rebellious governors. He decided to replace every governor ever appointed by Uthman, thinking that they were weak and untrustworthy. But Mu’awiya of Syria again refused to step down and instead gathered an army to defend his position. He also launched a propaganda campaign against his rival.

Ali marched his army to a place in Syria named Siffin. There he found Mu’awiya’s army ready to face him. Ali tried to start peace talks with Mu’awiya, but his foe refused, saying that he would never negotiate until the issue of Uthman’s killers was settled once and for all. A three-day battle followed, and Ali’s army made steady progress against Mu’awiya’s forces. When it looked like he was going to lose, Mu’awiya ordered his soldiers to hang pages from the Qur’an on the ends of their spears to make Ali pause. The trick worked, and Mu’awiya and Ali began negotiations.

A radical group of Ali’s men were angry that their leader didn’t pursue total victory against the rebels. Known as the Khawarij, or Kharajites, they deserted and returned to Kufah to prepare an army to attack Ali’s forces. Meanwhile, Ali and Mu’awiya pulled back their armies and returned to their own lands while the negotiations went on. Ali put down the revolt of the Kharajite fighters when he returned and then worked to strengthen his position in Kufah.

A Compromise with Syria

After several months of sending messages and proposals back and forth, both Ali and Mu’awiya agreed that they would each step down and let a new caliph be elected and that neither one of them would run for the office. But this was a trick on Mu’awiya’s part. In a big public gathering, after Ali’s representative declared that Ali would step down as caliph, one of Mu’awiya’s supporters then stood up and said that Mu’awiya would now be the new caliph! Confusion and turmoil engulfed the meeting.

This blatant double-cross angered many, and the angriest people of all were the few remaining Kharajite men who had gone into hiding or who had pretended to make peace. They decided to kill both Mu’awiya and Ali and then find a new caliph. While
they wove their schemes, Mu'awiya and Ali’s armies began moving against each other from Egypt to the Hijaz region of Arabia. Mu’awiya even briefly attacked and occupied both Mecca and Medina!

Finally, one lone Kharajite assassin was able to sneak up on Ali and stab him. He died in the year 661, just after his morning prayers. The last of the true caliphs who had lived by Muhammad’s precepts was gone. (The Kharajite agent sent to kill Mu’awiya failed to assassinate his target.) Under Mu’awiya’s undisputed rule from Damascus, the Islamic Empire would become a monarchy. Although the religious aspects of Islam would still continue to be promoted vigorously, the political system enshrined in Islam would never again function the way it did in Medina.

The Least You Need to Know

➤ The first four caliphs, or leaders, after Muhammad are considered by Muslims to have been “rightly guided,” or sincere to their religion in their governance style.

➤ The Muslim community was forced to fight the Byzantines and the Persians in Palestine, Syria, and Iraq; and they won many stunning victories.

➤ The first caliph died of old age, but the next three were all assassinated for political reasons.

➤ Islam was not spread by the sword. This is a popular myth that was cultivated by propagandists in the Middle Ages. Forced conversion is forbidden in the Qur’ān.

➤ The Islamic political structure began as something akin to a representative democracy but was transformed into a hereditary monarchy by ambitious men 30 years after Muhammad passed away.
Islam produced a civilization that in many ways far surpassed Rome at its height. From the time of Muhammad's famed Hijrah, or migration, to Medina in 622, until the year of the fateful destruction of Baghdad in 1258, a single Muslim government ruled over most of the ever-expanding world of Islam. Although civil wars and dynastic feuding would engulf the political tier, life for the average Muslim citizen was far better than in Europe, which was a land of mud huts and illiteracy. In the Muslim world, vibrant cities teeming with artists, scholars, merchants, and rogues provided endless opportunities for enrichment and intellectual advancement.

Muslim rulers were patrons of the arts and learning, and they set up such public services as hospitals, primary schools, colleges, and even rest stops on the caravan trails. Any Europeans who could afford to do so made their way to the great universities in the Muslim world; there they could study and learn what no Christian school could offer. But this upward growth was rudely interrupted by invasions that left much of the Muslim world occupied by either heathen Mongols or fanatic Crusaders. Rising out of the ashes, the unitary Muslim state that had disappeared in the year 1258 was supplanted by a fragmented jigsaw puzzle of competing kingdoms and sultanates. In this chapter, I will be taking you on a grand tour through this period in Muslim history.
The Umayyads

After the death of the fourth caliph, Ali, in 661, his son, Hassan, declared himself the next caliph. As the grandson of Muhammad and the son of Ali, Hassan had a lot of support in Arabia and Iraq. (Many people around the area of Kufah had developed a kind of hero-worship toward Ali that would later result in the formation of the distinctive Shi‘a sect of Islam.) But Mu‘awiya, the governor of Syria, also laid claim to the title of caliph. Another protracted civil war might have ensued except for the fact that the pious Hassan quickly retracted his claim before the situation spiraled out of control. Mu‘awiya was then able to anoint himself the caliph of the entire Muslim world.

The Umayyads, as this dynasty was called, would rule for the next 90 years from Damascus. During their tenure, the borders of the empire expanded in all directions, from China to France. Islamic learning flourished, and the major traditions of Islamic Law began to be established. Hundreds of books were written every year on every subject imaginable, from gardening to politics. Free public hospitals and schools were set up in every city and town, and Muslim scientists and philosophers were busy making new discoveries and organizing the knowledge they had acquired from their subject nations.

How the Caliphate Became Hereditary

Mu‘awiya broke an important Islamic rule about choosing new leaders. Instead of letting the Muslims form a committee to elect a new caliph after his death, Mu‘awiya decreed that his own son, Yazid, would be the caliph after him. This outraged many Muslims because Yazid was known to drink wine and to live a wasteful lifestyle—two indulgences that were forbidden in Islam. The hereditary question also was a problem because the Prophet was very clear about choosing people on merit and not on birth.

Mu‘awiya died suddenly in the year 680, and Yazid promptly declared himself the caliph. Many religious scholars and the few surviving companions of the Prophet openly opposed him, including Ali’s other son, Hussain, who refused to accept the Syrian Yazid as the new sovereign and instead assumed the title.
himself. Hussain was able to gather a small group of supporters and began to set up his government in Kufah. Yazid meanwhile sent an army of 4,000 to crush this challenger, and when word of the approaching invasion reached Iraq, most of Hussain’s men deserted him. At a place called Karbala, the Syrian army surrounded Hussain’s forces, which now numbered less than a hundred, and killed them all to the last man and woman.

After Yazid’s death, many caliphs of his line came and went. Some were effective administrators, while others were lackluster. One of the most famous of the later Umayyad rulers was Umar ibn Abdul Aziz, who ruled from 717 to 719 C.E. He was known as an excellent Muslim and earned the nickname “the Second Umar,” after the famed early head of the Islamic state. He ruled with justice and fairness. He even sent Muslim missionaries as far away as Tibet and China. Umayyad rule would last until 750, when internal dissent brought the second and last great dynastic house in the unified world of Islam to power: the Abbasids.
The Abbasids and the Mongol Invasions

A group known as the Abbasids overthrew the Umayyads after a series of wars and internal rebellions. The caliphs of this line were to rule for the next five centuries, and it was under their auspices that the greatest progress was made in the arts, sciences, literature, and medicine. In Abbasid cities, libraries and schools jostled for space with bazaars and the mansions of the wealthy. The city of Baghdad, known as the jewel of the world, was founded as a unique fortress city built in the shape of a wheel with all roads leading to the palace in the center.

The Abbasid Empire gradually declined, however, in its later years, owing to bad government practices and a weakness for foolish spending among many of the nobles and leaders. Some of the caliphs were more interested in constructing palaces, holding expensive pageants, and drinking alcohol than in upholding the banner of the Islamic way of life. One notable exception was the famed Harun ar-Rashid, who is the caliph mentioned often in the famous collection of stories entitled *The Thousand and One Nights*.

In the dynasty’s waning years, local warlords and charismatic leaders carved several semi-independent states out of the empire, actions that further weakened the central authority. The most important new force was that of the Seljuk Turks who succeeded in reducing the power of the caliph to that of a ceremonial head. The last Abbasid ruler spent all of his time in vain ceremonies and refused to act when word of an impending invasion reached him. As history would show, the invaders would not spare his beloved city, and the Muslim world was soon going to find itself on the verge of annihilation.

Abbasid rule and the city of Baghdad were wiped out in 1258, when vicious invaders called the Mongols swept into Muslim lands like a tidal wave. They conquered all of Muslim Persia and Iraq and unleashed a reign of terror against the populace that is eclipsed only by Adolph Hitler’s Nazi war machine. It is estimated that over 16 million people were massacred in Persia and Iraq alone. (It took the Mongols 40 days to execute the entire population of Baghdad.) Libraries were burnt, cities were razed, and the practice of Islam was forbidden under Mongol decree.

Eventually, the Mongols converted to Islam. Their descendants had been settled in Muslim lands for about a hundred years now and were able to appreciate and learn about the teachings of the faith. Later Mongol rulers restored mosques, reopened schools, and adopted the cultures of the lands they lived in. They even went on to conquer nearly all of Hindu India and a large part of southern Russia and eastern Europe for Islam. But the power and might of the Abbasids would never again be achieved by any other Muslim empire.

**The Golden Age of Islamic Civilization**

Islam as a religion promotes study and learning. Contrary to popular opinion, Islam is not against modernity or scholarship. In fact, for most of the last thousand years it
was the Muslim world that was advancing on all fronts and the Christian world that was lagging behind in the arts and sciences. During the Abbasid caliphate, Muslim cities were the largest in the world, with well-established social services and a cultural vibrancy that caused Europeans to marvel. Free public hospitals, universities, local public health inspectors, even paved roads were everyday parts of life for citizens in Muslim lands.

The Islamic world was a cosmopolitan mix of people of all races and colors who spoke dozens of different languages (Arabic was the lingua franca, being the religiously sanctioned tongue). The mighty caravan routes were much like superhighways are today and were filled with traffic and congestion. International business was booming, and for the first time, merchants could rely on writing checks that would be honored at banks throughout the Muslim world. Travel was easier than at any time in human history, and the practice of medicine was no longer a quack’s profession, with aspiring doctors being required to pass exams. The Islamic world, in short, was much like modern America with the exception of the technology available today.

**Islamic Art Forms**

Muslim artists often quote a maxim attributed to the Prophet: God is beautiful, and He loves beauty. The Muslim world produced many different art forms, even as Muslim artists continue to ply their trade today. But there is a prohibition in Islam against painting or drawing people or animals that appear too lifelike. This is in keeping with the anti-idolatry trend in the faith. But beyond this there are few other curbs on free artistic expression. The following list presents the main art forms that the world of Islam produces:

- **Calligraphy** Writing the Arabic script in a fancy and artistic manner. Primarily, Muslim calligraphers have used verses of the Qur’an as their subject matter. There are several styles of writing the Arabic script, much like the different fonts on today’s word processors; and the flourishing strokes of a good calligrapher are highly prized in the Muslim world.

- **Geometric design** Tessellations, as they are called, are repeating geometric designs. Muslim mathematicians made this type of artwork possible with the development of algebra and trigonometry. Most mosques in the traditional Muslim world have some element of this art form in their construction.

---

**Ask the Imam**

Non-Muslims were welcome in Islamic regions because the Qur’an contains a built-in acceptance toward other religions. It prescribes tolerance and mutual respect and forbids pressured conversions. In some Islamic universities in Spain and North Africa, non-Muslim students of the sciences numbered almost as many as Muslim students!
Arabesque  A distinctive combination of floral design and artistic patterns. Europeans copied many of these motifs during the Renaissance, and Muslim influences can be seen in cathedrals throughout France, Germany, and Italy.

Persian miniatures  Small paintings by Muslim artists of scenes that depict a variety of subjects from kings to peasants. This style of painting spread over several regions of the Islamic world.

Architecture

Public buildings have always had a special place in Islam. The mosque, which has to hold large crowds every day, was often the largest and most beautifully constructed edifice in any Muslim city. Architectural monuments such as the Taj Mahal and the Blue Mosque in Istanbul stand out as stunning achievements. Palaces, colleges, and libraries also received grand treatment and rival the great castles and palaces of Europe in their beauty and complexity.

Literature

Every civilization is judged by the knowledge it leaves behind. Although the world of Islam is by no means gone from world affairs, its greatest period of intellectual and cultural achievement occurred during the Abbasid caliphate, with later contributions by the various Muslim states that broke away. It was during this time that papermaking was adopted from China, enabling the publication of books on a large scale.
For the first time, authors writing in Arabic, Farsi, and other languages were actually able to make money from their efforts. Because of the religious commandment in Islam that Muslims must learn to read and write, the tremendously large literate populations of the teeming Muslim cities were fertile ground for a steady stream of books, manuals, and letters. The main library in Baghdad had thousands of titles that people could borrow, and bookstores made an appearance for the first time as well. Some of the best-known authors from this period were the satirist Al Jahiz, the philosopher Al Ghazali, and the adventurer Ibn Batutta. A fictional practical joker named Goha who stars in a collection of stories was also quite popular.

Famous works of literature include …

- **The Arabian Nights**  A collection of stories, from Sindbad and Ali Baba to Aladdin and Ma’ruf the Cobbler, that have entertained people for centuries.
- **The Mathnawi**  Poetry from Jalaluddin Rumi. Currently, his poems about faith and life sell more books in America than any other poet's.
- **Layla and Majnun**  The classic Romeo and Juliet tale by Nizami that predates Shakespeare by centuries.
- **The Conference of Birds**  Farid ud-Din Attar's story of the quest to find the king of the birds and what the weary travelers really find.
- **The Musings of Rabi’a al-Adawiya**  Passionate, intense, and moving verse from Islam's most famous female mystic.
- **The Island of Animals**  A fable about the animals of the world taking man to court for mistreating them.
- **The Ghulistan**  An engaging collection of poems, social commentaries, and stories by Sa’di Shirazi.
- **The Rubaiyat**  Poetry of Omar Khayyam. Irreverent and often philosophical verse that begs the reader to love life.

**The Beginnings of Rival Muslim States**

As I mentioned earlier, the strength of the Abbasid caliphate weakened to such an extent that entire regions were able to break away and achieve de facto independence. After the Mongol invasions, the permanent dismemberment of the unitary Muslim state was complete. Even though the Mongols eventually converted, they merely
remained the lords of their own nations. From the thirteenth century onward, several large Muslim empires competed amongst themselves. These included the Persian Empire, the various Turkish states, the Mamlukes of Egypt and Syria, and the Mughals of India. (In those territories where Islam was spreading through missionary efforts, these areas developed political realities of their own, such as in western Africa and southeast Asia.)

Although the Ottoman Turks would eventually unify much of the Muslim heartland in a state that would last until the twentieth century, they were never able to extend their sway over the eastern half of the Muslim world. Thus, a distinctive western and eastern Islamic flavor could be seen for the first time. Ironically, even though the Muslim world became so fragmented, it survived, albeit in truncated form. By contrast, when the Roman Empire collapsed in the fifth century, its civilization disappeared. Islam did not suffer the same fate because it is more than a culture and a civilization; it is also a religion offering spiritual guidance.

**Islam and Spain: A Unique Blend**

When the Abbasids seized power from the Umayyads in 750, they ordered the execution of every member of the Umayyad clan. (They didn’t want some prince to pop up and rally the people against them in the future.) But one member of the Umayyad household managed to escape, and he made his way across North Africa and into Spain, where he founded a new branch of the Umayyad house. Muslims had already conquered Spain, as early as the year 711, when Tariq bin Ziyad, the famous Muslim general, crossed the Straits of Gibraltar at the invitation of a Spanish Christian chief.

Spain was quite easy for the Muslims to take, given that the populace was in a constant state of dissatisfaction with their king, Roderick the Visigoth. During the first major battle, two flanks of his army, which were commanded by his rivals, actually switched allegiances and joined the Muslim side, resulting in the defeat of the despised ruler. By 718 the Muslims were in possession of nearly the entire peninsula.

For the next 800 years, the Islamic government in Spain worked to build a civilization so advanced that its influence helped to bring Europe out of the Dark Age and resulted in the Enlightenment. The fabulous Muslim cities of Cordoba, Seville, Toledo, and Granada boasted paved streets lit by oil lamps, hospitals, universities, endless bazaars, libraries, and public gardens. Europeans flocked to these great cities and returned home with new ideas and a burning zeal to make backward Europe as advanced as Muslim Spain.

**Translate This**

Gibraltar comes from the term Jabal Tariq, or the Mountain of Tariq, after the place where General Tariq bin Ziyad landed in Spain.
Unfortunately, the unity of the Umayyad state in Spain was to be short-lived. Eventually it broke up into competing fiefdoms—more than 20 at one point—which became easy prey for the Christians in northern Spain who began reasserting their power. By the year 1492, the Spanish Catholics had conquered the last Muslim stronghold of Granada. They turned thousands of mosques into churches, burned mountains of books written in Arabic, and initiated the infamous Inquisition in which hundreds of thousands of Muslim civilians were rounded up and tortured to death by the church. The legacy of Islamic Spain can still be seen today in the thousands of buildings that still stand and in the flavor of the Spanish language and the Spanish culture, which were heavily influenced by Muslims during their rule.

The Mughals

Muslim rule in India began in the year 712. Hindu pirates, acting under the authority of a local lord, attacked a ship carrying Muslim civilians. When the pirates refused to release them, the Umayyad governor of Iraq ordered an army to attack what is today Pakistan. But it wouldn’t be until the sixteenth century that Muslim rule over the entire subcontinent would be complete.
The famed Mughal dynasty, which ruled India from 1526 to 1857, produced many great works of art and architecture, most notably the Taj Mahal. However, the insidious designs of the encroaching British spelled the doom of Muslim rule in India. After a final major battle to drive the British out of his domain, the last Mughal emperor was captured and sent into exile. The British chopped off the heads of all of his sons and sent them to him on a tray as a “present.”

The Crusades

No other event has defined Muslim-Christian relations to such a great degree as the Crusades. These were a series of European invasions, lasting from 1095 to 1270, into the Middle East to capture the Holy Land for Christendom. The first of the eight expeditions was wildly successful from the Christian standpoint, but the rest were ill organized and doomed to failure. The Muslim world was weak and divided, and the Abbasids held no influence in the region.

Europe’s First Colonies

Although the Holy Land was under Muslim administration for over five centuries, Christian pilgrims were still allowed to visit and perform their religious rites. In addition, a large Christian and Jewish population lived in peaceful coexistence with their
Muslim neighbors. Owing to the general lack of education among European Christians, however, pilgrims from that continent would often enter Jerusalem and create public spectacles with loud singing, dancing, and rowdy musical bands. When the Muslim authorities attempted to curtail the unseemly activities, Christian monks began spreading wild rumors and increasingly inflamed propaganda that the Muslims were interfering with their religious rights.

At the same time the emperor of the ever-shrinking Byzantine Empire was sending a passionate plea to the pope in Rome to save his kingdom from the Seljuk Turks. This event combined with the already tense situation in the Holy Land provided a rallying point. Pope Urban II called upon the petty kings of Europe to march to the Holy Land and capture it for their religion. He promised to forgive their sins and admit them to Heaven for their trouble. The kings of France, England, the German fiefdoms, and Hungary were the first to respond, though they just promised loot and fiefdoms to their noblemen.

The unprepared Muslims withered under the massive invasion force; on June 15, 1095, the victorious Europeans entered Jerusalem. They promptly got down to business and slaughtered the entire population of the city. A contemporary Christian writer reported that so much blood was spilled that the streets were filled with streams of it. (The phrase “Kill them all, God knows His own” was coined by a representative of the pope who was asked what to do about the Christian Arabs who looked just like the Muslims.) One by one, other Muslim cities fell, and the butchering of civilians went on. When the Crusaders ran out of steam, they established effective rule over a territory stretching from southern Turkey to the border of Egypt.

**The End of a Dream**

The Crusaders were disunited and constantly quarrelling amongst themselves. The fossilized feudal system they had carried with them from Europe made it nearly impossible for them to work together or to improve the lives of their subjects. Their demise was assured after a Muslim sultan named Saladin rose to power in Syria. He united several Muslim regions under his command and fought a furious campaign to liberate the conquered territories. The most decisive battle occurred in 1187 at Hattin in Syria. Saladin completely defeated the Frankish army, and nothing stood between him and Jerusalem.

In 1192 Saladin forced the surrender of the city and entered it under a peace agreement. In contrast to what the Christians had done, he did not punish the civilians or soldiers of the city but only took...
over the administration. This story was repeated throughout the rest of Palestine. Although the Europeans made many other attempts to retake the Holy Land, they failed. By 1270, the Christians had resigned themselves to Muslim control over Jerusalem and had resumed their pilgrimage customs under guarantee of safe passage from the Muslim authorities.

The Least You Need to Know

➤ The political structure of the Islamic state became a family dynasty 30 years after Muhammad’s passing.

➤ The first dynasty, which lasted 90 years, was called the Umayyad dynasty.

➤ The second Muslim dynasty, the Abbasid, came to power in a violent uprising and further expanded the borders of the Islamic state. The Abbasids founded the city of Baghdad as their capital.

➤ Muslim civilization produced great painters, authors, architects, and calligraphers whose works are on a par with the artistic achievements of any other civilization.

➤ The Mongols practically wiped out Islamic civilization in their destruction of over half of the Muslim world.

➤ The Crusades were a series of European invasions into the Middle East. Muslim forces eventually drove them out but not until Muslims united under a determined leader named Saladin.
Chapter 25

Islam in America

In This Chapter

➤ Find out who really discovered America
➤ Learn the true identity of many of the millions of Africans who were kidnapped and sold into slavery
➤ Discover the links between the African American heritage and Islam
➤ Find out why so many Americans accept Islam
➤ Note the major Muslim organizations operating in America today

Over the last five centuries, two distinctive trends have been at work in the Muslim world: a decline in power and a rebirth. Beginning with a decline in state power, the Muslim world slid into such weakness that it became easy prey for the ambitions of Europeans who saw a chance for easy plunder. Beyond merely occupying foreign territories, however, these same Europeans actually began enslaving the inhabitants, mostly those of African heritage, and exporting them in the most brutal fashion to the new American colonies. Many of these unfortunate souls were Muslims.

Under the slave master's whip, the lives of hundreds of thousands of Islam's adherents were wiped out. Today a rebirth is sweeping the world of Islam, and many African Americans have begun to take a fresh look at their heritage and to reach back to their religious roots. For many, this means accepting the teachings of the Prophet Muhammad.
Curiously enough, people of other races are also starting to take a look at this comprehensive and inviting way of life, and the number of white and Hispanic converts to Islam grows every year. As a sign of the growth of Islam through both conversion and immigration, Muslims in North America now enjoy the support of many organizations that work tirelessly to bring their hopes and concerns to the national forum. In this chapter, I will explore the growth and establishment of Islamic America.

The Forgotten Religion of African Americans

When Christopher Columbus set sail from Spain in 1492, Catholic forces had just completed the capture of the last Spanish Muslim stronghold, Granada. There were now hundreds of thousands of Muslims under Christian control, and soon they would be the victims of intense persecution under the Inquisition. Most of these people were about to be forcibly converted to Christianity. A large number pretended to convert to save themselves from the torture chamber. (The Catholics contemptuously referred to them as Moors or Moriscoes.) A small but significant number of sailors in Columbus’s crew were of Muslim extraction. They, too, had to hide their faith.

Upon landing in the Americas, Columbus was stunned to find that some of the people he encountered were black skinned and possessed clothing styles suspiciously akin to those of the Moors of Granada and West Africa. Other Spaniards also noticed similar peculiarities. Hernando Cortes, conqueror of the Aztecs, remarked that some of the natives had clothes that were “painted in the style of Moorish draperies.” But it was Columbus’s son, Ferdinand, who would later surmise what has been privately accepted by many modern scholars: Africans landed in the Caribbean long before Columbus. What’s even more exciting is that they were all Muslims.

Islam did not survive, however, and it appears that the early African voyages, dated mainly to the twelfth century, were not permanent forays but accidental discoveries. The sailors, mostly from the Islamic Mandinka tribe of West Africa, merely intermingled
and assimilated into local Indian cultures. Their influence did alter native life, however. One of Vasco de Balboa’s recorders wrote, “It is believed that such blacks came long ago from Africa ... and that, having shipwrecked, established residence in those mountains.” (A. H. Quick, Deeper Roots)

The next great influx of Africans to the Americas—and it would number in the millions—happened shortly after the Spanish realized that the local native peoples of the Caribbean and of Central and South America were unsuited for the kind of abject slavery the Spanish were enforcing. Consequently, they turned to the Portuguese, who began selling captured Africans to them as slaves. This scheme worked well enough on the face of it, but soon the Spanish found that a large number of these African slaves were Muslims. Upon entering the New World, they began organizing themselves, revolting, converting the Indians to Islam, and otherwise making a nuisance of themselves to their Catholic masters. In 1550 the Spanish king issued the following warning:

You are informed that if such Moors ... should teach Muslim doctrines, or wage war against you or the Indians who may have adopted the Muslim religion, you should not make slaves of them whatsoever. (A. H. Quick, Deeper Roots)

However, the lucrative nature of the slave trade made such entreaties fall on deaf ears. Soon a new system developed whereby imported slaves would first be taken to special training camps in the Caribbean; there they would be so beaten and humiliated that they would accept whatever commands—and religion—their masters gave them. It is estimated that upward of 20 percent of all Africans brought to the Americas were Muslims. Because of the brutal forced conversions they underwent, however, very few remained even remotely concerned with protecting their faith.

Millions of slaves were imported into North America from the early seventeenth century until the early nineteenth century. Some of them retained their knowledge of Islam, and a few even practiced it in secret. American slave owners occasionally marveled over this oddity in some of their slaves, as evidenced by surviving historical documents. Some slaves could write Arabic and recite basic Islamic phrases, though they took great risks in doing so. One slave, who had handwritten a Qur’an from memory, explained to his enraged master that he had done it before he became a Christian.

Jane I. Smith, writing in Islam in America, states, “Unfortunately for those who would have wished to practice their Muslim faith during the harsh circumstances of slavery in America, their Christian overlords rarely permitted it. Just as Muslims who remained in Spain after 1492 had been forced to convert to Christianity, so American slaves were required to become Christian also.”

Just the Facts

Alex Haley’s epic saga, Roots, chronicles the life of his Muslim ancestors who were sold into slavery and forcibly converted to Christianity.
Some slaves who had managed to retain their Islamic faith desired to return to their homeland once more and took steps to achieve it. One such man was Abd Rahman Ibrahima, a West African prince who had been sold into American slavery in 1787. After futilely resisting his master for years, he eventually found a way to petition President John Quincy Adams for his freedom. In 1829 he was returned to his homeland, where he died in the faith of his fathers. The harsh treatment meted out to most slaves, however, caused even the staunchest Muslims to wither. By the early twentieth century, all that remained in their descendants were a few phrases and old legends about not eating pork. These last vestiges of Islam survived well into the early twentieth century in isolated pockets along the coasts of Georgia and the Carolinas.

**The Rise of African American Islam**

The quest for civil rights in America began shortly after the end of the Civil War. But opposition from many segments of white society effectively put this movement on ice. In the early twentieth century, however, many African Americans began to re-assert their identity. Some looked for a way to better integrate themselves into American Christian society, while others, most notably Marcus Garvey, called for black Americans to look back upon their heritage as Africans and gain strength through their own traditions.

This ideology was taken up by a young black man from North Carolina named Noble Drew Ali. He began to preach a message that mixed Islamic symbols with self-help slogans. He made up his own small book, which he called *The Holy Qur'an of the Moorish Science Temple of America*, and told people he was a prophet of God sent to redeem blacks and to return them to the religion of his forefathers, the Moors. Of course, his message had little to do with authentic Islam, and his *Qur'an* was not actually a real *Qur'an*; but he gained many converts and set up Moorish Science Temples in several cities.

Upon his death in the 1930s, his followers divided and went in different directions. This was not the end of the nascent quasi-Islamic movement among African Americans, though. In 1930 a mysterious merchant named Wallace D. Fard made an appearance in Detroit and began preaching a message directed toward what he called “the lost-found tribe of Shabazz.” (There is no such word in the Arabic language.) He mixed a few elements of Islam with mysticism and black separatist philosophy and opened a temple for use by his growing following.

Fard’s most ardent convert was Elijah Poole, who later took the name Elijah Muhammad. He carried the movement further after Fard’s mysterious disappearance in 1934 and developed an ideology that mixed Islam and Christianity together. He moved to Chicago.
in 1932 and was named chief minister of the now national Nation of Islam. Under his leadership, the organization proselytized aggressively and was able to open temples and businesses in several cities throughout the country.

Were the teachings of this group Islamic? Actually, far from it. Beyond symbolism, Elijah Muhammad taught a number of doctrines that are incompatible with Islam. These include:

➤ Wallace D. Fard was a divine, Christ-like savior.
➤ Elijah Muhammad is a messenger from God.
➤ All whites are evil.
➤ Intermarriage between the races is forbidden.
➤ An evil scientist named Yacub created the Caucasian race in a spiteful fit of rage.
➤ The Bible is as valid as the Qur’an.
➤ The practices of Islam do not need to be learned in their orthodox form.

Malcolm X: Martyr of Islam

Malcolm Little, a small-time crook who was serving a prison sentence, came to know of the Nation of Islam. In 1947 he converted and became one of the group’s most enthusiastic members. Upon his release in 1952, he entered the spotlight and became the Nation’s national spokesman. Soon he began a coast-to-coast speaking tour that eventually caught the notice of the American press. In 1959 he was interviewed by Mike Wallace and created quite a stir among white Americans with his message of righting the injustices done against blacks and of white culpability in the oppression.

Malcolm X, as he took to calling himself (to emphasize that his slave name was not his real identity), eventually began to feel uncomfortable with some of the actions of his spiritual leader. Elijah Muhammad was accused of having affairs, and this breach of personal discipline troubled the reformed criminal, who relied on Elijah’s example to bolster his own inner strength. In addition, some members of the Nation were jealous of Malcolm’s position as the unconfirmed successor to the now ailing leader. They began to spread rumors about him, and his prestige began to suffer. It didn’t help that Malcolm also began questioning the validity of the group’s teachings on a variety of subjects.

By 1964 Elijah Muhammad had removed Malcolm as an official minister of his organization. It was then that Malcolm X’s life would take a dramatic turn. He set out for a pilgrimage to Mecca, and along the way he found that he really didn’t know

Just the Facts

Cassius Clay, whom Malcolm X had befriended, accepted Islam in 1964 after a major boxing match. He changed his name to Muhammad Ali.
anything about Islam. The Nation of Islam, he realized, was not teaching the religion of Islam. Malcolm had to learn how to say Islamic prayers and for the first time became aware of what the true teachings of Islam were. He also discovered that Islam was against racism and irrational hatred of whites. Upon his return to the States, he promptly resigned from the Nation of Islam and began a national crusade to bring true Islam to black Americans. He was assassinated (some say by his former colleagues) in 1965. His autobiography, published shortly before his death, still inspires people to confront injustice passionately to this day.

**Islam Among African Americans Today**

Elijah Muhammad’s son, Wallace, also questioned the validity of his father’s teachings. He was variously silenced and even excommunicated at one point from the Nation of Islam. When Elijah Muhammad died in 1975, Wallace was chosen as the new leader in a controversial decision that shocked many of the Nation’s longtime members. Wallace, whose name had been changed to Warith Deen Muhammad, immediately began to dismantle large elements of his father’s religious empire: dozens of temples, stores, farms, and other businesses that had been designed to fund the movement.

The changes ran deeper than structural modifications, however. Under Warith Deen Muhammad’s leadership, the old racially charged doctrines of hatred were removed. Followers were instructed in authentic Islamic beliefs and practices, and temples were converted into traditional mosques where Islamic-style prayers began to be held regularly. Even the name of the national organization was changed to “The World Community of Al-Islam in the West.”

Of course, opposition to such radical modifications in a long-standing movement was sure to come. A faction led by Louis Farrakhan, one of Elijah Muhammad’s close associates, broke away and resurrected the old Nation of Islam. Much to the chagrin of Muslims all across America, Farrakhan’s message of racial hatred against whites and Jews has given a bad name to a religion that doesn’t teach either of those tenets. Whenever Farrakhan or one of his ministers speaks, Americans are unfairly given the impression that it is Islam speaking. Muslim-American organizations have routinely denounced the false teachings of the Nation of Islam for years, but this topic has received little coverage in the American press.

Recently, Farrakhan, who is reported to be ailing, has softened his tone. In a momentous ceremony held in the year 2000, he even declared his allegiance to Warith Deen Muhammad’s community and has taken steps to integrate his followers into true Islam. The success of this move has yet to be seen. Mainstream Muslims were both surprised and pleased at such a move and now watch with anticipation, hoping that this embarrassing chapter is finally rehabilitated.

Translate This

Wallace Muhammad’s Muslim name, Warith Deen, has an extra significance to it. It literally translates as **Inheritor of the Faith.**
Other Islamic movements have cropped up in the African American community that had nothing to do with the Nation of Islam or the Community of Al-Islam. These were often started through the propagation efforts of immigrant Muslims who took their duty to convey Islamic teachings seriously. With more than one million African American Muslims in America today, Islam is the fastest-growing religion among a population whose Islamic roots go back on this continent over five centuries.

**Muslim Immigrants and the American Dream**

In addition to African Americans, other immigrants have also brought Islam with them to this continent, albeit they came freely and were not forcibly converted. These are primarily people who emigrated in four great waves from various parts of the Muslim world, starting in the late 1800s. Each influx of Muslim immigrants can be summarized as follows:

- 1875–1912: Syrian, Lebanese, and Jordanian laborers migrate and become factory workers and peddlers.
- 1919–1921: Arabs from across the Middle East arrive (as laborers).
- 1947–1960: Palestinians, Egyptians, and Eastern European Muslims arrive. Many were well educated.
- 1967–present: Muslims from Asia (primarily the Indian subcontinent), the Arab world, and Africa arrive. Most are educated professionals or come as students and remain.

*Most mosques, like this one in Queens, New York, were built by the latest wave of immigrants from the Muslim world.*
The Muslims from the first two waves were rapidly assimilated, and nothing is left of their presence save for a few town names and mosques in scattered places. The third wave built many of the older mosques that are still in use in the great urban centers of the United States and Canada. The fourth and final wave has been active in political and social affairs in their communities and in the nation at large. Most of the mosques and Islamic parochial schools on this continent were built as a result of their efforts.

Caucasian Converts to Islam

There is nothing new about Caucasian converts in Islam. In the Prophet Muhammad’s time, people of all races and ethnic groups were accepting Islam. The Ottoman Turkish caliphate ruled over much of eastern Europe for centuries, and many groups, most notably the Bosnians, Albanians, and some Bulgarians joined the Islamic faith. The earliest-known Caucasian American convert to Islam was Alexander Russell Webb, the U.S. ambassador to the Philippines in the late nineteenth century. He published a book in 1893 titled *Islam in America*.

Today an estimated 100,000 Caucasian Muslims live in North America and Europe. The majority are women who either converted and married or married and then converted. Americans, Europeans, and Canadians who convert usually experience celebrity status in the Islamic community, given the natural inclination of Muslims to feel affinity for those who choose to accept Muhammad’s message. One of the most prominent Caucasian converts to Islam in the West is Cat Stevens, who is known as Yusuf Islam.

Hispanic Muslims

There are no firm estimates of the numbers of Latinos who have accepted Islam in North America. Figures range from 10,000 to as high as 35,000 depending on whose study one consults. While it may sound strange to talk about an Islamic movement among people of Latin American heritage, with its staunch Catholic image, Hispanics are not trapped by the church, and many are looking for something more than they are experiencing. For many, Islam is seen as part of their heritage because the Spanish language and culture were influenced by the centuries-long rule of Muslims in Spain.

There are several other reasons why Islam might appeal to Hispanics. First and foremost is the natural attraction of Islam itself, with its emphasis on monotheism without mysterious or incomprehensible dogmas. Former Catholic Hispanics, who have
accepted Islam, have also expressed in interviews their appreciation for Islamic family values, its disciplined structure for daily life, and its uncompromising stand against drugs and alcohol.

Today several national Hispanic Muslim organizations are at work in the United States and Mexico. Among the most prominent are the Association of Latin American Muslims (ALAM); Alianza-Islamica; and PIEDAD, a women’s advocacy group. ALAM, which operates out of Washington, D.C., has established mosques in Mexico and in the American Southwest and publishes a regular newspaper called *The Voice of Islam*.

**Muslim Organizations in North America**

Several national Islamic organizations operate in North America today. Far from being the insidious dens of terrorism that some so-called experts on Islam make them out to be, they are merely forums for Muslims to come together to talk about the challenges of, and solutions for, living as Muslims in the West. Every year, the four largest organizations hold conventions in one corner of the nation or another. These gatherings follow a standard format with lectures, shows, bazaars, exhibits, and mutual fellowship.

Each of the Islamic organizations has its own unique history, and their relevance to the lives of Muslims in North America is great. They distribute information on Islam to politicians; organize prayer times; advocate on behalf of Muslim concerns; educate Muslims and non-Muslims about Islam; and publish books, pamphlets, and magazines that guide the faithful in their daily lives.

The major Islamic organizations are

- **The Islamic Society of North America (ISNA)** This is the most well-known Muslim organization. It acts as an umbrella group for many local mosques and associations.
- **The Muslim Student’s Association (MSA)** Founded by foreign students in the late sixties, it has since grown to be the most important indigenous Islamic student organization, with chapters in nearly every college in North America. It tackles issues related to campus life for Muslims.
- **The World Community of Al-Islam in the West (WCIW)** Warith Deen Muhammad’s transformed group, which adheres to Muslim orthodoxy.
- **The Islamic Circle of North America (ICNA)** An offshoot of ISNA founded by immigrants from the Indian subcontinent. It has chapters in many major cities and engages in charity work and missionary efforts.

---

*It Is Written*

According to Muhammad, “Even if there are only three Muslims in a place, one of them must be chosen as their leader.”
There are other organizations that work to confront discrimination, influence politics, distribute charity, improve women’s rights, and educate people about Islam. Recently, Muslims across the country have joined together to create voter awareness among their communities so that we, too, can participate fully in the political process of the land in which we are citizens. In short, Muslim groups have the same goals and follow similar methods in their approach as major Christian and Jewish religious organizations.

**The Least You Need to Know**

- Many Africans who were brought to the New World as slaves were Muslims. Most were forcibly converted, but a few tried to practice Islam in secret.
- Islam began growing in the African American community in the early 1900s. It was not authentic Islamic teachings they were learning, however, but a mixture of Islam, Christianity, and black nationalism.
- The Nation of Islam has never adhered to standard Islamic teachings; its doctrines about racial hatred and new messengers from God are against Islam.
- Most modern African American Muslims follow orthodox Islam.
- The number of converts to Islam among blacks, Hispanics, and whites continues to grow each year.
- Muslim organizations seek to provide services and a forum for discussion among Muslims in North America.
Great civilizations have often passed on a considerable legacy before being extinguished. While Islam is far from extinct, its greatest influences occurred at the same time that Europe was sunk in the Dark Ages. Greek learning and the discoveries of other nations were rapidly assimilated into the growing Muslim scientific community, where they were refined and added to. Indeed, Islam produced some of the finest scientists that humanity has ever seen, and they made discoveries that laid the groundwork for modern technological knowledge.

Islam continues to evolve in today’s world. Through its many forms, sects, and trends, the influence of Muslims upon the economic, political, and moral life of the world is considerable. Muslims are trying to make sense of the fast-paced world just like everyone else. The global Islamic revivalist movement, which is often quite misunderstood, is one way in which Muslims are struggling to regain their rightful place as equal members in today’s rapidly changing world. In this part, I will answer the question: What do Muslims want?
Discover the Influences of Islam

In This Chapter

➤ Learn how the knowledge of the ancient Greeks was saved by Islamic civilization.
➤ Discover the Muslims’ involvement in the European Renaissance.
➤ Meet some influential Muslim philosophers and scientists.
➤ Find out how the legacy of Muslim civilization has shaped the modern world.

The rapid expansion of the Muslim world in its first thousand years encompassed more than just the acquisition of territory and converts. Islamic civilization absorbed the learning, ideas, books, and philosophies of the Greeks, Romans, Indians, and Persians, thus making a new synthesis of knowledge possible. But Muslims went even further; they built upon this knowledge with new discoveries of their own, inventing algebra, ophthalmology, trigonometry, historiography, and many other sciences.

Islam created a multicultural, vibrant transnational society more diverse and productive than Rome ever was. Europeans, whose feudal nations were backward and undeveloped until five centuries ago, fed off of Muslim achievements and found their desire for advancement was ignited in the translated books they acquired from the universities and libraries of Islam. Nearly every aspect of modern society, whether something as mundane as writing a check or as lofty as astronomy, has been influenced by Islamic discoveries, refined and honed in the great civilization brought about
by the Qur’an. As I take you on a tour through the legacy of Islam, think of how Muslim achievements have made life easier for all of us today.

**Charting the Muslim Influence on Europe**

Muslim rulers took it as an act of piety to construct mosques, hospitals, schools, and universities. Consequently, in every major Muslim city there are numerous examples of each. Perhaps the greatest era of advancement in education took place during the Abbasid caliphate (750–1258). As a multiethnic society, the Abbasid rulers enjoyed wide access to the ideas and discoveries of many previous civilizations. This in turn led to the widespread availability of manuscripts for use by both scholars and students.

The expansion of knowledge in Muslim civilization can be divided into three phases. The first phase was inheritance. Ancient writings from the Greeks and others were collected and translated into Arabic. The availability of paper made duplication of these manuscripts possible, so universities as far away as Spain or Timbuktu could have their own copies on hand. Ibn Khaldun, the famous fourteenth-century Muslim historian, described part of this process as follows:

“When the Byzantine emperors conquered Syria, the scientific works of the Greeks were still in existence. Then God brought Islam, and the Muslims won their remarkable victories, conquering the Byzantines as well as all other nations. At first, the Muslims were simple, and did not cultivate learning, but as time went on, and the Muslim dynasty flourished, the Muslims developed an urban culture that surpassed that of any other nation. They began to wish to study the various branches of philosophy, of whose existence they knew through their contact with bishops and priests among their Christian subjects.”

“The Caliph, al-Mansur, therefore sent an embassy to the Byzantine emperor, asking him to send translations of books on mathematics. The emperor sent him Euclid’s *Elements* and some works on physics. Muslim scholars studied these books, and their desire to obtain others was whetted. When al-Ma’mun, who had some scientific knowledge, assumed the caliphate, he wished to do something to further the progress of science. For that purpose, he sent out ambassadors and translators to the Byzantine empire, in order to search out works on Greek science and have them translated into Arabic. As a result of these efforts, a great deal of material was gathered and preserved.” (Ibn Khaldun, *Al Mugaddimah*)

---

**Just the Facts**

The oldest continuously functioning college in the world is Al-Azhar University in Cairo, Egypt. It was founded in the year 970 and has achieved the status of the most authoritative school of Islamic sciences in the Sunni Muslim world.
The most famous institution for the collection and translation of ancient books was known as the Baytul Hikmah, or House of Wisdom. Established by al-Ma’mun in 830, this think tank was staffed by Muslims, Christians, Jews, Hindus, and Buddhists and was given the task of making all the knowledge of the world available in the Arabic language. The works of Plato, Socrates, Aristotle, and Ptolemy were preserved for future generations through the medium of the Arabic language. (These were later translated from Arabic into Latin for Europe’s consumption.)

In the second phase, Muslim scholars and scientists synthesized the diverse areas of knowledge into organized bodies of thought whose premises could be tested and proved or disproved. Muslims developed the scientific method of formulating a hypothesis and testing it to see whether it is correct. Visiting European students marveled over this process, which was unknown in dogma-plagued Europe. Adelard of Bath, a prominent Christian scholar of the Middle Ages, wrote: “Indeed, I have learned from my Arab masters to follow reason as a guide.”

In the last stage, Muslims began adding to this store of knowledge with new discoveries of their own from the ninth century onward. The list of sciences either refined or invented by Muslims is dizzying: algebra, chemistry, astronomy, medicine, cartography, botany, and navigation, to list just a few. (The term Greco-Arab science was coined to label this synthesis of learning styles.) Given the religious impetus to learn to read and write, Muslim populations were generally literate enough to provide a steady stream of students, both male and female, to the great lecture halls of Islamic universities. By way of contrast, during this same period in Europe few could read beyond a scattering of priests and nobles.
The major conduit for Muslim learning into Europe was through the great colleges of Muslim Spain. Christians flocked to Cordoba, Toledo, Seville, and Granada to study subjects that were unknown in the rest of Europe. One contemporary Christian priest lamented, “All our young men are vying with each other to learn Arabic.” This is no small statement. As much as English today is the international language of science, art, and technology, if you can imagine it, Arabic was that language from the ninth to the fifteenth century. New words such as astrolabe, algorithm, soda, syrup, and zenith were adopted into European languages, and Christians read the voluminous writings of Muslim scholars with enthusiasm.

Daniel of Morley, an Englishman of the twelfth century, expressed his reasons for attending an Islamic college in these words:

“My passion for knowledge chased me from England. I stayed for a while in Paris. There I saw only savages .... Their ignorance forced them (i.e., the scholars) to remain silent .... As soon as they opened their mouths I heard only the babbling of babes .... Since at present the instruction of the Arabs ... is made available to all in Toledo, I hastened there to attend the lectures of the most learned philosophers in the world. As my friends summoned me back and invited me to return from Spain, I went to England with a precious collection of books.” (Jacques LeGoff, *Intellectuals in the Middle Ages*)

Illuminating the Science Hall of Fame

Throughout the height of Muslim civilization, great Muslim thinkers represented every field of learning. Many of them were religious authorities, poets, and novelists in addition to being top scientists. Omar Khayyam, for example, who is best known for his risqué collection of poetry, *the Rubaiyat*, was also an accomplished astronomer who produced a solar calendar far more accurate than the Gregorian calendar used in Europe. The following list summarizes some of the most famous Islamic thinkers and scientists:

- **Mohammad al-Khawarizmi (d. 840)** He is the founder of algebra, and he also laid the foundation for trigonometry.

- **Hasan ibn al-Haitham (d. 1040)** He established the science of optics and linked algebra with geometry.
Abu Raihan al-Biruni (d. 1048) He correctly established the circumference of the Earth and studied the difference between the speed of sound and the speed of light.

Ibn Sina (d. 1037) Known as Avicenna in the West, this one man produced a textbook on the practice of medicine (known as the Canon) that was so comprehensive it was the main medical guide in Europe for more than five centuries. In another book he classified all known pharmaceuticals and their uses. He also determined that the speed of light was constant.

Ali Ibn Rabban at-Tabari (d. 870) He wrote the first encyclopedia of medicine that collected together all known medical knowledge. This work spanned seven volumes.

Jabir Ibn Haiyan (d. 803) He is considered the father of modern chemistry through his work in classifying the elements and experimenting with their properties.

Abu Abdullah Al-Battani (d. 929) Like many other scientists in the Muslim world, Al-Battani knew the world was round. He was the first to correctly identify the length of the solar year to the second. He also made many discoveries in astronomy and mathematics.

Mohammad al-Razi (d. 930) His accomplishments in medicine were enormous. His 10-volume encyclopedia dealt exhaustively with Greco-Arab medicine. He correctly identified the source for smallpox and was the first to classify substances into organic and inorganic compounds.

These are just a few of the great minds who revolutionized their areas of expertise. Visiting Europeans learned voraciously and returned to their lands to found colleges and universities such as the famous academies in Chartres, France. H. G. Wells wrote of this influence:

A century or so in advance of the West, there grew up in the Muslim world ... a series of great universities. The light of these universities shone far beyond the Muslim world, and drew students from East and West. At Cordoba in particular there were great numbers of Christian students, and the influence of Arab philosophy coming by way of Spain upon the universities of Paris, Oxford and north Italy, and upon Western European thought generally was very considerable indeed. (As quoted in The Mirror International, May 30, 2001)

It Is Written

Muhammad said, "Acquire Knowledge. It enables its possessor to distinguish right from wrong. It lights the way to heaven. It is our friend in the desert, our society in solitude, our compassion when friendless. It guides us to happiness. It sustains us in misery. It is an ornament among friends and an armor against enemies."
Sadly, all of this vitality and progress in the sciences came to an end by the close of the fourteenth century. In the East, the Mongol devastation, the Crusades, and civil wars among the surviving rulers effectively ended the influence of the 'ulema—the Muslim scholars and scientists—over the elites. The result was a decline in support for institutes of higher learning. Although important colleges remained opened, never again would there be that high level of intellectual activity.

In the West, the Catholic reconquest of Spain from Muslim rule resulted in massive mountains of Arabic-language books being burned by the church, under the suspicion that they might be Qur’ans and were thus a threat to the state. The universities were closed, the scholars dispersed throughout the rest of the Muslim world, and the torch of Islamic inquiry was put out permanently—though not before Europe had been dragged out of its Dark Ages and into a new era of enlightenment. This was the legacy and the gift of Islam to our modern world today: the preservation of Greek knowledge and the great discoveries that made modern science possible.

**Speaking in a Familiar Tongue**

Islamic colleges in Spain were the most advanced in the world all throughout the Middle Ages. Every year hundreds of Europeans, eager to learn, enrolled and then later took their knowledge back to their home countries. They also eagerly translated
books into the Latin language and circulated them widely. As they worked, they encountered many new terms and, having no other word for them, simply modified them for use in their own languages. Through this process, several European languages adopted thousands of words of Arabic origin, much like foreign languages today incorporate many English words, such as *computer, jeans,* and *okay.* Spanish has an estimated 6,500 Arabic words. English has nearly 10,000! Here is a sampling of some of them; I bet you’ll be surprised by a few!

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Arabic</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>amir al bahr</td>
<td>admiral</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>al quhal</td>
<td>alcohol</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>al manakh</td>
<td>almanac</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>allueh</td>
<td>aloe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qandi</td>
<td>candy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qirat</td>
<td>carat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sakk</td>
<td>check</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>al kimiya</td>
<td>chemistry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qutun</td>
<td>cotton</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gitar</td>
<td>guitar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laymun</td>
<td>lemon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lil</td>
<td>lilac</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>makhazin</td>
<td>magazine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maskharah</td>
<td>mascara</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>retina</td>
<td>retina</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sufa</td>
<td>sofa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sukkar</td>
<td>sugar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ta’rifah</td>
<td>tariff</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sifr</td>
<td>zero</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zarqun</td>
<td>zircon</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Uncovering the Unique Features of Islamic Civilization**

What was life like in Cordoba, Cairo, or Baghdad during the height of Islamic civilization? Whether you were a commoner or a noble, chances are you would have been able to go to school and have a comparable level of education. Free schools for the less fortunate were established as early as the Umayyad caliphate, in accordance with religious dictates that Muslims must learn to read the Qur’an.

Every society needs a police force and other government officials to keep order and look out for the welfare of the population. In the Muslim world, this job was allotted to the *Muhtasib,* or Inspector General of Weights and Measures. These men and women were given wide powers to act on behalf of the public welfare. They regulated food production, fined polluters of rivers and streams, oversaw the sale and transport of milk, inspected restaurants and bathhouses, and strictly enforced a series of medical exams before any prospective doctor could begin to practice. One of the many surviving *Muhtasib* manuals included the following regulations:

➤ #109 No seller of fruit or vegetables is to weigh his own merchandise by picking up his scales himself, on the contrary, they are to be hung at a fixed point.
No one should be allowed to claim mastery over an art which he does not possess, above all in the practice of medicine, since this can lead to the loss of human lives: in truth it is the earth covering the tombs of dead men which hides the mistakes of the physician ... Each artisan’s activities should be limited to the exercise of his own trade; only those whose experience is recognized may claim to have mastered a skill.

A beast of burden should not be left standing in the bazaar, because it blocks the road and hinders people from passing and it might ... kick someone walking by.

Metal workers and brass beaters must be made to stop the noisy part of their work during the required prayer times.

In addition to a reasonable amount of regulation in society for both hygiene and business, citizens of a typical Islamic city enjoyed paved streets lit by oil lamps at night. Spacious homes competed for space with apartment flats, and jobs were plentiful. The poor or homeless could count on public welfare from the Zakat officer in the town hall, and those who felt wronged could hire a lawyer, called a hakeem, and bring suit in court. Even the ruler could be sued. A man claiming that his animals were unlawfully sold to him once sued Saladin, the Muslim hero of the Crusades. Saladin sat in court with his lawyer and argued his case and was cross-examined at length. (The plaintiff later dropped his case after evidence was presented to prove him wrong.)

Muslim judges called Qadis, could be male or female and were either appointed by the government or chosen by local communities. Following the dictates of the Qur’an to judge in all fairness, the Qadis also had to be masters of the Islamic legal sciences and honest individuals as well. Detailed records of actual court cases spanning the last thousand years of Islam have survived to this day.

Another benefit people enjoyed was the safety of depositing their money in institutions called al bank, which is the forerunner of the modern banking system. Venture capitalists could borrow money from the banks with an agreement to share a percentage of their profits with the lending institution. (Charging interest on loans is forbidden in Islam, so banks were picky about whom they loaned money to.) The much-publicized Islamic banking system today operates in much the same way.

Muslims are allowed to live in non-Muslim lands provided they promote their religion to those around them. They must also respect the local laws of their adopted countries as long as the laws don’t contradict the laws of Islam.
Travelers could count on safe roads, patrolled by the caliph or sultan’s troops; and frequent rest areas, called khans (caravansaries), dotted all major roads. If travelers were short on cash, government offices would make noninterest loans to the truly needy ones or give a gift of funds outright. Checks could be written that would honored by banks in other cities. Hotels, butlers, and the ever-present shopping mall known as the bazaar made shopping a snap.

The features of Islamic civilization sound suspiciously similar to many of the facets of modern life in the West. Now can you understand what the world of Islam lost? Muslims want that back, but they are saddled with fragmented states, outside interference, poverty and illiteracy, and bad governments. If American civilization were to come to an end and be replaced with something like that, wouldn’t the descendants of today’s citizens dream of what we have now?
The Least You Need to Know

➤ Muslim civilization preserved the knowledge of the ancient Greeks and others and passed it on to Europe.

➤ While Europe was in the Dark Ages, the Islamic world was the center for learning, inquiry, and science.

➤ The foundations for modern science and the scientific method were laid by Muslim researchers from the ninth to the thirteenth century.

➤ Muslim scholars invented algebra, made astounding astronomical discoveries, systematized chemistry, developed the practice of medicine to the highest standards in the world at that time, and made great strides in many other fields.

➤ Islamic civilization left a legacy upon which modern civilization is built. The western Europeans who studied in Muslim universities took what they had learned and built upon it.
Diversity is often praised as an essential component of the human experience. This diversity extends through all aspects of life, and many people would assert that pluralism in religion, both within and without a particular faith, is desirable and indicative of the overall health of the belief system. In this regard, all religions are divided into sects, though whether they coexist in harmony is another matter. Christianity, Judaism, Hinduism, and Buddhism each contain a myriad of diverse branches that all take root in the same tree. The same is true of Islam. There are about two dozen different sects in the world of Islam. Some have ancient roots, whereas others are really quite recent.

The two largest sects are the Sunnis and Shi’as. Together they account for more than 95 percent of the world’s Muslims, with the Sunnis being in the vast majority. Other
smaller groups continually compete for breathing space around the periphery of these two monoliths. What does Islam say about sectarianism? While the Prophet Muhammad did tolerate some differences of opinion, he did not approve of outright division. This sentiment is echoed in the Qur’an, which expressly forbids ideological conflict. Why did the unity of the Muslim religion become compromised, and what are the reasons for each major split? This is the issue I will be exploring in this chapter.

Sectarianism and Islam

The Qur’an accepts that preceding religious communities have broken up into sects. Although Islam calls upon its followers to be tolerant of people of other religions, it does not mention favorably the existence of sects within them. The Prophet Muhammad is quoted as saying, “The Jews have broken up into seventy-one sects. The Christians have broken up into seventy-two sects and my community will break up into seventy-three, and all of them will be in hellfire except one.” When he made this pronouncement, the Muslim community was a single entity, centered on Medina, and no one could have conceived that Muslims would become divided. One man asked, “Which sect will go to paradise?” Muhammad answered, “The one which I and my companions belong to.”

This prediction contains the caveat that only one Muslim sect will be correct, and as a consequence every different Muslim party, from Sunnis and Shi’as to Sufis and Salafis, vehemently claims that it is following the authentic tradition of the Prophet and his immediate followers. So which Islamic sect is the true one? As in the case of Christianity and Judaism, it depends on whom you ask. What I can say is that Islam is very explicit when it calls sectarianism a fault. The Qur’an warns Muslims, “And don’t be like those … who split up their religion and became mere sects, each rejoicing in what it claims it has.” (Qur’an 30:31–32)

Without attempting to discuss the merits or drawbacks of any particular sect, I will explore some of the most important ones and show how they have influenced the Muslim community through the years until the present time.

A Quick Look at Early Sects

How did sectarianism begin in Islam, and what were the first sects? To answer this question we need to look at events during the period of the first four caliphs (632–661), for the decisions made within that time frame resulted in most of the sects we have today. The first two groups to break off from the mainstream majority were the Kharajites, which you read about in Chapter 23, “The Rightly Guided Successors,” and the Shi’a (sometimes spelled as

Translate This

The term Shi’a literally means to split from, or cause, a sect. The second-largest sect in Islam takes its very name from this word.
Shiite). A third group arising a century later attempted to blend Islam with Greek philosophy. While each of these early sects resulted from complicated political feuding, only the Shi’a have survived as a political force to the present day.

**Beliefs of the Kharajites**

The Kharajites were originally just a political faction in the army of the fourth caliph, Ali (d. 661), who was struggling for control of the empire with a rival named Mu’awiya. When Ali entered peace talks with his foe, the Kharajites took it as a sign of weakness and seceded in their loyalty to him (thus the meaning of their name). The members of this group, however, soon began looking beyond politics and started delving into theology. Being outside the mainstream effectively meant there was no check on their activities.

The Kharajites focused almost exclusively on issues related to fate and the nature of sin. They had the uncompromising belief that if a Muslim committed a major sin, he was no longer a believer. Another issue they tackled was entry into Islam. Was a child born automatically into the fold of Islam, or did each individual have to choose Islam after attaining the age of puberty? The Kharajites opted for the latter. Their main contribution, however, was in calling attention to the practice of unfairly assigning new converts to the role of junior members in existing Arab tribes. This sect, which never gained a large following, is now relegated primarily to the country of Oman where it is called 'Ibadiism.

**The Greek Rationalists**

A new sect arose a short time later called the Mu’tazilites, or Moderate Withdrawers. They sought to create a middle position between the extremes of the Kharajites and the feuding companions of the Prophet. Hassan al Basri, an influential scholar who is credited with founding this movement (d. 728), laid out the position that a sinning Muslim was merely a hypocrite and not an unbeliever, and that everyone had the free will to choose. Other scholars soon began blending the newly introduced methodologies of Greek philosophy with traditional Islamic learning to further elucidate the true meaning of God’s power versus humankind’s freedom of action. Thus, the science of Islamic theology known as kalam (or didactic discourse) was born.

This was a useful development because Muslims hadn’t yet created the terminology necessary to debate such issues as the subtleties of Trinitarianism, faith versus reason, or the many thorny issues raised by the ancient Greek sophists. There would be other
uses for this learning as well. Throughout the ninth and tenth centuries especially, popular religion in the Muslim world began incorporating elements of pagan religions, such as dualism (a belief in a god of good and another of evil) and even anthropomorphism (deifying elements of nature).

These rationalist-minded scholars used their newfound language of theology to combat such damaging trends and succeeded in causing a revival of orthodoxy in much of the Muslim world. Traditional Muslim scholars, however, who relied more on uniquely Islamic sources such as the Qur’an and the hadiths, rejected this reliance on Greek learning and opposed the new theology vigorously. A synthesis of both trends was achieved in the writings of Al-Ash’ari (d. 935), a prominent scholar of the tenth century, who showed that both intellectual reasoning and traditional scriptural interpretation were compatible.

The Sunnis and Shi’as

It has been estimated that Sunnis make up approximately 85 percent of the world’s Muslim population, with Shi’as accounting for much of the rest. When people talk of sectarianism in Islam, these two names, which are rooted in the earliest days of the Islamic caliphate, are the most often mentioned. It may be tempting to make a passing comparison here with the great Protestant-Catholic divide in Christianity. However, whereas that division didn’t occur until well over a thousand years into the life of the church, the great Sunni-Shi’a break came within the lifetime of the surviving companions of the Prophet Muhammad and was not centered on doctrinal disputes.

The main reason for the existence of the Shi’a sect is directly related to the election of Abu Bakr as the first caliph of the Muslim community in the year 632. The Prophet had just passed away, and the leaders of Medina gathered to choose a political successor to keep the fledgling Muslim nation united. There was no question about doing this because the Prophet had spoken about it so often. After a heated debate, Abu Bakr was chosen to lead. Ali, the cousin and son-in-law of Muhammad (he was married to Muhammad’s favorite daughter, Fatimah), was not present at that meeting, and he later protested that he should have been given a fair shot at being selected the caliph.

Although Ali refused to swear allegiance to Abu Bakr for a few months, eventually he caved in and both he and his supporters took the oath. The stage was set for bad blood, however; and as each new caliph was elected, Ali’s friends stood by in anger, watching other men being given the nod while their beloved leader was passed over. Finally, in 656 when Ali was elected the fourth caliph, his group felt vindicated. Ali’s rule was short-lived, though; and the Shi’as (as his follow-
ers came to be known), who were still just a political faction at that time, felt that the clan of Banu Umayyah had unfairly snatched away the caliphate through war and deception.

The die was soon cast for permanent division as the sons of Mu’awiya and Ali began to vie for the caliphate. (Yazid ordered his army to kill Husayn, the son of Ali, at Karbala in Iraq.) Ironically, both Sunnis and Shi’as opposed Yazid’s actions and condemn them to this day, but whereas Sunnis say that it was a great injustice, the Shi’as take it as an act of treason against Islam. For the Shi’a, only a descendant of the Prophet Muhammad has the right to rule. If anyone says differently, then their faith is imperfect. There is no need for an election because birthright is enough legitimacy to rule. The Shi’a term for this ideal dynasty is Ahlul Bayt, or People of the House. This is a reference to the household of Muhammad.

In general, any Muslim who is outside the Shi’a sect is called a Sunni: a person who follows the tradition and example of Muhammad and his companions. (I have to mention here that all of the teachings of Islam discussed in this book, with the exception of any sectarian viewpoints highlighted, are from the majority Sunni point of view.) For a Sunni, any righteous Muslim can be elected caliph, not just a descendant of the Prophet. (Sectarianism among Sunnis has always been more on the basis of intellectual dispute than on practice.)

During Umayyad rule, the Shi’a continued their campaigns against those they considered to be usurpers, though they met with no success. Near the end of Umayyad rule, when the Abbasids (who were descendants of the Prophet Muhammad’s uncle, Abbas) were gathering their supporters to stage a coup, the Shi’as joined the cause, thinking that the new rulers would hearken to their call and choose a descendant of Ali to be the caliph. When the Abbasids chose one of their own instead, the Shi’as withdrew their support and began looking inward. By the end of the eighth century, they had started to develop doctrines of their own that were distinct and unique. They first reformulated the basis of Islamic law by rejecting completely the hadiths and legal opinions expressed by most of the companions of the Prophet. They did this on the grounds that anyone who supported a caliph other than Ali must be a sinner whose legitimacy is null and void.

As a consequence, the Shi’as began to compile their own books of hadiths and Qur’anic interpretation centering on what they considered to be the correct view of Islam. Many of the hadiths they recorded are different from the ones assembled by the majority community during and shortly after Muhammad’s passing. A major text was also prepared called the Nahjul Balagha (Path of Eloquence) in which the attributed sayings and sermons of Ali

---

**Ask the Imam**

How do Shi’as and Sunnis feel about each other? While there is animosity and suspicion on the popular level, top-level scholars from both camps have been remarkably conciliatory from the very beginning.
are collected. Variations in how the five pillars of Islam are practiced have crept in also. For example, many Shi’as combine certain prayers so that they actually pray only three times during the day, not five. The Shi’a call to prayer adds lines in which Ali is praised, and extra holidays commemorating events in the life of Ali and his descendants have been added.

Another area of difference with the majority Sunni community occurs in the province of leadership. While Sunnis have always taken a more relaxed view toward the selection of a leader (the most qualified adult male), Shi’a doctrine says that Ali and his male descendants have a secret, almost prophetic, knowledge that is passed on from father to son. They are sinless and infallible and are therefore the only choice to rule over the community of believers. The first Shi’a people followed Ali as their leader, though he sometimes disapproved of their excessive emphasis of his role. Succeeding generations rallied around his descendants, whom they called their Imams (leaders).

The sixth Shi’a Imam, Ja’far as Saddiq, is credited with formulating for his sect a complete legal code called the Ja’fari School of Thought. After Ja’far’s death in 765, the Shi’a divided into two separate sects, each following one of his two sons, Musa and Isma’il. The Isma’ili sect, as it is called today, stopped the line with the latter and went on to develop its own doctrines further. This group held that the Imams were part of a grand cycle of history. In place of the absent Imam, however, leaders who could speak for an awaited savior would govern. (The Aga Khan is currently considered the worldwide head of one of the two existing Isma’ili branches of Shi’ism.) This group was active in missionary work and converted many peasants and people on the frontiers to its cause. They even succeeded in establishing several Isma’ili dynasties at different points in Muslim history.

The main group of Shi’as went on to follow five more descendants of Ali and were united as a group in Baghdad during the time of the Abbasid caliphate. With the death of the eleventh Imam in 874, who left no heirs, the Shi’a developed the concept of a twelfth Hidden Imam, who was taken as a baby into another realm of existence. A prominent Shi’a family of Baghdad, the Banu Nawbakht, called themselves the agents of the Hidden Imam and claimed they had contact with him and spoke his will. After 941, this contact was declared closed. The next phase of leadership for the Shi’a community then passed into the hands of men who were charged with speaking on behalf of the twelfth Imam. This arrangement was to go on indefinitely until some future date when the Hidden Imam would return as a Messiah to liberate the Shi’a from the oppression heaped upon them by the usurpers of Ali’s rightful office.
Chapter 27 ➤ Meet the Islamic Sectarian Movements

The Shi’a gradually developed a new hierarchy of leadership consisting of an infallible popelike figure to lead the community. This person would rule the masses through a temporal priesthood consisting of men with such titles as Ayatullah, Mullah, and Hojatulislam. (The late Ayatullah Khomeini, who participated in the Iranian Revolution in 1978, achieved the highest rank in the eyes of the worldwide Shi’a community and was considered infallible.)

The Shi’a differ with the majority Sunnis on many issues related to leadership, doctrine, practice, and scriptural selection. (By way of contrast, Sunnis have no priesthood or identifiable religious structure.) Competing Shi’a and Sunni political factions have struggled for power all throughout Muslim history. While some Shi’a dynasties were formed, most notably the Fatimid dynasty of Egypt (910–1171), it has pretty much been a Sunni party for most of Muslim history. Today there is only one Shi’a-dominated country, Iran, with significant Shi’a minorities found in Iraq, Lebanon, Saudi Arabia, and India.

The Sufi Path

Sufis are perhaps the most well-known Muslims in the world. Gentle, introspective, and highly spiritual are the words that come to mind when Sufis are mentioned. However, Sufiism is not really a sect of Islam; rather it is the name of a spiritually oriented trend that is promoted within any given existing sect. For example, you can have Sunni or Shi’a Sufis. Sufiism implies a very esoteric, spiritual emphasis in one’s practice of Islam (tasawwuf). The Sufis seek to bring the experience of faith deep within their hearts to attain a state of inner ecstasy. The famous poet Jalaluddin Rumi expressed it best when he wrote: “What God said to the rose and caused it to laugh in full-blown beauty, He said to my heart and made it a hundred times more beautiful.” (The Mathnawi, vol. III, couplet 4129)

The Sufi movement didn’t begin with a single founder, nor are all Sufis united in one organization. It was the culmination of many social trends that first arose in the Umayyad dynasty. With the rapid growth of the empire, wealth began pouring in from all corners of the world, and a lot of otherwise faithful Muslims began to indulge in worldly pleasures. (Islam, on a very basic level, is against overindulgence, and Muhammad’s personal example was one of frugality and self-denial of most of life’s pleasures.) In addition, as the legal schools of thought, or madh-habs, were being formulated by the scholars of Islamic Law, some people felt there was too much emphasis on the rules and not enough on the spirit behind them.

Conscientious individuals began to see the rise of opulence, legalism, and pageantry among the Muslim community as a kind of deception. The dangerous life of the
world was about to engulf the pure message of Islam and leave nothing but an empty shell in its wake. These spiritually minded people started to renounce the world and live very simple lives to promote an example for others to follow. The very name *Sufi* comes from the Arabic word for wool, which became the preferred clothing of these people (who shunned silk and other fineries).

In time, intellectual and spiritual geniuses arose who attracted followers and students seeking to emulate the Sufi state of self-enlightenment. This ever-increasing association of individuals eventually gave rise to Sufi orders, or *tariqas*, which maintained headquarters and missions in many Muslim and non-Muslim lands. A *shaykh* would act as a kind of chief abbot and had absolute authority over his or her disciples. The basic foundation that Sufi shaykhs used to legitimize their power was the life of the Prophet Muhammad himself. They called him the exemplar of the God-oriented lifestyle and suggested they were merely continuing the tradition with their followers. The primary ideas of Sufiism can be summarized as follows:

- Faith in God can be experienced by the devoted believer through a program consisting of meditation, chanting, selfless love for others, and self-denial.
- Worldly possessions, if not kept to a minimum, can corrupt a person’s soul. Frugality is the key to spiritual wealth.
- The path of Sufiism requires its followers to develop patience, thankfulness to God, and a complete reliance on God’s knowledge of the future.
- In addition to the Qur’an and hadiths, another body of wisdom is contained in the teachings of the great Sufi masters. These consist of poems and wisdom stories that have hidden meanings.

While most Sufis stayed within the pale of Islamic Law, some went to extremes during the Abbasid caliphate and beyond. Bizarre rituals involving jinns, sword swallowing, and other stunts were initiated; and a few Sufis even denied some very basic Islamic dictates, such as the prohibition against drinking wine, praying at the tombs of the dead, and self-flagellation. Many Sufis also engaged in music and singing, much to the chagrin of the religious purists. This behavior resulted in Sufiism getting a bad reputation among the
traditional 'ulema, and many modern Muslim leaders look upon Sufiism as suspect even to this day, despite the popular support of the masses.

There were attempts to reconcile Sufiism and orthodoxy in the Middle Ages. Several prominent theologians, especially Al Ghazali, worked tirelessly to formulate a grand synthesis of law and spirit. While the gaps were closed significantly and Sufis now enjoy wide acceptance in the Muslim world, there are notable exceptions. The Salafis, a recently developed Muslim sect that is ultraconservative, consider Sufis to be outside the fold of Islam.

The distinctive dress of the Sufis consists of a turban and a robe.

(Photo by Luke Powell)

The Sufi movement has actually benefited the Muslim world in many ways. During the centuries of decline (1500–1900), Sufi orders took up the task of teaching Islam to the general masses. While traditional scholars largely were absent from Muslim society, preferring to study and debate within closed walls, it was the Sufis who traveled as missionaries, operated charities, and provided spiritual guidance in the countryside. Another area in which Sufis excelled was in organizing Muslims to participate in their own self-defense. During the period of Russian expansion into Central Asia, it was Sufi orders who were at the forefront of resistance. In places as diverse as West Africa and China, Sufi-led revolts stayed the hand of invading armies for centuries.
Sufi poetry, which tackles major religious and philosophical questions, is the source for inspiration for millions of Muslims—and now non-Muslims. In fact, poetry, storytelling, and verse have been the primary teaching tool for passing on Sufi knowledge. Perhaps the best-known poet in the world at this time is *Rumi*, whose anthologies of poetry now sell more copies than any other poet in North America. Other well-known Sufis who wrote stunning poetry or philosophical novels include:

- Abdul Qadir Jilani (1077–1166)
- Jalaluddin Rumi (1207–1273)
- Rabi’a al Adawiya (d. 796)
- Muhiyuddin ibn ‘Arabi (1165–1240)
- Fakhruddin ‘Iraqi (1213–1289)

Rabi’a al Adawiya, one of the earliest female Sufis, expressed the simple sincerity of her beliefs in the following ecstatic poem:

“Allah! If I worship you in fear of hell, then burn me in it; and if I worship You in hope of heaven, exclude me from it; but if I worship You for Your own sake, do not withhold from me Your everlasting beauty.” (Nurbakhsh, *Sufi Women*)

Common Sufi practices for achieving enlightenment consist of the following:

- Chanting God’s names and praises in unison (*zikr*) while seated in a circle or standing and turning slowly.
- Fasting and meditation in remote, natural places.
- Prolonged prayer at night.
- Sitting at the feet of a shaykh, listening to his or her teachings.
- Pilgrimage to the shrines of past Sufi masters (who are known as *saints*).

Sufiism has enjoyed rapid growth in the West. Sufi orders are being established by Muslims and even by non-Muslims who don’t necessarily want to convert to Islam but who desire to participate in the spiritual
discipline. There is a vast difference in each group’s adherence to basic Islamic teachings, but there is no doubt that this spiritual trend found in Islam has found a new home and is now a part of the American religious tradition.

**The Least You Need to Know**

➤ Islam is officially against sectarianism, though Muhammad foretold its appearance among Muslims.

➤ The earliest sects of Islam were formed over political and doctrinal issues. The main areas of conflict concerned who should rule and what was the extent of humankind’s free will.

➤ The Sunni sect is the largest single body of Muslims, consisting of approximately 85 percent of all the world’s followers of Islam.

➤ The Shi’a sect of Islam began because Ali was not elected the first caliph. It would later develop its own unique doctrines.

➤ Sufiism emphasizes spirituality and self-discipline as a way to achieve enlightenment. Sufis often chant and meditate on God and live lives devoted to frugality and charity.
Islam is a religion, a civilization, a state, a social system, and a philosophy. Muslims have always looked upon their religion as an integral part of life and have tried to order their societies upon a holistic model. Political miscalculations, willful negligence on the part of the religious establishment, and the laxity of the general populace resulted in Islamic civilization being dominated by the Christian West. Like the phoenix, however, Islam could never be permanently vanquished, and a growing consciousness among worldwide Muslims has resulted in a startlingly tenacious revival.

Muslims are seeking to negotiate a rebirth of their civilization under extremely difficult conditions, and sometimes the growing pains seem insurmountable. The consensus among Muslims is that, until they regain their self-respect and a balance in their lives between authentic Islam and the dictates of the modern world, they will never truly be able to integrate themselves into the global village. We will look at some of the issues and unresolved conflicts that are important to Muslims today in the hopes
that equitable solutions may be found to bring about an age of peace and harmony among the world’s religions.

The Death and Rebirth of Islam

When did the death knell sound for the independent world of Islam? Many Muslims say that it was Mu’awiyah who ruined a good thing by usurping the caliphate from Ali. Others postulate that the real damage was caused by the Mongols, who destroyed half the Muslim world. What about the abolition of the Ottoman caliphate in 1924, at the hands of Turkish secularists? While any of these would give sufficient reasons for a decline, Muslim writers of the last two centuries have generally looked beyond politics and war in crafting an explanation and have instead focused on the fickleness of the human soul. It wasn’t external events that caused a decrease in Islamic independence, they argue; rather it was a weakness of faith in the Muslim community at large.

This unique way of interpreting the devastation of the past is rooted in Islamic theology. “This book will raise some communities [if they are faithful to it] and bring down others [if they disregard it],” Muhammad said of the Qur’an. Muslims stopped evolving in all areas of life, from piety and religious devotion to education and technology, and wound up having a stagnant civilization at the same time European civilization was on the rise. Europe’s Enlightenment (due to Muslim discoveries in prior centuries) occurred simultaneously with Islam’s slow but steady decline.

Muslim scholars such as Jamaluddin Afghani (1839–97) and his student Mohammad Abdu sought to reverse this intellectual, political, and cultural slide by attempting a grand synthesis of religion and progressive values. They taught that Islam could be revived only when Muslims stopped opposing the introduction of modernity. Islam, they argued, could assimilate any noble ideal, and these ideals would only add to the strength of the community. This philosophy carried over into the twentieth century with such writers as Syed Abul A’la Maududi, Sayyid Qutb, Muhammad Iqbal, and others.

Interestingly enough, a split later occurred between these reformers and the traditional religious establishment, which wanted to maintain the status quo. Fierce debates were held in such places as India, Egypt, and Syria. The result was a permanent division between revivalists and traditionalists that is still apparent to this day. Both sides have cooled their rhetoric in recent decades, however, and an unspoken truce is currently operating in most countries. This partial reconciliation came not a moment too soon.
Why Has God Let Muslims Fail in War?

On the military front, the Muslim world has been fairly hopeless in the last three centuries. Russia, the Netherlands, France, and Britain have among themselves collectively divided the Muslim world into a great jigsaw puzzle. The last significant vestiges of empire were removed only in 1992 when the Central Asian Republics declared their independence from Russia. Why were European powers able to inflict such a defeat upon Muslims? It wasn’t that Muslims were not skilled in the arts of war, the modern line goes, but that they ceased to fight for God’s sake. Verses such as “The believers must win if they are true in faith” give a kind of antidote to what would have otherwise engendered disillusionment and despair.

Muslims take setbacks as a sign of God’s punishment for their spiritual laziness. It doesn’t matter that there is no caliphate in the world, or that the West has weapons of such power that it can destroy the planet, or that antireligious zealots govern Muslim nations. If the believers have become hypocrites, then a just chastisement from above is needed to wake them up. When Muslims start being true to their faith, they can regain their role as representatives of God’s last religion on Earth. Under this philosophy, the cause of Islam can be promoted anew anywhere in the world by sincere believers.

The Rebirth of an Ideal

The Islamic revival that has been sweeping over the Muslim world is akin to the great revival promoted by Christians in America in the early nineteenth century. Oppressed Muslims in Chechnya, Communist China, or the southern Philippines have as much fervor for this movement as do Islamist parties in Algeria and Turkey. Ironically, technology developed by Western nations has aided in the growth of religious consciousness among Muslims. The modern communications revolution has made Islamic teachings more available to the masses than ever before. Millions of Muslims who never really knew much about their faith are now as educated in their religion as some of the companions of the Prophet were.
In the last five decades, five ostensibly Islamic states have been established, consisting of the Sudan, Pakistan, Afghanistan, Iran, and Somaliland. (At least on paper they claim to be Islamic, though each is far from the ideal.) Numerous movements in other countries are trying to accomplish the same thing, both through peaceful and violent means. When secular governments happen to allow free elections in the Muslim world, Islamist parties invariably come out on top, such as in Turkey, Egypt, Jordan, and Algeria. (The secular militaries in some of these countries promptly made Islamic parties illegal, resulting in a violent reaction from the people.)

Although there have been many challenges to the global Islamic movement, such as a lack of coordination and faulty methodologies, the hidden progress in making people aware of what their religion is all about has been enormous. The simple fact of the matter is that a large chunk of the world’s Muslims are Muslim in name only. They have minimal or even nonexistent knowledge of Islam and do not practice its pillars. With the current rise of Islamic awareness, the direction of the Islamic revivalist movement is continuing to evolve into grander themes. Could a new Islamic caliphate emerge uniting several Muslim nations into one federal entity? Time will tell. An extremely large number of ordinary, peace-loving Muslims hope so.

**What Do Muslims Want?**

It is often hard for Westerners to understand what Muslims in so many places are fighting for. This is understandable because Europe and North America have enjoyed an unbroken chain of peace that has lasted for half a century. Even though the two World Wars caused enormous destruction, especially in Europe, the wars were fought among nations that already were the most powerful in the world. To know what Muslims want, you have to look at the reality of what the last century has been like for them.

The Muslim world, which used to span an uninterrupted swath of territory running from Spain to China, was fragmented because of internal weakness and then set upon by external enemies. The once cosmopolitan, multi-ethnic melting pot of Islam, where local rulers were really just a footnote in the history of the civilization, was divided into ministates by Europe. When the colonizers left, the states were turned over to antireligious secularists. Following the Western model of separating religion from politics, these unelected presidents and dictators closed religious schools; arrested Imams; removed or warped religious instruction in the public school curriculum; imposed socialism, secularism, or communism on
Chapter 28 ➤ Islam in World Affairs Today

their people; and passed laws that were contrary to the Islamic legal tradition. All of this didn’t happen over many centuries, but over 50 years.

Poverty, illiteracy, endless coups, and corruption have plagued most Muslim nations due to the estrangement between ruler and ruled. For example, in Nigeria, a country with billions of dollars in oil revenues, most of the population lacks basic education and medical services. As a result of the chronic mismanagement of the nation, an Islamic revivalist movement has succeeded in causing several northern provinces to declare the resumption of Islamic Law as the legal code of the territory. (Non-Muslims are exempted from Islamic Law, by the way.)

In other nations, such as India, Israel, the former Yugoslavia, and the Philippines, where Muslims live as persecuted minorities, the reality of life is harsh and oftentimes dangerous. Muslims point to the murder of 200,000 Bosnians by the Serbs, the Israeli usurpation of Palestine, the French-led genocide against the Algerians, and the Chinese Communist policy of forcibly settling non-Muslims in Muslim lands all as examples of grave injustices done against them. If Americans ever wondered why so many people around the world wanted to immigrate, they need look no further than the daily news with all its stories of tragedy in the developing world. (For all its foibles, America is generally a nice place to live, and Muslim Americans are very grateful!)

Most Muslim nations were not even created by the people living within them. European colonial powers decided the borders of those countries before they left, and this has created a legacy of conflict among these nations, who often fight for land or resources that in the past would have been communal property. (Winston Churchill once boasted, “I created Jordan one afternoon in the drawing room.”) Recent wars pitting such diverse rivals against each other as Ethiopia and Eritrea, Pakistan and India, as well as the Arab-Israeli conflict over Palestine, illustrate this continuing problem.

In summary, Muslims are looking for

1. Redress for all the wrongs done against them by outsiders.
2. The right to revive Islamic civilization without interference from the West.
3. The unification of all Muslim territories into one federally organized Islamic caliphate.
4. The replacement of antireligious ruling elites with sincere Muslims who will rule according to the Shari’ah.

**Just the Facts**

The main hot spots that Muslims currently want to see resolved are Kashmir (independence from India), Palestine (a Palestinian state with Jerusalem as its capital), Chechnya (independence from Russia), the Sudan (an end to the foreign-backed southern rebellion), Azerbaijan (an end to the Armenian occupation), and Xinjiang in China (independence or at least meaningful autonomy).
Although this may sound like a tall order, Muslims around the world believe these goals can be achieved if they work diligently and faithfully for God’s sake. Muslims aren’t asking to conquer the world or to upset the global economic system. They just want what their ancestors had, another Golden Age of Islam.

There have been many positive and negative developments in the revival of Islam in the past century. Muslims have succeeded in establishing home rule in about 90 percent of their world. (Captive Muslim nations can still be found in parts of Russia, China, the Philippines, Africa, and Europe.) Many new Islamic groups have been formed, bringing a vitality back into Islam that was lacking for a long time. Among these groups are

➤ **Jamaati Islami**  The Islamic Group, located primarily in the Indian subcontinent.

➤ **Ikhwan al Muslimun**  The Muslim Brotherhood, an Arab phenomenon founded by Hassan al Banna early in the twentieth century that operates in Egypt, Syria, and Jordan. It is presently banned in Egypt and Syria.

➤ **Organization of the Islamic Conference (OIC)**  A sort of United Nations for Muslim countries. Annual meetings are held in which issues of concern to Muslim nations are discussed.

➤ **Tablighi Jamaat**  The Teaching Group, a missionary organization founded in India that works to revive Islam in Muslim populations around the world through preaching and teaching.

Major setbacks have occurred as well. Many wars, despotic governments, and losses of territory have caused the Muslim world to suffer tremendous hardship. (Think of the virtual partition of Bosnia, the decimation of Chechnya, the excesses of numerous dictators, or the fate of occupied Azerbaijan.) In addition, Muslims feel that the United States has replaced Europe as the great suppressor of Islamic revivalism because of its overwhelming economic and military presence in the world. Most disturbing of all has been the establishment of permanent American military bases in Saudi Arabia, the heartland of Islam. (This is what created the likes of Osama bin Laden.) Other events have also seemed to confirm for Muslims the suspicion that America will deny its own ideals in pursuit of its aim of global domination.

**The Establishment of Israel**

The existence of Israel is not actually an Islamic issue. The Islamic religion does not forbid the creation of nations, nor does Islam teach hatred of Jews or any other ethnic group. What makes Muslims keenly interested in this situation can be boiled down to two things: injustice and Jerusalem.

From the Muslim point of view, the Arabs of Palestine were unjustly driven from their land in 1948 by a United Nations decision in which they had no say. The
Zionist rallying cry—“A land without a people for a people without a land”—was, in fact, a patently false fiction for the very reason that, except for the driest areas of Palestine, the land was already filled with Arabs. Even though Arab countries made a feeble attempt to stop this alien imposition, Israeli forces, which were equipped with superior weapons and training, were able to seize even more land than the UN partition plan allotted them.

The local Arabs, who came to be labeled Palestinians, were driven out of hundreds of towns and villages through terror campaigns and brute force. The hundreds of thousands of Arabs who remain today are still being oppressed by an Israeli government that routinely seizes people’s homes and farms and engages in mass arrests and torture. Perhaps the most insidious plan of all, from the Muslim perspective, is the construction of Israeli settlements on appropriated Arab land. (That sounds suspiciously close to ethnic cleansing.) While much talk has been made of the Arab desire to destroy the state of Israel, little coverage of the reasons why Arabs and Muslims are so angry has been aired. Unqualified American support for Israel hasn’t helped America’s image as an honest broker either.

Just the Facts

It may be surprising to learn that Arab Christians have actually been at the forefront of the struggle for Arab rights in Palestine. The prolific writer, Edward Said, has brought this issue to the world through his compelling books. Hanan Ashrawi, who, as of this writing, is a member of the Palestinian National Authority, has been an international spokeswoman for her people’s cause. On the opposite end, the most violent Palestinian terrorist group, the Popular Front for the Liberation of Palestine (PFLP), is actually run by a Christian named Ahmed Jibreel.

So how have Muslims from Malaysia to Gambia been brought into this conflict? Muslims all over the world are concerned about the fate of Israeli-occupied Jerusalem. Jerusalem is the third holiest city in Islam, behind Mecca and Medina. The Prophet Muhammad had his miraculous Night Journey and Ascension from the holy rock on the Temple Mount there, and the first city that Muslims faced when prayers were originally established was this one. The Muslim response is clear: Jerusalem must be either placed under Muslim control, shared, or given the status of an international city.
If the Arab-Israeli conflict were merely a struggle for land between Israelis and Arabs, then most Muslims might not feel so close to the situation for Islam is not, after all, an Arab religion or centered on the concerns of any one racial or ethnic group. It’s when you add a religious dimension that is central to Islamic sensibilities, that the circle of concerned individuals is expanded. As of this writing, peace talks that were first initiated in Oslo and that had almost succeeded in a breakthrough peace settlement broke down over the very issue of the status of Jerusalem. Yasir Arafat, the Palestinian leader, later remarked, “How could I go back to my people and show them an agreement without Jerusalem?”

It is not an article of faith for Muslims to destroy Israel. If the issue of Jerusalem could be solved to the satisfaction of the world’s Muslims, and the injustices done against the Palestinians resolved, then perhaps the modern state of Israel could exist in peace in the Middle East. (Muslim rulers during the Crusades often made peace treaties with the Europeans.) As of this writing, two Arab countries have already concluded treaties with the Jewish-dominated state of Israel. More might be willing to do the same if the Israelis would concede that wrongs were done and that Jerusalem should be the property of all the religions that claim it—or the property of none at all. Stay tuned.

**The Iranian Revolution**

In 1978 Americans saw Iranian students storm the U.S. Embassy and hold the American diplomats hostage for more than a year. Why did the Iranians engage in such an uncouth act? Why did they hate the Shah so much? To understand this situation, you need only look at the reasons for the American Revolution against the British monarch. Issues such as a lack of representation, unfair taxes, undue search and seizure, and despotic policies caused the American colonists to wage an eight-year war for their freedom.

In Iran, the position of shah (Persian for king) was that of an absolute dictator who had no check on his authority. The previous shah, Riza Pehlavi, decreed many laws against Islam, among which was one prohibiting the wearing of head scarves by Muslim women. His son, Muhammad Riza, who began his rule in 1941, embarked on an ambitious program to modernize the country. In his quest to bring Iran into the twentieth century, however, he relied on old-fashioned repression to quell any dissent. His secret police, known as the Savak, routinely arrested and tortured people. In addition, the Shah turned over control of the country’s resources to foreigners, such as
the Americans and British, and lived a lavish lifestyle while many of his subjects lived in abject poverty.

When the excesses of the Shah’s regime could not be tolerated by the populace any further, an exiled Shi’a cleric named Ayatullah Khomeini came to the forefront of the movement to topple the Shah. He used smuggled cassette tapes and booklets to rally ordinary Iranians against their king. Student-led protests began to swell into general strikes, and people all over Iran declared their desire for freedom from dictatorship. Even the Shah’s army turned against him, and in 1979 Khomeini stepped off a plane and was proclaimed the ruler of the newly founded Islamic Republic.

So why the hostage crisis? Unbeknownst to most Americans, in 1952 the people of Iran had carried out a successful revolution against the Shah and tried to establish a democratic republic, but the CIA initiated a countercoup, orchestrated from the American Embassy, that brought the brutal and sadistic Shah back to power. His revenge against the populace was terrible and bloody. (Another failed uprising by Iranian civilians was brutally crushed in 1963.) Iranians were afraid in 1978 that America would intervene again to bring the hated dictator back to power.

Was there chaos in the aftermath of the revolution and a lot of unjust reprisals against the Shah’s supporters? Undoubtedly, but the same occurred during the American Revolution when British loyalists were harassed, their property seized, and a few even hanged. Not to excuse the excesses committed by the new Iranian regime, this comparison merely serves to illustrate how any revolution can result in bloody disorder until things settle down. (The Iranian Revolution was no more messy than the French Revolution.) After the passing of two decades, life in Iran has settled down, and we see the healthy interplay of political forces, each using the ballot box to try to achieve its goals.

**The Satanic Verses**

When Salman Rushdie published his novel poking fun at the Prophet Muhammad and his family, Muslims around the world were outraged. Islamic Law contains strict antidefamation protocols. Even as Western nations have banned certain books and other types of speech (such as Nazi propaganda and hate speech), Islam also calls unjust slander a criminal offense. The punishment for slandering a woman falsely is 100 lashes; for defaming the Prophet of God, capital punishment is a possible legal sentence (unless the slanderer retracts his or her statements and seeks public forgiveness).

The late Ayatullah Khomeini of Iran leveled the death penalty against Rushdie unless he publicly withdrew his work. Given that Rushdie, an Indian expatriate, was living in England at the time, he was in no immediate danger. Muslims looked aghast, however, as Western liberals rushed to his defense, even as they remained silent in the face of free-speech violations carried out against Muslims in many parts of the world. In France head scarves are banned from most public institutions. Turkey goes so far as to restrict Qur’anic education for children, and China has numerous restrictions against the free teaching of Islam.
With the passage of time, Rushdie’s well-publicized life on the lam has become rather mundane. There is little danger of any harm coming to him, and he has since published other books and novels. Unfortunately, the whole affair was blown out of proportion, and again the broad brush was used to make all Muslims seem like they were crazed assassins ready to pounce. The very fact that Rushdie enjoys complete freedom of movement, even though there are more than a billion Muslims in the world, proves that Muslims are just as thoughtful and reasonable as anybody else.

Islam, the Next Chapter

So what happens next? After learning about the beliefs, practices, hopes, struggles, and aspirations of Muslims, where is the world of Muslim going in the coming decades? Will it integrate fully into global society, or will it retreat back into itself? Is there going to be a great clash of civilizations in the near future, as some writers have suggested? The answer to all of these questions, from the Muslim perspective, is only God knows. We can, however, look at current trends both within and without the world of Islam and make some cautious predictions.

There will likely be an accommodation established between Islam and the West, if for no other reason than the fact that within a few more decades, significant portions of the population in Europe and North America will be made up of Muslims. Revolutionary struggles pitting Islamists against corrupt secular governments in the Middle East will likely continue for some time, and the Arab-Israeli conflict will probably be settled in the not-too-distant future. Muslim freedom fighters will continue their campaigns to liberate their occupied nations, and Muslims in the West will press for equal religious rights enabling them to wear hijabs (head scarves), beards, and attend Friday congregational services.

*The Crescent and Star, which is often promoted as the emblem of Islam, is actually a Byzantine Imperial symbol that was appropriated by the Ottoman Turks. The Prophet Muhammad used black-and-white flags as his symbols; common alternatives are green flags with the Muslim creed written on them.*
We may see the emergence of a new, albeit symbolic, Islamic caliphate again. The new caliph may not actually have any state authority but will act as a sort of global Islamic spokesman in much the same way as the Catholic pope is seen as a representative of Christendom. In my humble opinion, the new caliphate will probably be located somewhere in east Asia and not the Arab world, but that is purely speculation based on my reading of the trends.

Muslims are, in general, peace-loving people who look to their faith to help solve the problems that confront us all in daily life. As you have learned, Islam is not a religion of hate or violence but is a way of life that brings out the best in its sincere followers. My prayer is that as the future unfolds, Muslims and non-Muslims can gain a greater appreciation for what Islam is actually about. Taking the time to read this book is certainly a great place to start! May you go in peace and live a good life devoted to faith and helping your fellow creatures. Ameen! Let it be so!

The Least You Need to Know

- Muslims are looking for redress for a century of humiliation and oppression that has been directed against them.
- The two main issues that cause Muslims worldwide to oppose Israel are the injustice against the Arabs inherent in Israel’s founding and the status of Jerusalem.
- The Iranian Revolution was more of a political movement against a despot than an Islamic struggle.
- The Muslim world is in such turmoil as a consequence of the legacy of Colonialism.
- Islamic revivalism is not a danger to the West. Muslims are seeking mainly to get responsible government in their countries.
- The future of relations between Islam and the non-Muslim world is bright with many positive possibilities.
The Muslim calendar follows a lunar cycle of 12 months. Every new moon signifies the beginning of a new month. Each month is from 29 to 30 days long, depending on the moon sighting. An Islamic year then has approximately 354 days. There are no leap years. Each year the Islamic months move backward by about a week and a half through the months of the English calendar. Because of this, Islamic festivals and annual rituals will be in different seasons each year.

The names of the months predate Islam and have ancient roots in the Arabian peninsula. It was during the rule of the Caliph Umar, in 637, that the beginning date for the Islamic calendar was fixed according to the year that the Prophet made his migration from Mecca to Medina. The year 622 is our year zero!

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Islamic Month</th>
<th>English Meaning</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Muharram</td>
<td>The Sacred Month</td>
<td>The Islamic New Year.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Safar</td>
<td>The Month of Traveling</td>
<td>Traditionally the month that caravans set out for Syria or Yemen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rabiul Awwal</td>
<td>The First Spring</td>
<td>Muhammad was born on the twelfth of this month.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rabiath-Thani</td>
<td>The Second Spring</td>
<td>Named for the last vestiges of spring.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jumada al Awwal</td>
<td>The First Dry Month</td>
<td>Refers to the hot summer months.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jumada ath-Thani</td>
<td>The Second Dry Month</td>
<td>A continuation of the preceding.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rajab</td>
<td>The Month of Respect</td>
<td>Pre-Islamic Arabs used to hold a general truce in this month to allow for religious pilgrimage.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Islamic Month</td>
<td>English Meaning</td>
<td>Explanation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>--------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sha’ban</td>
<td>The Dividing Month</td>
<td>Many Muslims hold a special ceremony in this month to mark the importance of God’s knowledge of the future.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ramadan</td>
<td>The Month of Great Heat</td>
<td>Muslims fast from dawn to dusk this month.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shawwal</td>
<td>The Month of Hunting</td>
<td>The festival of the fast breaking occupies the first three days of this month.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dhul Qa’dah</td>
<td>The Month of Rest</td>
<td>Traditionally a time when business activity slowed in Arabia.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dhul Hijjah</td>
<td>The Month of Pilgrimage</td>
<td>When the hajj to Mecca takes place.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The Qur’an mentions 25 prophets by name. Twenty-one of them are also found in the Judeo-Christian tradition. Islam accepts them as having been true guides from Allah and merely states that their stories, as contained in the Bible, have been altered and are now inaccurate. The Qur’an says that one of its jobs is to set the record straight about whom God’s prophets were and what they did. “N/A” means that this is a prophet who was sent to people either outside the Middle East or outside the scope of the Judeo-Christian experience.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Qur’anic Name</th>
<th>English Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Adam</td>
<td>Adam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Idris</td>
<td>Enoch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nuh</td>
<td>Noah</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hud</td>
<td>N/A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Salih</td>
<td>N/A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ibrahim</td>
<td>Abraham</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Isma’il</td>
<td>Ishmael</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Is-haq</td>
<td>Isaac</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lut</td>
<td>Lot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ya’qub</td>
<td>Jacob</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yusuf</td>
<td>Joseph</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shu’aib</td>
<td>N/A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ayyoub</td>
<td>Job</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Musa</td>
<td>Moses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Harun</td>
<td>Aaron</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Qur’anic Name</td>
<td>English Name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dhul Kifl</td>
<td>Ezekiel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dawud</td>
<td>David</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sulaiman</td>
<td>Solomon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ilyas</td>
<td>Elias</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Al Yasa’</td>
<td>Elisha</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yunus</td>
<td>Jonah</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zakariyya</td>
<td>Zechariahs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yahiya</td>
<td>John the Baptist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘Esa</td>
<td>Jesus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Muhammad</td>
<td>N/A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Now that you have taken your first look into the world of Islam you may want to know more about a particular area or delve deeper into the philosophy, culture, or history of Islam. As you may have noticed, Islamic beliefs and teachings are not so complicated that it is impossible to gain a great amount of understanding. In fact, Islam has often been praised for its simplicity, directness, and explicability.

These qualities don’t mean, however, that Islam is a lightweight subject or that there isn’t a lot more to know and discover. On the contrary, within the pages of the Qur’an and Hadith are a myriad of themes, ideas, concepts, and meanings that invite further study. The history of Islamic civilization down to our present day is filled with hard-earned treasures of knowledge that make the Islamic experience even more rewarding and satisfying. In addition, Muslim folklore, fiction, philosophical essays, and religious commentary present a fascinating journey for the traveler thirsty for adventure, reflection, and challenge.

**The Holy Qur’an (in English)**

The best place to continue your journey, of course, is with the Holy Qur’an. While many translations of the Arabic text into English are available, some are more clearly translated than others. The most commonly accepted translations in the English world today are these:


Both translations are made by recognized Muslim scholars and are widely available on-line. I don’t recommend using most of the translations you’ll find in your local bookstores, though. They are generally out-of-date translations, works done by well-meaning but unqualified Christian missionaries, or translations by people with Muslim names who do not follow Islam according to the standard mainstream. Can you imagine reading a Bible translated by an atheist or a Hindu?

The Hadiths

For books of the Prophet’s sayings, or Hadiths, I recommend any of these:


Books About Islam

For excellent books about Islam, the Prophet Muhammad, and related topics, I recommend the following sources:


Appendix C


**Islamic Non-Fiction, Fiction, and Poetry**

Leisure reading from the world of Islam is a not-to-be-missed experience! Here are some very enjoyable books, both classic and modern, to feast your mind upon:


Abbasid  The name of the second great Muslim dynasty.

Adam  The first man according to Islam.

Ahl al Kitab  “People of the Book.” Jews and Christians who received revelations (books) from God in the past.

Akhirah  The next life.


Allah  “The God before Whom there are no others.”

Ansar  “Helpers.” Converts to Islam who lived in Medina.

aqiqah  The ritual for welcoming a baby into the world.

Arabic  The name of the language spoken by the Arab people. Non-Arabs learn it for religious reasons because the Qur’an was revealed in that tongue and also because Islamic prayers are recited in it.

Arkan al Islami  The pillars of Islam consisting of the declaration of faith, prayer, fasting, charity, and pilgrimage.

Asma’ ul Husna  “The Most Beautiful Names.” A list of the 99 names of God through which Muslims understand what God is like.

Asr  The late-afternoon prayer.

assalamu alaykum  “Peace be upon you.” The Muslim greeting of peace.

ataqullah  “Be conscious of God’s presence in your life.”

ayah  “A sign.” The term for a verse of the Qur’an.
Ayatullah “Sign of God.” The title of a major Shi’a cleric.

azan The Muslim call to prayer consisting of several religious statements.

Azra’îl The proper name of the angel of death, also known as Malikul Mawt.

Bani Isra’il The Children of Israel.

Barzakh “The partition.” The time between death and the resurrection. The souls of the dead are in a stored state and are either dreaming pleasantly or being tormented based upon their faith and deeds while in the world.

Baytul Hikmah “House of Wisdom.” A scholarly think tank established by Caliph Ma’mun in 830 in the city of Baghdad. Most of the major translations of Greek texts into Arabic took place here.

Baytullah “The House of God.” One of the alternate names for the Ka’bah.

Colonialism The period from the seventeenth to the twentieth century when the major European powers conquered and occupied nearly every nation on Earth, most of them being Muslim territories.

Crusades A series of Christian invasions into the Muslim Middle East that began in 1099 and ended in 1270.

Dajjal The anti-Christ.

deen Way of life.

dhikr (ziker) Remembering God through repeating religious phrases. This is the Muslim version of the rosary.

dhulm Transgression, going out of all bounds in moral behavior.

du’a Supplication, personal requests to God.

dunya The world.

‘Eid ul adha The Islamic holiday at the end of the Hajj.

‘Eid ul Fitr The Islamic holiday at the end of the fast of Ramadan.

Emanul Mufassil The seven main beliefs of Islam listed in detail.

Esa The Islamic name for Jesus.

Fajr The dawn prayer.

fatwa A legal ruling by a competent Islamic legal scholar. Fatwas can be challenged or overruled and are not automatically binding on the community.

fiqh Understanding the application of the Islamic Law and how to formulate new rulings.
fitrah The inner moral compass that all humans are born with. People can become influenced by it to seek God, or they can consciously bury it under a load of sin and denial.

futuwwat The Muslim code of battlefield honor that Europeans copied and labeled chivalry.

Gabriel The chief angel charged with the responsibility of bringing revelations to prophets and others. Also spelled Jibra’il.

hadith “An account.” Any saying by, or action attributed to, the Prophet Muhammad.

hafiz “Guardian.” A person who has memorized the entire Qur’an by heart.

Hajj “Pilgrimage.” The annual pilgrimage to Mecca, which takes place in the twelfth month of the Islamic lunar calendar. All Muslims must make this journey once in a lifetime if they are physically able and can afford to do so.

Hajji “Pilgrim.” The title given to the person who has completed the Islamic pilgrimage ritual.

halal Allowed to eat or engage in.

haram Forbidden to eat or engage in.

Hawwa The name for Eve in Islam.

haya Life in general.

Hayat ad-Dunya The life of this world.

Hidayah Guidance from God.

hijab The head scarf worn over the hair.

Hijrah The migration of Muhammad and his followers from hostile Mecca to friendly Medina in 622. The Muslim calendar was later given this year as its start.

houri Pleasure mates in Heaven who are soulless and programmed to please our carnal desires.

hudood The legal limits allowed by Islamic Law.

Iblis “Frustrated.” The proper name of Satan before he turned to evil.

Ibrahim The Islamic name for Abraham.

idda Before the finalization of a divorce, the waiting period for a woman to see whether she is pregnant.

ihitisab Self-reflection and assessment.

ijtihad Using independent thought to create a new Islamic legal opinion for an issue that has no clear answer in the two main sources of Islam.
Illiyun  The register in which the people of paradise have their names written.

Imam  “Leader.” In Sunni Islam, it denotes primarily the person who leads congregational prayers. In Shi’a Islam, it is the title of the supreme guides from God.

Iman (Ee maan)  The term for faith or belief. Also spelled Eman.

Injeel  The Arabic name for the Gospel or Evangel of Jesus.

insan  The Islamic term for humankind; adaptable creatures.

Isha  The late-night prayer.

Islam (Iss laam)  “Surrendering to God and attaining peace.” The Arabic name for the religion taught by Muhammad.

Israfil  The angel who will blow the trumpet, signaling the last day.

ithim  A bad deed.

I’tikaf  The practice of spiritual retreat by living in the mosque during the last 10 days of Ramadan.

Jahaliya  “Ignorance.” Refers to the time before the advent of Islam when superstitious and barbaric customs were a part of Arabian life.

Jahannum  The name for Hell.

Janazah  Funeral rites in Islam.

Jannah  “Garden.” Heaven or Paradise.

jihad  “To struggle, strive or exert.” Often mistranslated as holy war, this term can apply to any exertion in God’s cause. Examples range from going to school and a woman making the Hajj to fighting a war or giving up a bad habit.

jinn  “Hidden ones.” The term used for a class of invisible spirits that inhabit another dimension. They can communicate with us only through our minds. There are good and evil jinn. The caricature of the genie is based on this creature.

Jum’ah  “Gathering.” Friday, the day for the congregational prayer.

Ka’bah  The cube-shaped shrine in Mecca built originally by the Prophet Abraham.

kafir  “One who hides or covers the truth.” Often mistranslated as unbeliever. Plural: Kuffar.

Kalimah  “Creed or word.” A defining statement of faith.

Khalifa  “Caretaker.” The term for the supreme leader of the Muslim community after the passing of the Prophet. Spelled as caliph in English.

Khatmi Qur’an  The name of the ceremony celebrating a child’s first completion of reading the entire Qur’an. Also called an Ameen ceremony.

khul’  A wife-initiated divorce.

Kiraman Katibeen  The two angels assigned to each person that record good and bad deeds in our book of records.

Kiswah  The embroidered black cloth that covers the Ka’bah in Mecca.

Kitabullah  “Book of God.” One of the titles of the Qur’an.

Laylat ul Qadr  “The Night of Measurement or Power.” The exact date on which Muhammad started receiving the Qur’an. It falls in 1 of the last 10 days of Ramadan.

Maghrib  The sunset prayer.

Mahdi  The awaited hero who will rally the oppressed Muslims of the Earth to victory in the end-times. For Shi’a Muslims, he is the savior who will make Shi’aism transcendent.

mala’ikah (Mala eeka)  Angels, beings with power, message-bearers.

Malikul Mawt  The angel of death.

Masih  The Messiah. A term attributed to Jesus in the Qur’an. He was meant to be the Messiah for the Jewish people.

masjid  “Place of prostration.” The proper name for a Muslim house of worship.

Masjid al Haram  “The Restricted Mosque.” Another name for the Ka’bah and the mosque that surrounds it. Many restrictions apply upon a person who enters this mosque, such as the person must not kill any living thing, even a bug; and the person must be in a purified state.

Masjid an Nabawi  The Prophet’s mosque in Medina.

Mathnawi  The name of the collected poems of Jalaluddin Rumi.

Maulid un Nabi  The birthday of the Prophet Muhammad. This widely celebrated holiday is controversial in Islam because it has no sanction from the main Islamic sources.

Mecca (Makkah)  A city in southwestern Arabia founded by Abraham’s wife Hagar and their son Ishmael. An important religious shrine is located there, and it is the birthplace of Muhammad.

Medina (Madeena)  “City.” Formerly known as Yathrib, this city became the first capital of Islam in 622, when Muhammad and his persecuted followers fled Mecca. Also spelled Madinah.

Mika’il  The angel who can alter the weather by God’s command.
minbar  The pulpit on which the Imam stands to deliver his Friday sermon. Out of respect for the Prophet’s position, the top step of this three- or four-stepped pulpit is not stood upon.

Mohammadanism  The name Europeans gave to the religion of Islam in the seventeenth century, thinking that Muslims worshipped Muhammad as god.

mosque  Derived from the Spanish word for mosquito, this term disparagingly refers to a Muslim house of worship. The Spanish boasted they would blot out Muslim prayer houses from Spain as if they were swatting mosquitoes.

muazzin  The person who gives the Muslim call to prayer five times daily from the minaret of a mosque.

Muhajirun  The Meccan Muslims who fled to Medina during the Hijrah.


munafiq  A hypocrite.

Musallah  The actual place where a ritual prayer is held in a mosque.

mushrik  An idolater.

Muslim (Muslim)  “A person who is surrendering to God and finding peace.” A follower of the religion of Islam.

nabi  A prophet from God.

nafs  The Islamic term for the id, or self. The real you; your personality and character.

Nasara  The Islamic term for Christian. It comes from the name Nazareth. It is also related to the term for helper, which is how Jesus’ disciples are viewed in the Qur’an.

nikah  The Islamic marriage ceremony.

Orientalist  The term used to describe Western Christian and Jewish scholars who made the study of Islam their vocation in the nineteenth and twentieth centuries.

Ottoman  The name of a Muslim dynasty that ruled over the Middle East and part of Europe until 1918.

qada  “Determination.” Often mistranslated as fatalism.

qadr  “Measurement.” Often mistranslated as destiny or fate.

qiblah  The direction of Mecca toward which all Muslims face when they pray.

Qur’an (Kuuran)  “The Reading or Recital.” It is the name of the Islamic Holy Book. Muslims believe it is the direct word of God, delivered to Muhammad by an angel in small portions from the years 610 to 623 C.E. Also spelled Koran.

Ramadan (Rama Dân)  The ninth month of the Islamic lunar calendar. Muslims observe a dawn-to-dusk fast for the 29 or 30 days of this month.
Glossary

**rasul**  A messenger from God who receives a scripture.

**riddah**  Apostacy.

**ruh**  The Islamic name for the soul.

**sabr**  Patient resolve and perseverance in the face of adversity. This quality is a sign of true faith in God.

**sadaqa**  Charity.

**Sahaba**  Companions of the Prophet. The people who accepted Islam and saw or heard him directly.

**salat**  “Red-hot connection.” The ritual Islamic prayers performed five times daily.

**Saum**  Fasting. Also spelled *Siyam*.

**Seerah**  Biography of the Prophet Muhammad.

**Shahadah**  “To witness or testify.” The Muslim statement of belief: I declare there is no god but Allah, and I declare that Muhammad is the Messenger of Allah.

**shaheed**  A martyr.

**Shari’ah (Shareeya)**  “The path.” The term for Islamic Law.

**Shaykh**  “Respected elder or chief.” Among Sunnis, it is commonly used as the title for a religious scholar. Also spelled *sheikh* or *sheik*.

**Shaytan**  “To pull away from.” Satan in Arabic.

**Shi’a**  The second-largest sect of Islam. Shi’as claim that Muhammad’s son-in-law, Ali, and his descendants are the only rightful rulers of the community.

**shirk**  “Associating.” Making others equal to God. The only unforgivable sin if a person dies while doing it.

**shura**  “Mutual consultation.”

**Sijjin**  The register in which the people of Hell have their names written.

**Sirat**  The path or bridge over the pit of Hell that all souls must pass over after they have received their verdict from God. For those who make it over, Heaven awaits. Sinners will fall into Hell.

**Siratal Mustaqeem**  The straight path (of Islam).

**Sufi**  The mystics of Islam.

**Suhuf (Soo hoof)**  The Islamic name for the revealed scrolls of the Prophet Abraham.

**Sunnah**  The example of the Prophet Muhammad as contained in his *hadiths*, or sayings, including his actions and silent approval of actions done in his presence.
Sunni  The largest sect of Islam that claims to follow the example of Muhammad and his companions.

surah (Soo ra)  “A step-up or gate.” The name for a chapter of the Qur’an.

talaq  A husband-initiated divorce.

Taliban  “Students.” The name of a Muslim militant group that arose in Afghanistan in the late 1990s.

taqwa  The conscious awareness that God is watching you.

Tariqa  A Sufi lodge.

tauhid (Tauw heed)  “Oneness or monotheism.” A term used to emphasis the unitary nature of God.

Taurah (Taw rah)  The Arabic name for the Torah of Moses.

tawba  “Repentance.” Asking forgiveness from God for a sin.

thanbi  Sin or evil deeds.

‘ulema  See alim.

Umayyad  The name of the first Muslim dynasty.

Ummah  The Muslim community or motherland.

wahy  Revelation or inspiration from God given to chosen men and women.

wali  The woman’s representative during the courtship period. His or her job is to make sure the prospective groom is legitimate and will not take advantage of her.

walima  The wedding reception after a marriage ceremony.

wudu  The Islamic practice of washing the face, hands, and feet with water to achieve a ritually pure state.

Yahudi  The Arabic term for a Jew.

Yathrib  The former name of the city of Medina.

youm  A unit of time usually used for a day but with no set length.

Youmud Deen  The Day of Judgment for all ways of life.

Youmul Qiyamah  The Day of (standing for) Judgment.

Zabur (Za boor)  The Arabic name for the Psalms of David.

Zakah  “Purification.” The annual required charity from all Muslim adults in the amount of $2^{1/2}$ percent.

Zuhr  The afternoon prayer.
A

Abbasids invasions, 300
Abdullah (father of Muhammad), 270
abortion, 51-52
Abraham
Islamic beliefs on prophets, 186-187
origin of Mecca, 153-155
Accusing Self, 29-30
activist scholars, 231-232
Adam and Eve, creation of the universe (Qur’anic presentation), 81-88
Affan, Uthman ibn, Great Conspiracy, 291-292
Afghanistan, myths about Muslim women, 256-257
African Americans, history of Islamic America, 310-315 current views, 314-315 Malcolm X, 313-314
afterlife teachings
Heaven (Jannah)
gates, 70-71
layers, 71-72
wonderment of Paradise, 70-72
Hell
layers, 72-73
punishments, 73-74
Ahl Al Kitab, 189
Aishah, 190
Al-Battani, Abu Abdullah, 325
al-Razi, Mohammad, 325
alcohol, 245
alimony, 262
Allah (God), 18
Books of God, 188-190
creation of the universe
Allah’s ledger, 76-77
great explosion of matter, 77-78
six days, 78-79
foreknowledge on destiny and fate, 91-92
Hollywood portrayals, 38
instructions given to Adam and Eve to pass to descendants, 87-88
monotheism, 39-40
Ninety-nine Names of Allah, 45-46
pagan Arab beliefs before Islam
Day of Judgment, 42
Sincerity chapter of the Qur’an, 42
personal relationships with, 44-45
proof of existence, 19-20
surrendering to, 20-21
rememberance (dhikr), 136-137
the merciful, 68
Allahu Akbar, 131
allowed activities (halal)
animal rights, 246-247
kasher standards, 244-245
monetary restrictions, 247-248
music, 246
America (history of Islamic America)
African American Islam, 310-315
Caucasian converts, 316
Hispanic Muslims, 316-317
Islamic organizations, 317-318
Muslim immigrants, 315-316
Aminah (mother of Muhammad), 270
Ammarah, Umm, 229
angels
Islamic views, 22
roles in world life, 55-57
animals
Animal Self, 28
rights, 246-247
sacrifices, 160-161
annual charity (zakat), 114
burden of wealth, 140
denying payments, 144-145
distribution of funds, 144
dues and requirements, 143
greediness, 141-143
ansar, 280
anti-christ (Dajjal), 106-107
Aqiqah (Welcoming Consecration), 241-242
Arab-Israeli conflict, 348-350
arabesque, 302
Arabia (birthplace of Islam), 269
Arabian Nights, The, 303
Arab pagan beliefs
Day of Judgment, 42
idols, 41
Sincerity chapter of the Qur’an, 42
architecture, history of Islam, 302
Arkan al Islami. See Five Pillars of Islam
Armageddon, 104-110
arranged marriages, 255-256
art forms
arabesque, 302
calligraphy, 301
geometric designs, 301
Persian miniatures, 302
As-Siddeeq, Abu Bakr, 228
ascensions, Muhammad’s ascension into Heaven, 274-276
Asma’ ul Husna, 46
’Asr, 126
astrology, 90-91
atonement, Christianity versus Islam, 208
attaining cleanliness before prayer, 128-131
Ayah, 80
Ayatullah, 337
azar (call to prayer), 128-131
Azra’il (Angel of Death), 22

B

babies. See children
Baca, 153
Badr (battle of Badr), 281
Baghdad, 300
Bahira (Christian monk), 202-203
Bakr, Abu, 289-290
Bani Isra’il, 196
Barakah, 229
Barzakh (soul storage), 59, 64
Battle of Badr, 281
Muhammad’s experiences with Christians, 202-204
original sin, 208
Qu’ranic references to Christianity Jesus, 206-207
John the Baptist, 205-206
Mary, 206
salvation and redemption, 208
Trinity, 208
circumcisions, 242
female circumcision, 258
civilizations, unique features of Islamic civilizations, 327-329
cleanliness, attaining cleanliness before prayer, 128
Colonialism, 11
compilation of the Qur’an, 223-224
conceptions (stage of life), 50-54
aborted fetuses, 51-52
contraception, 52
determining when a fetus is a person, 52-54
Conference of Birds, The, 303
confessions, Christianity versus Islam, 208
conflicts
Arab-Israeli conflict, 348-350
Battle of Badr, 281
Battle of the Ditch, 283
Battle of Uhud, 282
Iranian Revolution, 350-351
publishing of Salman Rushdie, 351-352
crusades, 306-308
cultures
gaps, 13-16
Islamic beliefs on diversity natural human movements, 100-101
prophet’s messages, 101-104
current views on Islam
African American Islam, 314-315
Arab-Israeli conflict, 348-350
death and rebirth of Islam, 344-346
revivals, 345-346
war failures, 345
futuristic outlooks, 352-353
goals of Islam, 346-348
Iranian Revolution, 350-351
publishing of Salman Rushdie, 351-352
D
Daily prayers (Salat), 114
Dajjal (anti-christ), 106-107
Day of Judgment. See Judgment Day
dead
Barzakh (soul storage), 59
Muhammad, 286
near-death experiences, 60
Punishment of the Grave, 61
releasing of souls, 58-59
Declaration of Faith (Shahadah)
destruction of Buddha statues, 116-119
Muhammad as Messenger of God
expressions of respect, 120
Sunnah (Way of the Prophet), 119-120
reciting in front of witnesses, 121
uncompromising monotheism, 115-116
deeds
good versus bad deeds, 32-33
recorded deeds (Judgment Day), 34-35
destiny (measurement of life), 90-97
destruction of Buddha statues, 116-119
dhikr (remembrance), 136-137
Dhul Hijjah (Month of Pilgrimage), 157, 356
Dhul Qa’dah (Month of Rest), 356
distribution of zakat funds, 144
diversity
cultures and religions
natural human movements, 100-101
prophet’s messages, 101-104
secretarism in Islam, 332-341
Kharajites, 333
Mu’tazilites (Moderate Withdrawers), 333-334
Sufiism, 337-341
Sunnis and Shi’as, 334-337
Divine Measurement (Qadr), 92-97
patience and perseverance, 94
peacefulness through Qadr, 95-97
divorce issues, 261-262
almimony and palimony, 262
female-initiated divorce (khul), 262
male-initiated divorce (talaq), 262
domestic violence and women’s rights, 259-260
dress codes, 263-264
dues, zakat (annual charity), 143
dynasties
Abbasids, 300
Mughals dynasty, 305-306
Umayyads, 298-299
E
'Eid ul Adha (Festival of the Sacrifice), 243
'Eid ul Fitr (festival of the Fast Breaking), 243
'Eid ul Ghadir, 244
Emanuil Mufassil, 18
empires, Jews in the Muslim Empire, 199-200
Encircling (Tawaf), 159
end of the world (Armageddon), 109-110
enlightenment, Sufiism, 340
equal rights, 252-253
Europe, influences of Islam on, 322-327
adoption of Arabic words, 326-327
philosophers and scientists, 324-326
evil individuals, Judgment Day consequences, 64
evolution debates, 79-81
expansion of knowledge
discovery of sciences, 323-324
inheritance, 322-323
scientific method of formulating a hypothesis, 323
explosions, creation of the universe, 77-78
salat ul-Jumu’ah (the Gathering Prayer), 130
   sample prayer session, 133-134
   seven preconditions, 127
   versus supplication, 124-126
   Saum (fasting), Ramadan
   beginning the fast, 146
   ‘Eid ul Fitr (Festival of the Fast Breaking), 243
   iftars, 147
   Laylat ul Qadr (Night of Power), 148
   lessons learned during fast, 148-149
   procedures and rituals, 146-148
   sahoor, 146
   Shahadah (Declaration of Faith)
   destruction of idols, 116-119
   Muhammad as Messenger of God, 119-120
   reciting in front of witnesses, 121
   uncompromising monotheism, 41-42
   zakat (annual charity), 114
   burden of wealth, 140
   denying payments, 144-145
   distribution of funds, 144
   dues and requirements, 143
   greediness, 141-143
   food, kosher standards, 244-245
   free will, 22-24
   Fridays, Salat ul-Jumu’ah, 238
   funerals (Janazah), 242
   geometric designs, 301
   Ghazali, Imam Al, 141
   Ghulistan, The, 303
   Gibraltar, 304
   goals of Islam (current world affairs), 346-348

God (Allah), 18
   Books of God, 188-190
   creation of the universe
   Allah’s ledger, 76-77
   great explosion of matter, 77-78
   six days, 78-79
   foreknowledge on destiny and fate, 91-92
   gift of self-awareness and free will, 22-24
   Hollywood portrayals, 38
   instructions given to Adam and Eve to pass to descendants, 87-88
   monotheism, 39-40
   Ninety-nine Names of Allah, 45-46
   pagan Arab beliefs before Islam
   Day of Judgment, 42
   Sincerity chapter of the Qur’an, 42
   personal relationships with, 44-45
   proof of existence, 19-20
   surrendering to, 20-21
   remembrance (dhikr), 136-137
   the merciful, 68
   Gog and Magog (Yajuj and Majuj), 109
   Golden Age, 300-301
   good versus bad deeds
   Judgment Day, 34-35
   redemption of sins, 32-33
   government issues
   Abbasids and Mongol invasions, 300
   caliphs, 288-289
   Christianity versus Islam, 212-213
   Golden Age, 300-301
   Umayyad dynasty, 298-299
   Umayyads, 298
   Great Conspiracy, 291-292
   greediness, 141-143
   growth of Islam, 4-5

hadiths
   examples, 227-228
   recordings, 226-227
   versus Qur’an, 226

Hafiz, 223
   Hagg, ‘Eid ul Adha(Festival of the Sacrifice), 243
   hair, shaving for Hajj (pilgrimage to Mecca), 161-162
Index

Haiyan, Jabir Ibn, 325
Hajj (pilgrimage to Mecca), 114
origins, 152-155
purpose of, 155-156
rituals, 157-163
halal (allowed activities)
animal rights, 246-247
kosher standards, 244-245
monetary restrictions, 247-248
music, 246
Hanafi, 231
Hanbali, 231
Hanifa, Abu, 95
haram (prohibited activities),
244-248
Hawwa (Eve), 100
Hayat ad-Dunya (Life of the World), 54
Heaven (Jannah)
ascension of Muhammad, 274, 276
Christianity versus Islam, 208-209
gates, 70-71
layers, 71-72
wonderment of Paradise, 70-72
Hell (Jahannum), 72
Judgment Day, 34-35
layers, 73
punishments, 73-74
Sirat (bridge over Hell), 68-70
hijab, 264
Hijrah (migration), 106
Hispanic Muslims, 316-317
history of Islam
Abbasids and Mongol invasions, 300
Arabia (birthplace of Islam), 269
architecture, 302
art forms, 301-302
Crusades, 306-308
death and rebirth of Islam, 344-346
goals of Islam, 346-348
Golden Age, 300-301
Hajj (pilgrimage to Mecca), 153-155
in America, 310-318
influence of Islam
Africa, 274
as a citizen of Mecca, 271-272
battles with Mecca, 281-283
Byzantine Roman Empire, 284
death and rebirth of Islam, 283-284
escape from Mecca, 276-277
flight to Medina, 280
night journey and ascension into Heaven, 274, 276
Persian Empire, 284
parents, 270
prophethood, 272-274
teenage years, 271
literatures, 302-303
rival Muslim states, 303-306
secertext of Islam, 332-341
Umayyad dynasty, 298-299
unique features of Islamic civilizations, 327-329
Muslim-Christian relations, 202
myth of the Holy War, 169-171
prophethood, 183-185
holidays
'Eid ul Adha (Festival of the Sacrifice), 243
'Eid ul Fitr (Festival of the Fast Breaking), 243
'Eid ul Ghadir, 244
Maulid un Nabii, 244
Hollywood portrayals of God, 38
Holy Spirit (Christianity versus Islam), 208
Holy War myths
historical misunderstandings, 169-171
bombing of the United States Federal Building, 171
honor killings, 258
Hussain, 298-299
I’tikaf, 148
Iblis, 84-85
idols
destruction of Buddha statues, 116-119
Mushrik (idolater), 186
pagan Arab beliefs, 41
iftars, 147
ihram (restricted clothes), 157
Ihya Uloomuddin, 141
Ijtehad, 230
Ikhwan al Muslimun, 348
Imams, Shi’as, 336
Iman (faith), 28
Imans, 239
immigrants, Muslim immigrants in America, 315-316
Inferno, 74
influences of Islam
adoption of Arabic words, 326-327
Europe, 322-324
philosophers and scientists, 324-326
inheritance
expansion of knowledge, 322-323
women’s rights, 259
Inspector General of Weights and Measures (Muhtasib), 327
interfaith dialogues (Christianity versus Islam), 209-213
government involvement with religions, 212-213
Popes as activists, 210-212
intoxicants, 245
Iranian Revolution, 350-351
'Isha, 126
Ishmael, origins of Mecca, 153-155
Islamic Society of North America. See ISNA
Island of Animals, The, 303
ISNA (Islamic Society of North America), 317
Israel, Arab-Israeli conflict, 348-350
Israel, 22

J–K

Ja’fari, 231
Jabal un Nur, 218
jahliliya, 193
Jahannum (Hell), 72-74
layers, 73
punishments, 73-74
Jamaati Islami, 348
Janazah (funeral rite), 242
Jannah (Heaven)
ascension of Muhammad, 274-276
Christianity versus Islam, 208-209
gates, 70-71
layers, 71-72
wonderment of Paradise, 70-72
Jesus
Qu’ar’anic references to Christianity, 206-207
role in Armageddon, 108
Jibra’il (Gabriel), 22
jihad
defining characteristics, 166-167
myth of the Holy War
bombing of the United
States Federal Building, 171
historical misunderstand-
ings, 169-171
social activism, 167, 169
John the Baptist, Qur'anic refer-
cences to Christianity, 205-206
Judgment Day
bridge over Hell (Sira't), 68-70
criminal and evil behaviors, 64
Hell, 34-35
initiation of final judg-
ments, 65-67
mercy of Allah, 68
pagan Arab beliefs, 42
proceedings, 67-68
purposes, 64
recorded deeds, 34
Resurrection, 66
judges (Qadis), 328
Judaism versus Islam
Jews in the Muslim Empire, 199-200
Muslim-Jewish War, 197-199
Qur'anic references to Judaism, 196-197
relationship with Muhammad, 192-195
religious similarities, 192
Jumada al Awwal (First Dry
Month), 355
Jumada at-Thani (Second Dry
Month), 355
Ka'bah, 153-159
Kiswah, 157
Tawaf (Encircling), 159
kafir, 67
Khadijah (wife of
Muhammad), 271
khalifa, 83
Kharajite, secretarism in
Islam, 333
Khatmi-Qur'an (Sealing the
Qur'an), 243
Khattab, Umar ibn al, 228, 290-291
Khubbat, Sumayyah bint, 228
khul (female-initiated divorce), 262
Khuwaylid, Khadijah bint, 228
killings (honor killings), 258
Kismet, 94
Kiswah, 158
Kitabullah (Book of God), 188
knowledge, expansion of
discovery of sciences, 323-324
inheritances, 322-323
scientific method of formu-
lating a hypothesis, 323
Koran. See Qur'an
kosher standards, 244-245

L
languages, adoption of Arabic
words in Europe, 326-327
layers
Heaven (Jannah), 71-72
Hell, 73
Layla and Majnun, 303
Laylat ul Qadr (Night of
Power), 148
legacies, unique features of
Islamic civilizations, 327-329
life
measurement of
destiny and fate, 90-97
stages
conception, 50-54
death, 58-59
worldly, 59-67
lifestyle beliefs
allowed and prohibited
activities
animal rights, 246-247
gambling, 245
toxicants, 245
kosher standards, 244-245
monetary restrictions, 247-248
music, 246
ceremonies
births, 241-242
funerals, 242
Khatmi-Qur'an (Sealing the
Qur'an), 243
marriage (nikah), 240-241
family life
ideal Muslim home, 235
raising children, 236
bies that bind, 234-235
holidays
'Eid ul Adha (Festival of the
Sacrifice), 243
'Eid ul Fitr (Festival of the
Fast Breaking), 243
'Eid ul Ghadir, 244
Maulid un Nabi, 244
mosque (masjid), 236-239
literatures, history of Islam, 302-303
Lumen Gentium, 210

M
madh-habs (schools of thought), 231
maghrib, 126
Maimonides, 199
Mala'ikah, 22
Malcolm X, African American
Islam, 313-314
male-initiated divorce (talaq), 262
Maliki, 231
marriage
arranged marriages, 255-256
ideal Muslim homes, 235
Muhammad, 271-272, 285
polygamy, 260-261
prohibitions (Christianity
versus Islam), 208
raising children, 236
rituals, 240-241
ties that bind, 234-235
Mary (Virgin Mary)
Christianity versus Islam, 208
Qur'anic references to
Christianity, 206
masbahas, 136
masjid (mosque), 236-239
daily activities, 237
features, 238
Imans, 239
Salat ul-Jumu'ah, 238
tradition of no shoes, 237
Masjid an Nabawi, 129
Mathnawi, The, 303
Maulid un Nabi, 244
measurement of life (destiny
and fate)
astrology, 90-91
God's foreknowledge, 91-92
patience and perseverance, 94
peacefulness through Qadr,
95-97
predetermined challenges,
93-94
Qada and Qadr, 92-93
Mecca
battles with Medina, 280-283
Battle of Badr, 281
Battle of the Ditch, 283
Battle of Uhud, 282
Baytullah, 155
conquest of Mecca, 283-284
early Meccan converts,
228-229
escape of Muhammad,
276-277
Hajj (pilgrimage to Mecca)
origins, 152-155
purpose of, 155-156
rituals, 157-163
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>Page(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ka'bah</td>
<td>155</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Muhammad as a citizen</td>
<td>271-272</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prophethood of Muhammad</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>African migrations</td>
<td>274</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Banishment of Muhammad</td>
<td>274</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Expectations of Meccans</td>
<td>272-273</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Night journey and ascension into Heaven</td>
<td>274-276</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reception of Islam by Meccans</td>
<td>273</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Qur'anic revelations</td>
<td>222-223</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Medina</td>
<td>162-163</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Battles with the Meccans</td>
<td>280-283</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conquest of Mecca</td>
<td>283-284</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flight of Muhammad</td>
<td>280</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Qur'anic revelations</td>
<td>222-223</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Messenger (rasul)</td>
<td>101</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Migration (Hijrah)</td>
<td>106</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mika'il (Michael)</td>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Missionary efforts of Muslims</td>
<td>10-11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moderate Withdrawers (Mu'tazilites), secretarism</td>
<td>333-334</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mohammedanism</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monasteries (Christianity versus Islam)</td>
<td>208</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monetary restrictions</td>
<td>247-248</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mongol invasions</td>
<td>300</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monks, Bahira</td>
<td>202-203</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monotheism</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Islamic concept of God</td>
<td>39-40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ta'wah</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trinity Theory</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shahadah (Declaration of Faith)</td>
<td>115-116</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Month-long fasting (Saum)</td>
<td>114</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Months. See calendars</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moral compass</td>
<td>24-26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moses, Islamic beliefs on prophets</td>
<td>187</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mosque (masjid)</td>
<td>14, 236-239</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MSA (Muslim Student’s Association)</td>
<td>317</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mu’awiyah</td>
<td>298</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mu’tazilites (Moderate Withdrawers), secretarism in Islam</td>
<td>333-334</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mughals dynasty</td>
<td>305-306</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Muhajirun</td>
<td>280</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Muhammad</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>as a citizen of Mecca</td>
<td>271-272</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Caliphs (successors)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abu Bakr</td>
<td>289-290</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ali ibn Abi Talib</td>
<td>292-295</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Umar ibn al Khattab</td>
<td>290-291</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Uthman ibn Affan</td>
<td>291-292</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Childhood years</td>
<td>270-271</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Confrontation of superpowers</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Byzantine Roman Empire</td>
<td>284</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Persian Empire</td>
<td>284</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Death of</td>
<td>286</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dictation of the Qur’an</td>
<td>218-219</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Escape from Mecca</td>
<td>276-277</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Experiences with Christians</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bahira (Christian monk)</td>
<td>202-203</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Waraqah</td>
<td>203-204</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flight to Medina</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Battles with the Meccans</td>
<td>280-283</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conquest of Mecca</td>
<td>283-284</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Influences on Judaism</td>
<td>192-195</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Islamic beliefs on prophets</td>
<td>186-187</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Marriages</td>
<td>271-272, 285</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Night journey and ascension into Heaven</td>
<td>274-276</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parents</td>
<td>270</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prophethood</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>African migrations</td>
<td>274</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Banishment of Muhammad</td>
<td>274</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Expectations of Meccans</td>
<td>272-273</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reception of Islam by Meccans</td>
<td>273</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shahaba (companion of the Prophet)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Early Meccan converts</td>
<td>228-229</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prominent women</td>
<td>229</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shahadah (Declaration of Faith)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Expressions of respect</td>
<td>120</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sunnah (Way of the Prophet)</td>
<td>119-120</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sunnah of Muhammad</td>
<td>225-228</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hadiths</td>
<td>226-228</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Recordings</td>
<td>226-227</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Teenage years</td>
<td>271</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Views on worshipping idols</td>
<td>41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Muhammad, Elijah</td>
<td>314</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Muhammad, Warith Deen</td>
<td>314</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Muharram (Sacred Month)</td>
<td>355</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mu'tasib manuals</td>
<td>327</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mujahid</td>
<td>167</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Munkar</td>
<td>168</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Murders (honor killings)</td>
<td>258</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mushrik (idolater)</td>
<td>186</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Music, allowed and prohibited activities</td>
<td>246</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Muslim Student’s Association.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>See MSA</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Muslim-Jewish War</td>
<td>197-199</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Muslims</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Call to prayer (azar)</td>
<td>128-131</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Caucasian converts</td>
<td>316</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hispanic Muslims</td>
<td>316-317</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ideal Muslim home</td>
<td>235</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Immigrants in America</td>
<td>315-316</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Influences on Europe</td>
<td>322-327</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adoption of Arabic words</td>
<td>326-327</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Philosophers and scientists</td>
<td>324-326</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Islamic calendars</td>
<td>355</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Missionary efforts</td>
<td>10-11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Muslim-Christian relations</td>
<td>202</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Myths about women</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arranged marriages</td>
<td>255-256</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Female circumcisions</td>
<td>258</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Honor killings</td>
<td>258</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Taliban are at war with women</td>
<td>256-257</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rival Muslim states</td>
<td>303-306</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mughals dynasty</td>
<td>305-306</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spain</td>
<td>304-305</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Muttalib, ‘Abdel</td>
<td>270</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Myths, historical misunderstandings</td>
<td>169-171</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Muslim women</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arranged marriages</td>
<td>255-256</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Female circumcisions</td>
<td>258</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Honor killings</td>
<td>258</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Taliban are at war with women</td>
<td>256-257</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| N                                                       |         |
| Nabi (prophet)                                          | 101     |
| Names (Ninety-nine Names of Allah)                      | 45-46   |
| Nasara (Christian)                                      | 204     |
| Natural human movements                                 | 100-101 |
| Near-death experiences                                 | 60      |
| Night of Power (Laylat ul Qadr)                         | 148     |
| Nikah (marriage)                                        | 240-241 |
| Ninety-nine Names of Allah                              | 45-46   |
official prayer times, 126
OIC (Organization of the Islamic Conference), 348
official prayer times, 126
Organization of the Islamic Conference. See OIC
organizations in America, 317-318
original sin
Christianity versus Islam, 208
Islamic beliefs, 43
pagan Arab beliefs before Islam
Judgment Day, 42
Sincerity chapter of the Qur’an, 42
paintings (Persian miniatures), 302
palimony, 262
Paradise
gates, 70-71
layers, 71-72
parents of Muhammad, 270
patience and perseverance (sabr), 94
peacefulness through Qadr, 95-97
Persian Empire
defeat of, 290-291
influences of Muhammad on, 284
Persian miniatures (paintings), 302
philosophers, Muslim influences, 324-326
physical punishment for sins, 32
pilgrimage to Mecca (Hajj)
origins, 152-155
purpose of, 155-156
rituals, 158-163
Pillars of Islam. See Five Pillars of Islam
poetry (Sufism), 340
polygamy, 260-261
Popes as activits of interfaith dialogues, 210-212
prayer (salat), 114
attaining cleanliness, 128
benefits, 126-127
mosque (masjid), 236-239
daily activites, 237
features, 238
Imans, 239
Salat ul-Jumu’ah, 238
tradition of no shoes, 237
Muslim call to prayer (azar), 128-131
official prayer times, 126
procedures and rituals, 131-132
rememberance (dhikr), 136-137
salat ul-Jumu’ah (the Gathering Prayer), 130
sample prayer sessions, 133-134
seven preconditions, 127
versus supplication, 124-126
preconditions of prayer, 127
perseverance and patience (sabr), 94
proceedings, Judgment Day, 67-68
prohibited activities (haram)
animal rights, 246-247
gambling, 245
intoxicants, 245
kosher standards, 244-245
monetary restrictions, 247-248
music, 246
proof of existence (God), 19-20
prophecies, Armageddon, 105-106
prophet (nabi), 101
prophets
Abraham
Islamic beliefs on prophets, 186-187
origin of Mecca, 153-155
characteristics of, 185-186
commonality of major religions, 180-181
false prophets, 107-108
gender discrimination, 187
Judgment Day, 188
Moses, 187
Muhammad, 186-187
African migrations, 274
as a citizen of Mecca, 271-272
banishment of Muhammad in Mecca, 274
battles with Mecca, 281-283
childhood years, 270-271
confrontation of super-powers, 284
conquest of Mecca, 283-284
death of, 286
escape from Mecca, 276-277
expectations of Meccans, 272-273
flight to Medina, 280
marriages, 285
night journey and ascension into Heaven, 274-276
parents, 270
reception of Islam by
Meccans, 273
sahaba (companion of the Prophet), 228-229
Sunnah of Muhammad, 225-228
teenage years, 271
views on worshipping idols, 41
origins of prophethood, 183-185
true prophets, 181-183
Qur’anic references, 357
role in diversity of religions, 101-104
cycle of history, 103-104
lost teachings, 102-103
punishments
denying zakat payments, 144-145
Hell, 73-74
Punishment of the Grave, 61
redemption of sins, 32
purdah (female seclusion), 264
Qada (Determination), 92-93
Qadis (judges), 328
Qadr (Divine Measurement), 90-97
patience and perseverance, 94
peacefulness through Qadr, 95-97
Qur’an, 6
Al Baqarah, 194
compilations, 223-224
creation of the universe
Adam and Eve, 81-88
Allah’s ledger, 78-77
evolution debates, 79-81
great explosion of matter, 77-78
six days, 78-79
dictation to Muhammad, 218-219
Khatmi-Qur’an (Sealing the Qur’an), 243
Meccan and Medinan revelations, 222-223
references
Christianity, 205-207
Judaim, 196-197
prophets, 357
Sincerity chapter, 42
style and content, 219-221
themes, 225
versus hadiths, 226
Rab’ah, Bilal ibn, 229
Rabiath-Thani (Second Spring), 355
Rabiul Awwal (First Spring), 355
racism, the first racist, 84-85
Rajab (Month of Respect), 355
Ramadan fast
  beginning the fast, 146
  'Eid ul Fitr (Festival of the Fast Breaking), 243
  iftars, 147
  Laylat ul Qadr (Night of Power), 148
  lessons learned during fast, 148-149
  Month of Great Heat, 356
  procedures and rituals, 146-148
sahoor, 146
rasul (messenger), 101
rebirth of Islam, 344-346
revivals, 345-346
war failures, 345
reciting the Shahadah (Declaration of Faith), 121
recordings, hadiths, 226-227
redemption
  Christianity versus Islam, 208
  Islamic beliefs, 30-33
  good versus bad deeds, 32-33
  physical punishments, 32-33
religions
  Books of God, 188-190
  Christianity versus Islam atonement, 208
  Bible, 208
  confessions, 208
  Heaven, 208-209
  Holy Spirit, 208
  interfaith dialogues, 209-213
  marriage prohibitions, 208
  Mary as mother of God, 208
  monasteries and convents, 208
  Muhammad’s experiences with Christians, 202-204
Muslim-Christian relations, 202
original sin, 208
Qur’anic references to Christianity, 205-207
salvation and redemption, 208
Trinity, 208
commonality of major religions, 180-181
Islam beliefs on diversity natural human movements, 100-101
prophet’s messages, 101-104
Judaism versus Islam
  Jews in the Muslim Empire, 199-200
  Muslim-Jewish War, 197-199
  Qur’anic references to Judaism, 196-197
  relationship with Muhammad, 192-195
  similarities, 192
  true prophets, 181-183
  remembrance (dhikr), 136-137
requirements
  prayer, 127
  zakat (annual charity), 143
Restful Self, 30
restrictions, Hajj (pilgrimage to Mecca), 157
Resurrection, 66
revivals, 345-346
revolutions (Iranian Revolution), 350-351
riddah (apostacy), 289
rights (women’s rights)
  divorce issues, 261-262
  domestic violence, 259-260
  dress codes, 263-264
  inheritances, 259
  polygamy, 260-261
  purdah (female seclusion), 264
  testimonies, 258-259
rituals
  Aqiqah (Welcoming Consecration), 242
  Hajj (pilgrimage to Mecca), 157-163
  Janaza (funeral rite), 242
  Khatmi-Qur’an (Sealing the Qur’an), 243
  marriage (nikah), 240-241
  prayer (salat), 131-132
  Ramadan fast, 146-148
  rival Muslim states, 303-306
  Mughals dynasty, 305-306
  Spain, 304-305
  Rabbaiyat, Thé, 303
  ruh, 25
  Rushdie, Salman, 351-352
sahaba (companion of the Prophet)
  early Meccan converts, 228-229
  prominent women, 229
  sahoor, 146
  Saladin, 307
  Salamah, Umm, 229
salat (prayer), 114
  attaining cleanliness, 128
  benefits, 126-127
  Muslim call to prayer (azar), 128-131
  official prayer times, 126
  procedures and rituals, 131-132
  remembrance (dhikr), 136-137
  salat ul-jumu’ah (the Gathering Prayer), 130
  sample prayer sessions, 133-134
  seven preconditions, 127
  versus supplication, 124-126
  salvation (Christianity versus Islam), 208
  sample prayer sessions, 133-134
  Satan (Shaytan), 29
  stoning, 160
  worldly life temptations, 54-55
Saum (fasting), Ramadan
  beginning the fast, 146
  ‘Eid ul Fitr (Festival of the Fast Breaking), 243
  iftars, 147
  Laylat ul Qadr (Night of Power), 148
  lessons learned during fast, 148-149
  procedures and rituals, 146-148
  sahoor, 146
  scholars (Ulema), 229-232
  activists, 231-232
  early theologians, 230
  Ijtehad, 230
  schools of thought (madh-habs), 231
  science of Fiqh, 230
  schools of thought (madh-habs), 231
  sciences
  Islam discoveries, 323-324
  scientific method of formulating a hypothesis, 323
  scientists, Muslim influences, 324-326
  seasons. See calendars
seclusion, purdah (female seclusion), 264
secretarism in Islam, 332-341
Kharajites, 333
Mu'tazilites (Moderate
Withdrawers), 333-334
Sufiism, 337-341
Sunnis and Shi'as, 334-337
Seerah, 121
self-awareness, 22-24
seven preconditions of prayer, 127
Shab (Dividing Month), 356
Shafi, 231
Shahadah (Declaration of Faith)
destruction of idols, 116-119
Muhammad as Messenger of God
expressions of respect, 120
Sunnah (Way of the Prophet), 119-120
reciting in front of witnesses, 121
uncompromising monotheism, 115-116
shaving of hair during Hajj (pilgrimage to Mecca), 161-162
Shawwal (Month of Hunting), 356
shaykh, 270
Shaytan (Satan), 29
stoning, 160
temptation of Adam and Eve, 86-87
worldly life temptations, 54-55
Shi’as
Imams, 336
secretarism in Islam, 334-337
versus Sunnis, 337
shirk, 42
signs of Armageddon, 106-107
Sincerity chapter of the Qur’an, 42
sins
good versus bad deeds, 32-33
original sin, 43
physical punishments, 32
Rah, 31
Sirat (bridge over Hell), 68-70
Siratul mustaqeem (straight path), 57
social activism, 167-169
souls
Barzakh (soul storage), 59
fitrah (moral compass), 24-26
release at death, 58-59
ruh, 25
stages of development
Accusing Self, 29-30
Animal Self, 28
Restful Self, 30
sources of Islam
Qur’an
compilations, 223-224
dictation to Muhammad, 218-219
Meccan and Medinan revelations, 222-223
style and content, 219-221
themes, 225
sahaba (companion of the Prophet)
early Meccan converts, 228-229
prominent women, 229
scholars (Ulema), 229-232
activists, 231-232
early theologians, 230
Ijtihad, 230
schools of thought (madh-habs), 231
science of Fiqh, 230
Sunna of Muhammad, 225-228
Spain, rival Muslim states, 304-305
spirituality
fitrah (moral compass), 24-26
releasing of soul at death, 58-59
ruh, 25
spread of Islam
British efforts, 11-12
land quests, 7
Muslim missionary efforts, 10-11
stages of life
conception, 50-54
death, 58-59
worldly, 54-57
soul development
Accusing Self, 29-30
Animal Self, 28
Restful Self, 30
states (rival Muslim states), 303-306
Mughals dynasty, 305-306
Spain, 304-305
status of women in Islam
divorce issues, 261-262
alimony and palimony, 262
female-initiated divorce (khul), 262
male-initiated divorce (talaq), 262
dress codes, 263-264
purdah (female seclusion), 264
stereotypes, 250-251
struggle for equal rights, 252-253
women’s rights
domestic violence, 259-260
inheritance, 259
polygamy, 260-261
testimonies, 258-259
stereotypes
bridging the cultural gap, 13-16
encouragement of war, 9-10
status of women in Islam, 250-251
study of Islam, western views, 5-7
successors (caliphs)
Abu Bakr, 289-290
Ali ibn Abi Talib, 292-295
Battle of the Camel, 293-294
compromise with Syria, 294-295
struggle for power, 294
Hussain, 298-299
Mu’awiyah, 298
Umar ibn al Khattab, 290-291
Uthman ibn Affan, 291-292
Sufiism, 337-341
enlightenment, 340
poetry, 340
teachings, 338
Sunnah (Way of the Prophet), 119-120
Sunna of Muhammad (hadiths)
examples, 227-228
recordings, 226-227
versus Qur’an, 228
Sunnis
secretarism in Islam, 334-337
versus Shi’as, 337
supplication versus prayer (salat), 124-126
Surah, 33
surrendering to God, 20-21
Syria, 294-295
T
Tablighi Jamaat, 348
talaq (male-initiated divorce), 262
Talib, Ali ibn Abi, 292-295
Battle of the Camel, 293-294
compromise with Syria, 294-295
struggle for power, 294
Taliban
- destruction of Buddha statues, 116-119
- myths about Muslim women, 256-257
- tasbihs, 136
- tauhid (oneness), 40
- Taurah, 197
- Tawaf (Encircling), 159
- tawba, 31
- teachings. See beliefs
- teenage years of Muhammad, 271
- temptation of Adam and Eve, 86-87
- terrorism, 172-175
- Islamic views, 174
- rules of war, 174-175
- testimonies (women’s rights), 258-259
- themes (Qur’an), 225
- theologians, 230
- Torah, 197
- Tower of Babel, 100
- tree, forbidden tree (temptation of Adam and Eve), 86-87
- tribe of Sa’ad, 271
- Trinity
- Christianity versus Islam, 208
- Trinity Theory, 40
- true prophets, 181-183
- turbans, 263

W-X

- wahy, 188
- Waraqah, 203-204

- wars
- Battle of Badr, 281
- Battle of the Camel, 293-294
- Battle of the Ditch, 283
- Battle of Uhud, 282
- failures, 345-348
- Islamic beliefs, 9-10, 171-172
- Muslim-Jewish War, 197-199
- rules of war, 174-175
- Way of the Prophet (Sunnah), 119-120
- WCIW (World Community of Al-Islam in the West), 317
- wealth
  - monetary restrictions, 247-248
  - zakat (annual charity), 140-145
  - denying payments, 144-145
  - distribution of funds, 144
  - dues and requirements, 143
  - greediness, 141-143
- Welcoming Consecration (Aqiqah), 241-242
- Well of Zam Zam, 153
- Western cultures
- Islamic America, 310-318
- African American Islam, 312-315
- Caucasian converts, 316
- Hispanic Muslims, 316-317
- Islamic organizations, 317-318
- Muslim immigrants, 315-316
- study of Islam, 5-7
- views of Islam
  - bridging the cultural gap, 13-16
  - clash of civilizations, 12-13
  - encouragement of war, 9-10
- Whirling Dervishes, The, 338
- women
  - myths about Muslim women, 254-258
  - arranged marriages, 255-256
  - female circumcisions, 258
  - honor killings, 258
  - Taliban are at war with women, 256-257

prophethood and gender discrimination, 187
status of women in Islam
- stereotypes, 250-251
- struggle for equal rights, 252-253
- women’s right issues
  - divorce issues, 261-262
  - domestic violence, 259-260
  - dress codes, 263-264
  - inheritances, 259
  - polygamy, 260-261
  - purdah (female seclusion), 264
  - testimonies, 258-259
- world affairs (current views on Islam)
  - Arab-Israeli conflict, 348-350
  - death and rebirth of Islam, 344-346
  - revivals, 345-346
  - war failures, 345
  - futuristic outlooks, 352-353
  - goals of Islam, 346-348
  - Iranian Revolution, 350-351
  - publishing of Salman Rushdie, 351-352
- World Community of Al-Islam in the West. See WCIW

Y-Z

- Yahiya (John the Baptist), 205
- Yahudi, 196
- Yajuj and Majuj (Gog and Magog), 109
- youm, 79
- youmul deen, 64
- Yourmul qiyamah, 64
- zuhr, 126

zakat (annual charity), 114
- burden of wealth, 140
- denying payments, 144-145
- distribution of funds, 144
- dues and requirements, 143
- greediness, 141-143
Introducing a new and different Web site

Millions of people love to learn through *The Complete Idiot’s Guide®* books. Discover the same pleasure online in idiotsguides.com—part of The Learning Network.

**Idiotsguides.com** is a new and different Web site, where you can:

- Explore and download more than 150 fascinating and useful mini-guides—FREE! Print out or send to a friend.
- Share your own knowledge and experience as a mini-guide contributor.
- Join discussions with authors and exchange ideas with other lifelong learners.
- Read sample chapters from a vast library of *Complete Idiot’s Guide®* books.
- Find out how to become an author.
- Check out upcoming book promotions and author signings.
- Purchase books through your favorite online retailer.

Learning for Fun. Learning for Life.